

OREGON INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY: CHE 331 ORGANIC CHEMISTRY I



Travis Lund
Oregon Institute of Technology

Oregon Institute of Technology

Oregon Institute of Technology: CHE 331

Organic Chemistry I

Travis Lund

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (<https://LibreTexts.org>) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by [NICE CXone Expert](#) and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptations contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at <https://LibreTexts.org>.

This text was compiled on 01/12/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: General Chemistry Recap

- 1.0: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures
- 1.1: Drawing Organic Structures
- 1.2: Valence Bond Theory

2: Functional Groups

- 2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature
- 2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II

3: Properties and Principles

- 3.0: Non-covalent interactions
- 3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds
- 3.2: Resonance
- 3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

4: Conformations and Stereochemistry

- 4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry
- 4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules
- 4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules
- 4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers
- 4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system
- 4.5: Optical Activity
- 4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

5: Overview of Organic Reactivity

- 5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity
- 5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism
- 5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics
- 5.3: Catalysis
- 5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions
- 5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Exercises)
- 5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Summary)

6: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms

- 6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions
- 6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals
- 6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions
- 6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes
- 6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes
- 6.5: Radical Chain Reactions
- 6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

- [6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction](#)

7: Reaction Mechanisms Continued

- [7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions](#)
- [7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#)
- [7.2: Nucleophiles](#)
- [7.3: Electrophiles](#)
- [7.4: Leaving Groups](#)
- [7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions](#)
- [7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview](#)
- [7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates](#)
- [7.8: Acetals and Ketals](#)
- [7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions](#)
- [7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives](#)
- [7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism](#)
- [7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides](#)

8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

- [8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I](#)
- [8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy](#)
- [8.2: Mass Spectrometry](#)
- [8.3: Infrared spectroscopy](#)
- [8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy](#)
- [8.P: Problems for Chapter 4](#)

9: Introduction to Acid-base Reactions

- [9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions](#)
- [9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions](#)
- [9.2: The Acidity Constant](#)
- [9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity](#)

10: Introduction to Biomolecules

- [10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins](#)
- [10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure](#)
- [10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure](#)
- [10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid \(DNA and RNA\) structure](#)
- [10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine](#)

[Index](#)

[Glossary](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in [Back Matter/Detailed Licensing](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: General Chemistry Recap

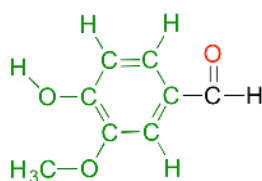
Our first week of classes in CHE 331 is spent reviewing some key General Chemistry topics. Below are the readings from our textbook that cover this week's class content.

[1.0: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures](#)

[1.1: Drawing Organic Structures](#)

[1.2: Valence Bond Theory](#)

1: General Chemistry Recap is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.



vanillin

What is it about capsaicin and vanillin that causes these two compounds to have such dramatically different effects on our sensory perceptions? Both are produced by plants, and both are composed of the elements carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and (in the case of capsaicin) nitrogen. Since the birth of chemistry as a science, chemists have been fascinated - and for much of that history, mystified - by the myriad properties of compounds that come from living things. The term 'organic', from the Greek *organikos*, was applied to these compounds, and it was thought that they contained some kind of 'vital force' which set them apart from 'inorganic' compounds such as minerals, salts, and metals, and which allowed them to operate by a completely different set of chemical principles. How else but through the action of a 'vital force' could such a small subgroup of the elements combine to form compounds with so many different properties?

Today, as you are probably already aware, the term 'organic,' - when applied to chemistry - refers not just to molecules from living things, but to all compounds containing the element carbon, regardless of origin. Beginning early in the 19th century, as chemists learned through careful experimentation about the composition and properties of 'organic' compounds such as fatty acids, acetic acid and urea, and even figured out how to synthesize some of them starting with exclusively 'inorganic' components, they began to realize that the 'vital force' concept was not valid, and that the properties of both organic and inorganic molecules could in fact be understood using the same fundamental chemical principles.

They also began to more fully appreciate the unique features of the element carbon which makes it so central to the chemistry of living things, to the extent that it warrants its own subfield of chemistry. Carbon forms four stable bonds, either to other carbon atoms or to hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, or a halogen. The characteristic bonding modes of carbon allow it to serve as a skeleton, or framework, for building large, complex molecules that incorporate chains, branches and ring structures.

Although 'organic chemistry' no longer means exclusively the study of compounds from living things, it is nonetheless the desire to understand and influence the chemistry of life that drives much of the work of organic chemists, whether the goal is to learn something fundamentally new about the reactivity of a carbon-oxygen bond, to discover a new laboratory method that could be used to synthesize a life-saving drug, or to better understand the intricate chemical dance that goes on in the active site of an enzyme or receptor protein. Although humans have been eating hot peppers and vanilla-flavored foods for centuries, we are just now, in the past few decades, beginning to understand how and why one causes searing pain, and the other pure gustatory pleasure. We understand that the precise geometric arrangement of the four elements in capsaicin allows it to fit inside the binding pocket of the TrpV1 heat receptor - but, as of today, we do not yet have a detailed three dimensional picture of the TrpVI protein bound to capsaicin. We also know that the different arrangement of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen atoms in vanillin allows it to bind to specific olfactory receptors, but again, there is much yet to be discovered about exactly how this happens.

In this chapter, you will be introduced to some of the most fundamental principles of organic chemistry. With the concepts we learn about, we can begin to understand how carbon and a very small number of other elements in the periodic table can combine in predictable ways to produce a virtually limitless chemical repertoire.

As you read through, you will recognize that the chapter contains a lot of review of topics you have probably learned already in an introductory chemistry course, but there will likely also be a few concepts that are new to you, as well as some topics which are already familiar to you but covered at a greater depth and with more of an emphasis on biologically relevant organic compounds.

We will begin with a reminder of how chemists depict bonding in organic molecules with the 'Lewis structure' drawing convention, focusing on the concept of 'formal charge'. We will review the common bonding patterns of the six elements necessary for all forms of life on earth - carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, and phosphorus - plus the halogens (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine). We'll then continue on with some of the basic skills involved in drawing and talking about organic molecules: understanding the 'line structure' drawing convention and other useful ways to abbreviate and simplify structural drawings, learning about functional groups and isomers, and looking at how to systematically name simple organic molecules. Finally, we'll bring it all

together with a review of the structures of the most important classes of biological molecules - lipids, carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acids - which we will be referring to constantly throughout the rest of the book.

Before you begin your study of organic chemistry, you may need to do some review of General Chemistry because it will be assumed that you already understand some basic chemistry concepts. A great way to review is to watch the following series of tutorials from [Khan Academy](#):

Review tutorials

- [Atoms, compounds and ions](#)
- [Electronic structure of atoms](#)
- [Chemical bonds and drawing Lewis structures](#)

Here are some practice exercises to try before moving on:

? Exercise 1.1

How many protons and neutrons do the following isotopes have?

- ^{31}P , the most common isotope of phosphorus
- ^{32}P , a radioactive isotope of phosphorus used often in the study of DNA and RNA.
- ^{37}Cl , one of the two common isotopes of chlorine.
- tritium (^3H), a radioactive isotope of hydrogen, used often by biochemists as a 'tracer' atom.
- ^{14}C , a radioactive isotope of carbon, also used as a tracer in biochemistry.

Exercise 1.2

The electron configuration of a carbon atom is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$, and that of a sodium cation (Na^+) is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$. Show the electron configuration for:

- a nitrogen atom
- an oxygen atom
- a fluorine atom
- a magnesium atom
- a magnesium cation (Mg^{2+})
- a potassium atom
- a potassium ion (K^+)
- a chloride anion (Cl^-)
- a sulfur atom
- a lithium cation (Li^+)
- a calcium cation (Ca^{2+})

Exercise 1.3

Draw Lewis structures for the following species (use lines to denote bonds, dots for lone-pair electrons). All atoms should have a complete valence shell of electrons.

- ammonia, NH_3
- ammonium ion, NH_4^+
- amide ion, NH_2^-
- formaldehyde, HCOH
- acetate ion, CH_3COO^-
- methyl amine, CH_3NH_2
- ethanol, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
- diethylether, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$
- cyclohexanol (molecular formula $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}$, with six carbons bonded in a ring and an OH group)
- propene, CH_2CHCH_3

k. pyruvate, $\text{CH}_3\text{COCO}_2\text{H}$

Exercise solutions

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [1.0: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

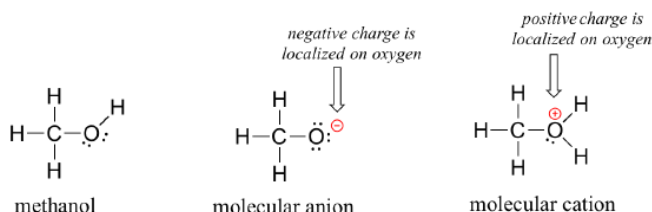
- [1.1: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

1.1: Drawing Organic Structures

Formal Charges

Now that you have had a chance to go back to your introductory chemistry textbook to review some basic information about atoms, orbitals, bonds, and molecules, let's direct our attention a little more closely to the idea of charged species. You know that an **ion** is a molecule or atom that has an associated positive or negative charge. Copper, for example, can be found in both its neutral state (Cu^0 , which is the metal), or in its Cu^{+2} state, as a component of an ionic compound like copper carbonate (CuCO_3), the green substance called 'patina' that forms on the surface of copper objects.

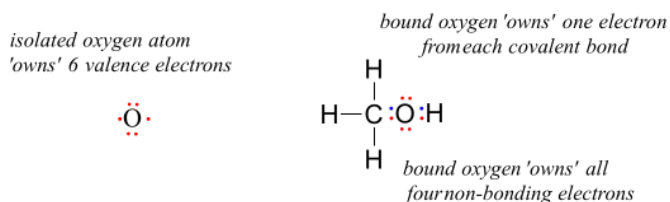
Organic molecules can also have positive or negative charges associated with them. Consider the Lewis structure of methanol, CH_3OH (methanol is the so-called 'wood alcohol' that unscrupulous bootleggers sometimes sold during the prohibition days in the 1920's, often causing the people who drank it to go blind). Methanol itself is a neutral molecule, but can lose a proton to become a molecular anion (CH_3O^-), or gain a proton to become a molecular cation (CH_3OH_2^+).



The molecular anion and cation have overall charges of -1 and +1, respectively. But we can be more specific than that - we can also state for each molecular ion that a **formal charge** is located specifically on the oxygen atom, rather than on the carbon or any of the hydrogen atoms.

Figuring out the formal charge on different atoms of a molecule is a straightforward process - it's simply a matter of adding up valence electrons.

A unbound oxygen atom has 6 valence electrons. When it is bound as part of a methanol molecule, however, an oxygen atom is surrounded by 8 valence electrons: 4 nonbonding electrons (two 'lone pairs') and 2 electrons in each of its two covalent bonds (one to carbon, one to hydrogen). In the formal charge convention, we say that the oxygen 'owns' all 4 nonbonding electrons. However, it only 'owns' one electron from each of the two covalent bonds, because covalent bonds involve the sharing of electrons between atoms. Therefore, the oxygen atom in methanol owns $2 + 2 + (\frac{1}{2} \times 4) = 6$ valence electrons.



The formal charge on an atom is calculated as the number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom minus the number of valence electrons owned by the bound atom in the molecule:

Determining formal charge on an atom

formal charge =

(number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom)

- (number of valence electrons owned by the bound atom)

or . . .

formal charge =

(number of valence electrons owned by the isolated atom)

- (number of non-bonding electrons on the bound atom)
- ($\frac{1}{2}$ the number of bonding electrons on the bound atom)

Using this formula for the oxygen atom of methanol, we have:

formal charge on oxygen =

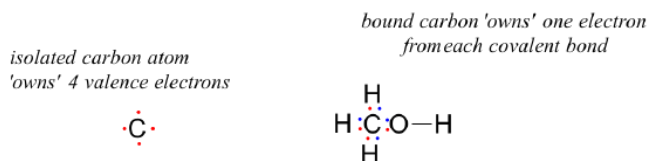
(6 valence electrons on isolated atom)

- (4 non-bonding electrons)

- ($\frac{1}{2} \times 4$ bonding electrons)

= $6 - 4 - 2 = 0$. Thus, oxygen in methanol has a formal charge of zero (in other words, it has *no formal charge*).

How about the carbon atom in methanol? An isolated carbon owns 4 valence electrons. The bound carbon in methanol owns ($\frac{1}{2} \times 8$) = 4 valence electrons:



formal charge on carbon =

(4 valence electron on isolated atom)

- (0 nonbonding electrons)

- ($\frac{1}{2} \times 8$ bonding electrons)

= $4 - 0 - 4 = 0$. So the formal charge on carbon is zero.

For each of the hydrogens in methanol, we also get a formal charge of zero:

formal charge on hydrogen =

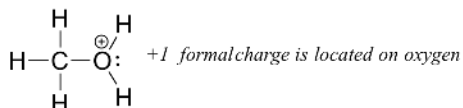
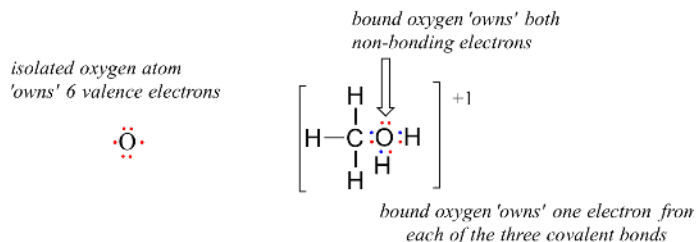
(1 valence electron on isolated atom)

- (0 nonbonding electrons)

- ($\frac{1}{2} \times 2$ bonding electrons)

= $1 - 0 - 1 = 0$

Now, let's look at the cationic form of methanol, CH_3OH_2^+ . The bonding picture has not changed for carbon or for any of the hydrogen atoms, so we will focus on the oxygen atom.



The oxygen owns 2 non-bonding electrons and 3 bonding elections, so the formal charge calculations becomes:

formal charge on oxygen =

(6 valence electrons in isolated atom)

- (2 non-bonding electrons)

- ($\frac{1}{2} \times 6$ bonding electrons)

= $6 - 2 - 3 = 1$. A formal charge of +1 is located on the oxygen atom.

For methoxide, the anionic form of methanol, the calculation for the oxygen atom is:

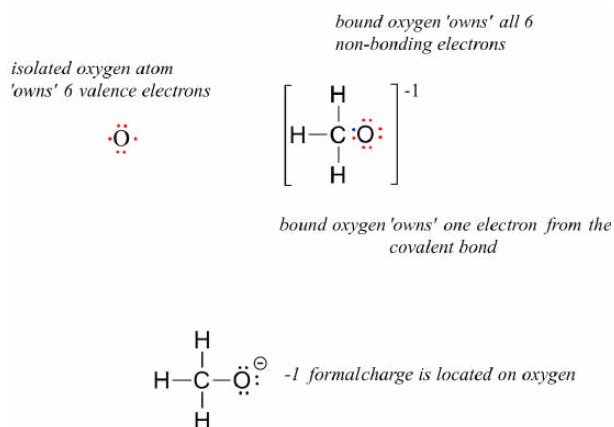
formal charge on oxygen =

(6 valence electrons in isolated atom)

- (6 non-bonding electrons)

- ($\frac{1}{2} \times 2$ bonding electrons)

= $6 - 6 - 1 = -1$. A formal charge of -1 is located on the oxygen atom.

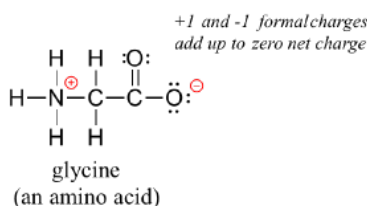


A very important rule to keep in mind is that *the sum of the formal charges on all atoms of a molecule must equal the net charge on the whole molecule.*

When drawing the structures of organic molecules, it is very important to show all non-zero formal charges, being clear about where the charges are located. *A structure that is missing non-zero formal charges is not correctly drawn, and will probably be marked as such on an exam!*

At this point, thinking back to what you learned in general chemistry, you are probably asking “What about dipoles? Doesn’t an oxygen atom in an O-H bond ‘own’ more of the electron density than the hydrogen, because of its greater electronegativity?” This is absolutely correct, and we will be reviewing the concept of bond dipoles later on. For the purpose of calculating formal charges, however, bond dipoles don’t matter - we always consider the two electrons in a bond to be shared equally, even if that is not an accurate reflection of chemical reality. Formal charges are just that - a formality, a method of electron book-keeping that is tied into the Lewis system for drawing the structures of organic compounds and ions. Later, we will see how the concept of formal charge can help us to visualize how organic molecules react.

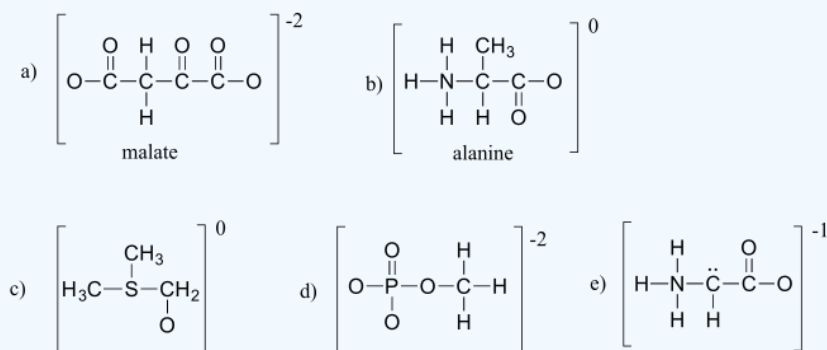
Finally, don't be lured into thinking that just because the net charge on a structure is zero there are no atoms with formal charges: one atom could have a positive formal charge and another a negative formal charge, and the net charge would still be zero. **Zwitterions**, such as amino acids, have both positive and negative formal charges on different atoms:



Even though the *net* charge on glycine is zero, it is still necessary to show the location of the positive and negative formal charges.

? Exercise 1.4

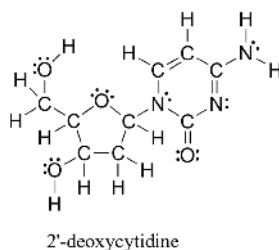
Fill in all missing lone pair electrons and formal charges in the structures below. Assume that all atoms have a complete valence shell of electrons. Net charges are shown outside the brackets.



Solutions to exercises

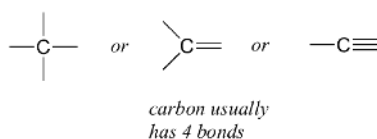
Common bonding patterns in organic structures

The methods reviewed above for drawing Lewis structures and determining formal charges on atoms are an essential starting point for a novice organic chemist, and work quite well when dealing with small, simple structures. But as you can imagine, these methods become unreasonably tedious and time-consuming when you start dealing with larger structures. It would be unrealistic, for example, to ask you to draw the Lewis structure below (of one of the four nucleoside building blocks that make up DNA) and determine all formal charges by adding up, on an atom-by-atom basis, the valence electrons.



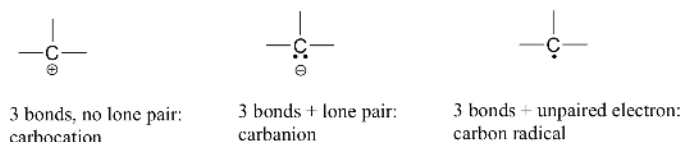
And yet, as organic chemists, and especially as organic chemists dealing with biological molecules, you will be expected soon to draw the structure of large molecules such as this on a regular basis. Clearly, you need to develop the ability to quickly and efficiently draw large structures and determine formal charges. Fortunately, this ability is not terribly hard to come by - all it takes is a few shortcuts and some practice at recognizing common bonding patterns.

Let's start with carbon, the most important element for organic chemists. Carbon is said to be tetravalent, meaning that it tends to form four bonds. If you look at the simple structures of methane, methanol, ethane, ethene, and ethyne in the figures from the previous section, you should quickly recognize that in each molecule, the carbon atom has four bonds, and a formal charge of zero.



This is a pattern that holds throughout most of the organic molecules we will see, but there are also exceptions.

In carbon dioxide, the carbon atom has double bonds to oxygen on both sides ($\text{O}=\text{C}=\text{O}$). Later on in this chapter and throughout this book we will see examples of organic ions called ‘carbocations’ and ‘carbanions’, in which a carbon atom bears a positive or negative formal charge, respectively. If a carbon has only three bonds and an unfilled valence shell (in other words, if it does not fulfill the octet rule), it will have a positive formal charge.

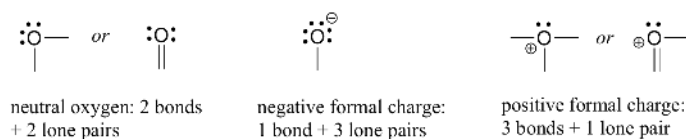


If, on the other hand, it has three bonds plus a lone pair of electrons, it will have a formal charge of -1. Another possibility is a carbon with three bonds and a single, unpaired (free radical) electron: in this case, the carbon has a formal charge of zero. (One last possibility is a highly reactive species called a ‘carbene’, in which a carbon has two bonds and one lone pair of electrons, giving it a formal charge of zero. You may encounter carbenes in more advanced chemistry courses, but they will not be discussed any further in this book).

You should certainly use the methods you have learned to check that these formal charges are correct for the examples given above. More importantly, you will need, before you progress much further in your study of organic chemistry, to simply recognize these patterns (and the patterns described below for other atoms) and be able to identify by quick inspection carbons that bear positive and negative formal charges.

The pattern for hydrogens is easy: hydrogen atoms have only one bond, and no formal charge. The exceptions to this rule are the proton, H^+ , and the hydride ion, H^- , which is a proton plus two electrons. Because we are concentrating in this book on organic chemistry as applied to living things, however, we will not be seeing ‘naked’ protons and hydrides as such, because they are too reactive to be present in that form in aqueous solution. Nonetheless, the *idea* of a proton will be very important when we discuss acid-base chemistry, and the *idea* of a hydride ion will become very important much later in the book when we discuss organic oxidation and reduction reactions. As a rule, though, all hydrogen atoms in organic molecules have one bond, and no formal charge.

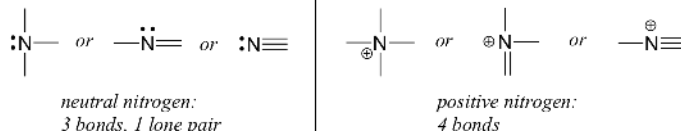
Let us next turn to oxygen atoms. Typically, you will see an oxygen bonding in three ways, all of which fulfill the octet rule.



If an oxygen atom has two bonds and two lone pairs, as in water, it will have a formal charge of zero. If it has one bond and three lone pairs, as in hydroxide ion, it will have a formal charge of -1. If it has three bonds and one lone pair, as in hydronium ion, it will have a formal charge of +1.

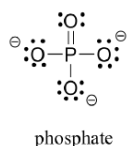
When we get to our discussion of free radical chemistry in chapter 17, we will see other possibilities, such as where an oxygen atom has one bond, one lone pair, and one unpaired (free radical) electron, giving it a formal charge of zero. For now, however, concentrate on the three main non-radical examples, as these will account for virtually everything we see until chapter 17.

Nitrogen has two major bonding patterns, both of which fulfill the octet rule:

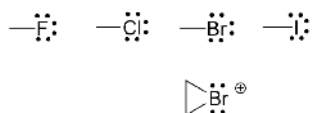


If a nitrogen has three bonds and a lone pair, it has a formal charge of zero. If it has four bonds (and no lone pair), it has a formal charge of +1. In a fairly uncommon bonding pattern, negatively charged nitrogen has two bonds and two lone pairs.

Two third row elements are commonly found in biological organic molecules: sulfur and phosphorus. Although both of these elements have other bonding patterns that are relevant in laboratory chemistry, in a biological context sulfur almost always follows the same bonding/formal charge pattern as oxygen, while phosphorus is present in the form of phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}), where it has five bonds (almost always to oxygen), no lone pairs, and a formal charge of zero. Remember that atoms of elements in the third row and below in the periodic table have 'expanded valence shells' with *d* orbitals available for bonding, and the the octet rule does not apply.



Finally, the halogens (fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine) are very important in laboratory and medicinal organic chemistry, but less common in naturally occurring organic molecules. Halogens in organic compounds usually are seen with one bond, three lone pairs, and a formal charge of zero. Sometimes, especially in the case of bromine, we will encounter reactive species in which the halogen has two bonds (usually in a three-membered ring), two lone pairs, and a formal charge of +1.



These rules, if learned and internalized so that you don't even need to think about them, will allow you to draw large organic structures, complete with formal charges, quite quickly.

Once you have gotten the hang of drawing Lewis structures, it is not always necessary to draw lone pairs on heteroatoms, as you can assume that the proper number of electrons are present around each atom to match the indicated formal charge (or lack thereof). Occasionally, though, lone pairs are drawn if doing so helps to make an explanation more clear.

? Exercise 1.5

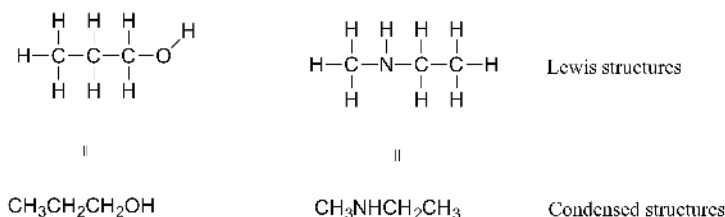
Draw one structure that corresponds to each of the following molecular formulas, using the common bonding patterns covered above. Be sure to include all lone pairs and formal charges where applicable, and assume that all atoms have a full valence shell of electrons. More than one correct answer is possible for each, so you will want to check your answers with your instructor or tutor.

- a) $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}$ b) $\text{C}_5\text{H}_8\text{O}$ c) $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{NO}^+$ d) $\text{C}_4\text{H}_3\text{O}_2^-$

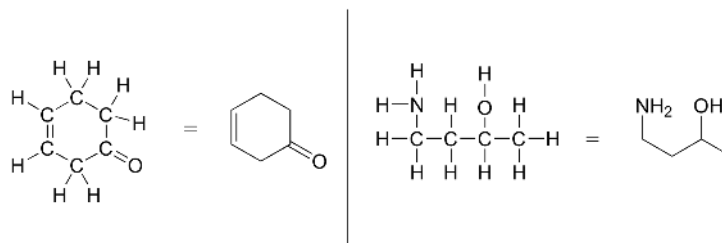
Solutions to exercises

Using the 'line structure' convention

If you look ahead in this and other books at the way organic compounds are drawn, you will see that the figures are somewhat different from the Lewis structures you are used to seeing in your general chemistry book. In some sources, you will see **condensed structures** for smaller molecules instead of full Lewis structures:



More commonly, organic and biological chemists use an abbreviated drawing convention called **line structures**. The convention is quite simple and makes it easier to draw molecules, but line structures do take a little bit of getting used to. Carbon atoms are depicted not by a capital C, but by a 'corner' between two bonds, or a free end of a bond. Open-chain molecules are usually drawn out in a 'zig-zig' shape. Hydrogens attached to carbons are generally not shown: rather, like lone pairs, they are simply implied (unless a positive formal charge is shown, all carbons are assumed to have a full octet of valence electrons). Hydrogens bonded to nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, or anything other than carbon *are* shown, but are usually drawn without showing the bond. The following examples illustrate the convention.

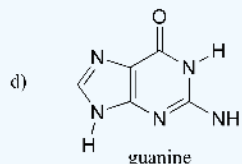
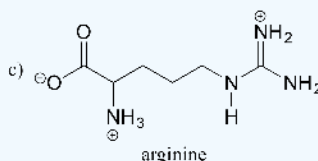
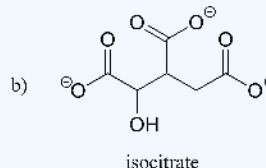
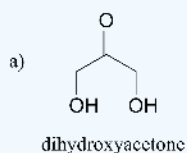


As you can see, the 'pared down' line structure makes it much easier to see the basic structure of the molecule and the locations where there is something other than C-C and C-H single bonds. For larger, more complex biological molecules, it becomes impractical to use full Lewis structures. Conversely, very small molecules such as ethane should be drawn with their full Lewis or condensed structures.

Sometimes, one or more carbon atoms in a line structure will be depicted with a capital C, if doing so makes an explanation easier to follow. *If you label a carbon with a C, you also must draw in the hydrogens for that carbon.*

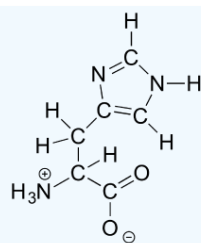
Exercise 1.6

A good way to test your understanding of the line structure convention is to determine the number of hydrogen atoms in a molecule from its line structure. Do this for the structures below.

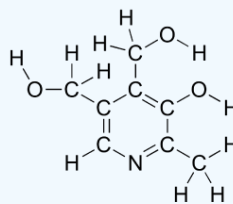


Exercise 1.7

- Draw a line structure for the DNA base 2-deoxycytidine (the full structure was shown earlier)
- Draw line structures for histidine (an amino acid) and pyridoxine (Vitamin B₆).



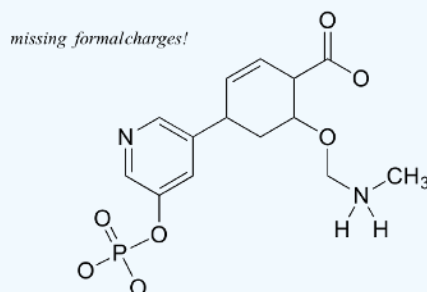
histidine



pyridoxine
(Vitamin B₆)

Exercise 1.8

Add non-zero formal charges to the structural drawing below. The net charge is -2.



Exercise 1.9

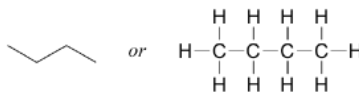
Find, anywhere in chapters 2-17 of this textbook, one example of each of the common bonding patterns specified below. Check your answers with your instructor or tutor.

- carbon with one double bond, two single bonds, no lone pairs, and zero formal charge
- oxygen with two single bonds, two lone pairs, and zero formal charge
- oxygen with one double bond, two lone pairs, and zero formal charge
- nitrogen with one double bond, two single bonds, and a +1 formal charge
- oxygen with one single bond, three lone pairs, and a negative formal charge

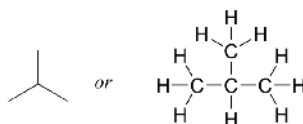
Solutions to exercises

Constitutional isomers

Now that we have reviewed how to draw Lewis structures and learned the line structure shortcut, it is a good time to learn about the concept of constitutional isomers. Imagine if you were asked to draw a structure (Lewis or line) for a compound with the molecular formula C₄H₁₀. This would not be difficult - you could simply draw:



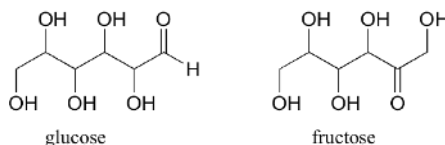
But when you compared your answer with that of a classmate, she may have drawn this structure:



Who is correct? The answer, of course, is that both of you are. A molecular formula only tells you *how many* atoms of each element are present in the compound, not what the actual atom-to-atom connectivity is. There are often many different possible structures

for one molecular formula. Compounds that have the same molecular formula but different connectivity are called **constitutional isomers** (sometimes the term '**structural isomer**' is also used). The Greek term 'iso' means 'same'.

Fructose and glucose, two kinds of sugar molecules, are constitutional isomers with the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$.



Later, we will see other types of isomers that have the same molecular formula and the same connectivity, but are different in other respects.

? Exercise 1.10

Draw a constitutional isomer of ethanol, CH_3CH_2OH .

Exercise 1.11

Draw all of the possible constitutional isomers with the given molecular formula.

- a. C_5H_{12}
- b. $C_4H_{10}O$
- c. C_3H_9N

Solutions to exercises

This page titled [1.1: Drawing Organic Structures](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [1.2: Drawing Organic Structures](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

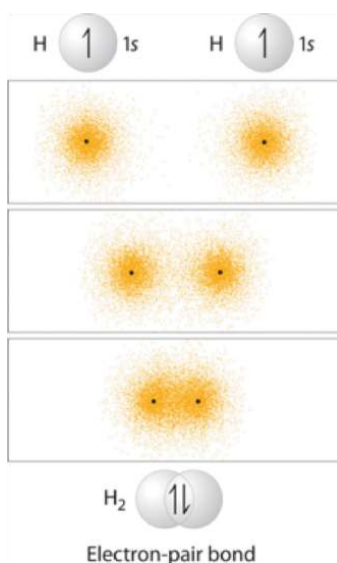
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

As we have been discussing how to use Lewis structures to depict the bonding in organic compounds, we have been very vague so far in our language about the actual nature of the chemical bonds themselves. We know that a covalent bond involves the ‘sharing’ of a pair of electrons between two atoms - but how does this happen, and how does it lead to the formation of a bond holding the two atoms together?

Valence bond theory is most often used to describe bonding in organic molecules. In this model, bonds are considered to form from the overlap of two atomic orbitals on different atoms, each orbital containing a single electron. In looking at simple inorganic molecules such as molecular hydrogen (H_2) or hydrogen fluoride (HF), our present understanding of s and p atomic orbitals will suffice. In order to explain the bonding in organic molecules, however, we will need to introduce the concept of **hybrid orbitals**.

The sigma bond in the H_2 molecule

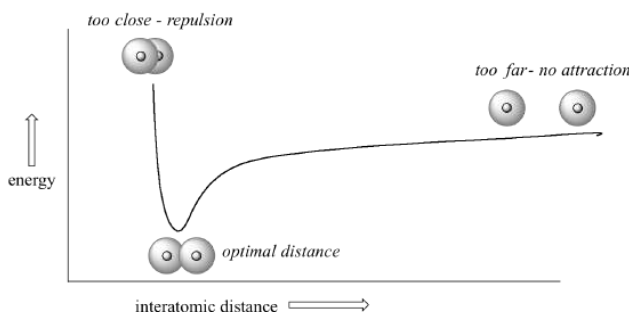
The simplest case to consider is the hydrogen molecule, H_2 . When we say that the two hydrogen nuclei share their electrons to form a covalent bond, what we mean in valence bond theory terms is that the two spherical $1s$ orbitals (the grey spheres in the figure below) overlap, and contain two electrons with opposite spin.



These two electrons are now attracted to the positive charge of *both* of the hydrogen nuclei, with the result that they serve as a sort of ‘chemical glue’ holding the two nuclei together.

How far apart are the two nuclei? If they are too far apart, their respective $1s$ orbitals cannot overlap, and thus no covalent bond can form - they are still just two separate hydrogen atoms. As they move closer and closer together, orbital overlap begins to occur, and a bond begins to form. This lowers the potential energy of the system, as new, *attractive* positive-negative electrostatic interactions become possible between the nucleus of one atom and the electron of the second.

But something else is happening at the same time: as the atoms get closer, the *repulsive* positive-positive interaction between the two nuclei also begins to increase.



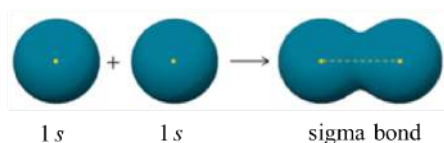
At first this repulsion is more than offset by the attraction between nuclei and electrons, but at a certain point, as the nuclei get even closer, the repulsive forces begin to overcome the attractive forces, and the potential energy of the system rises quickly. When the two nuclei are 'too close', we have an unstable, high-energy situation. There is a defined optimal distance between the nuclei in which the potential energy is at a minimum, meaning that the combined attractive and repulsive forces add up to the greatest overall attractive force. This optimal internuclear distance is the **bond length**. For the H_2 molecule, the distance is 74 pm (picometers, 10^{-12} meters). Likewise, the difference in potential energy between the lowest energy state (at the optimal internuclear distance) and the state where the two atoms are completely separated is called the **bond dissociation energy**, or, more simply, **bond strength**. For the hydrogen molecule, the H-H bond strength is equal to about 435 kJ/mol.

Every covalent bond in a given molecule has a characteristic length and strength. In general, the length of a typical carbon-carbon single bond in an organic molecule is about 150 pm, while carbon-carbon double bonds are about 130 pm, carbon-oxygen double bonds are about 120 pm, and carbon-hydrogen bonds are in the range of 100 to 110 pm. The strength of covalent bonds in organic molecules ranges from about 234 kJ/mol for a carbon-iodine bond (in thyroid hormone, for example), about 410 kJ/mole for a typical carbon-hydrogen bond, and up to over 800 kJ/mole for a carbon-carbon triple bond.

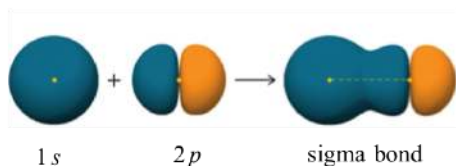
Table of bond lengths and bond energies

It is not accurate, however, to picture covalent bonds as rigid sticks of unchanging length - rather, it is better to picture them as *springs* which have a defined length when relaxed, but which can be compressed, extended, and bent. This 'springy' picture of covalent bonds will become very important in chapter 4, when we study the analytical technique known as infrared (IR) spectroscopy.

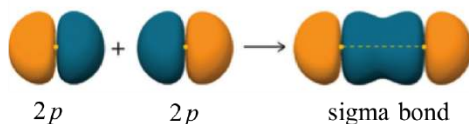
One more characteristic of the covalent bond in H_2 is important to consider at this point. The two overlapping 1s orbitals can be visualized as two spherical balloons being pressed together. This means that the bond has **cylindrical symmetry**: if we were to take a cross-sectional plane of the bond at any point, it would form a circle. This type of bond is referred to as a **sigma (σ) bond**.



A sigma bond can be formed by overlap of an s atomic orbital with a p atomic orbital. Hydrogen fluoride (HF) is an example:

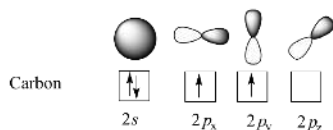


A sigma bond can also be formed by the overlap of two p orbitals. The covalent bond in molecular fluorine, F_2 , is a sigma bond formed by the overlap of two half-filled 2p orbitals, one from each fluorine atom.

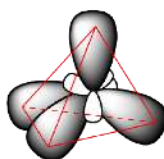


sp^3 hybrid orbitals and tetrahedral bonding

Now let's look more carefully at bonding in organic molecules, starting with methane, CH_4 . Recall the valence electron configuration of a carbon atom:



This picture is problematic when it comes to describing the *bonding* in methane. How does the carbon form four bonds if it has only two half-filled p orbitals available for bonding? A hint comes from the experimental observation that the four C-H bonds in methane are arranged with **tetrahedral** geometry about the central carbon, and that each bond has the same length and strength. In order to explain this observation, valence bond theory relies on a concept called **orbital hybridization**. In this picture, the four valence orbitals of the carbon (one $2s$ and three $2p$ orbitals) combine mathematically (remember: orbitals are described by wave equations) to form four equivalent **hybrid orbitals**, which are called **sp^3 orbitals** because they are formed from mixing one s and three p orbitals. In the new electron configuration, each of the four valence electrons on the carbon occupies a single sp^3 orbital.



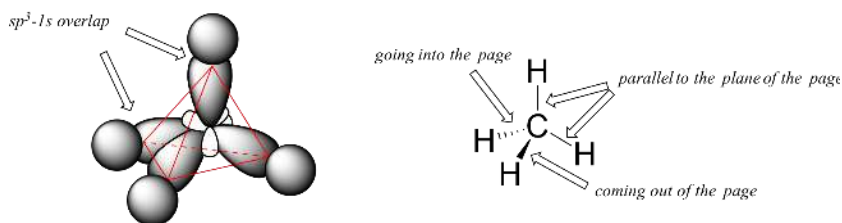
four sp^3 orbitals in tetrahedral orientation

[interactive 3D model](#)

(select 'load sp^3 ' and 'load H 1s' to see orbitals)

This geometric arrangement makes perfect sense if you consider that it is precisely this angle that allows the four orbitals (and the electrons in them) to be as far apart from each other as possible. This is simply a restatement of the Valence Shell Electron Pair Repulsion (VSEPR) theory that you learned in General Chemistry: electron pairs (in orbitals) will arrange themselves in such a way as to remain as far apart as possible, due to negative-negative electrostatic repulsion.

Each C-H bond in methane, then, can be described as a sigma bond formed by overlap between a half-filled $1s$ orbital in a hydrogen atom and the larger lobe of one of the four half-filled sp^3 hybrid orbitals in the central carbon. The length of the carbon-hydrogen bonds in methane is 109 pm.



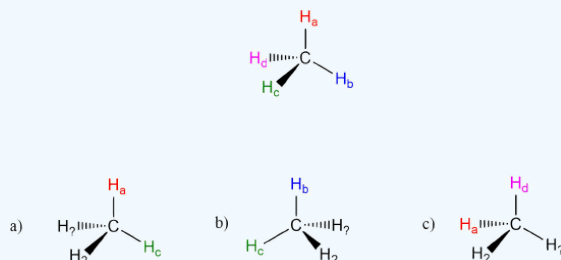
tetrahedral sp^3 bonding in methane

While previously we drew a Lewis structure of methane in two dimensions using lines to denote each covalent bond, we can now draw a more accurate structure in three dimensions, showing the tetrahedral bonding geometry. To do this on a two-dimensional page, though, we need to introduce a new drawing convention: the solid / dashed wedge system. In this convention, a solid wedge simply represents a bond that is meant to be pictured emerging from the plane of the page. A dashed wedge represents a bond that

is meant to be pictured pointing into, or behind, the plane of the page. Normal lines imply bonds that lie in the plane of the page. This system takes a little bit of getting used to, but with practice your eye will learn to immediately 'see' the third dimension being depicted.

Exercise 2.1

Imagine that you could distinguish between the four hydrogen atoms in a methane molecule, and labeled them H_a through H_d . In the images below, the *exact same* methane molecule is rotated and flipped in various positions. Draw the missing hydrogen atom labels. (It will be much easier to do this if you make a model.)

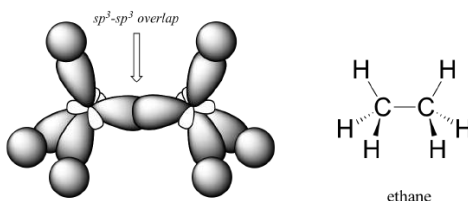


Exercise 2.2

What kind of orbitals overlap to form the C-Cl bonds in chloroform, $CHCl_3$?

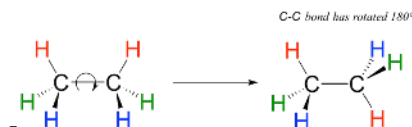
Solutions to exercises

How does this bonding picture extend to compounds containing carbon-carbon bonds? In ethane (CH_3CH_3), both carbons are sp^3 -hybridized, meaning that both have four bonds with tetrahedral geometry. The carbon-carbon bond, with a bond length of 154 pm, is formed by overlap of one sp^3 orbital from each of the carbons, while the six carbon-hydrogen bonds are formed from overlaps between the remaining sp^3 orbitals on the two carbons and the 1s orbitals of hydrogen atoms. All of these are sigma bonds.



[Interactive model of ethane](#)

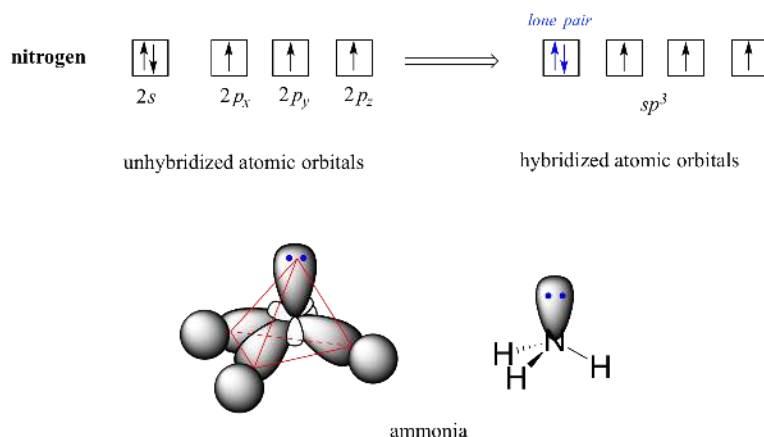
Because they are formed from the end-on-end overlap of two orbitals, *sigma bonds are free to rotate*. This means, in the case of ethane molecule, that the two methyl (CH_3) groups can be pictured as two wheels on an axle, each one able to rotate with respect to the other.



[Video](#)

In chapter 3 we will learn more about the implications of rotational freedom in sigma bonds, when we discuss the 'conformation' of organic molecules.

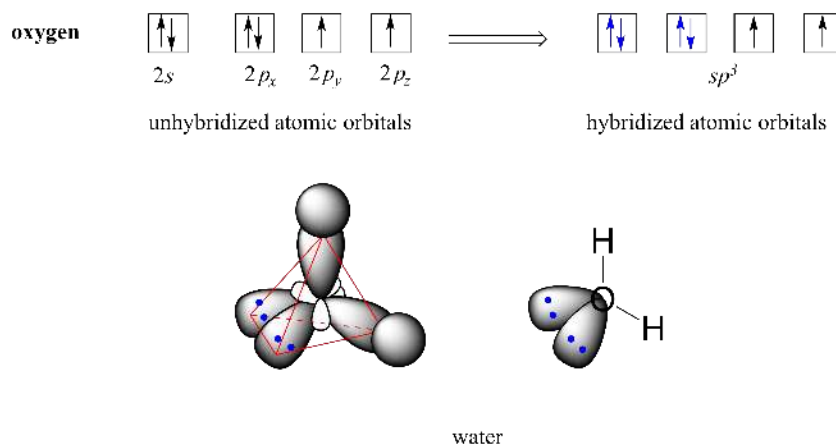
The sp^3 bonding picture is also used to describe the bonding in amines, including ammonia, the simplest amine. Just like the carbon atom in methane, the central nitrogen in ammonia is sp^3 -hybridized. With nitrogen, however, there are five rather than four valence electrons to account for, meaning that three of the four hybrid orbitals are half-filled and available for bonding, while the fourth is fully occupied by a nonbonding pair (lone pair) of electrons.



space-filling image

The bonding arrangement here is also tetrahedral: the three N-H bonds of ammonia can be pictured as forming the base of a trigonal pyramid, with the fourth orbital, containing the lone pair, forming the top of the pyramid. Recall from your study of VSEPR theory in General Chemistry that the lone pair, with its slightly greater repulsive effect, ‘pushes’ the three N-H bonds away from the top of the pyramid, meaning that the H-N-H bond angles are slightly less than tetrahedral, at 107.3° rather than 109.5° .

VSEPR theory also predicts, accurately, that a water molecule is ‘bent’ at an angle of approximately 104.5° . The bonding in water results from overlap of two of the four sp^3 hybrid orbitals on oxygen with $1s$ orbitals on the two hydrogen atoms. The two nonbonding electron pairs on oxygen are located in the two remaining sp^3 orbitals.



Exercise 2.3

Draw, in the same style as the figures above, orbital pictures for the bonding in a) methylamine, and b) ethanol.

Solutions to exercises

[video tutorial on \$sp^3\$ orbitals and sigma bonds](#)

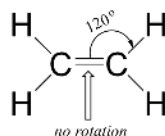
sp^2 and sp hybrid orbitals and pi bonds

The valence bond theory, along with the hybrid orbital concept, does a very good job of describing double-bonded compounds such as ethene. Three experimentally observable characteristics of the ethene molecule need to be accounted for by a bonding model:

1. Ethene is a planar (flat) molecule.
2. Bond angles in ethene are approximately 120° , and the carbon-carbon bond length is 134 pm, significantly shorter than the 154 pm single carbon-carbon bond in ethane.

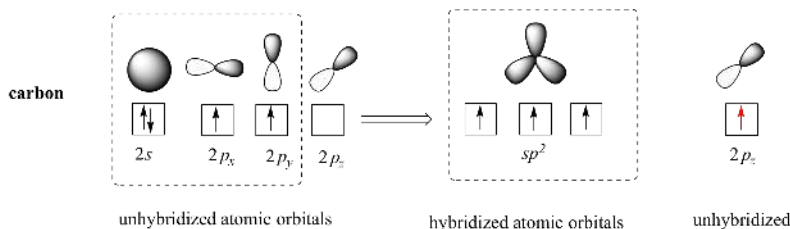
3. There is a significant barrier to rotation about the carbon-carbon double bond.

all atoms lie in the same plane

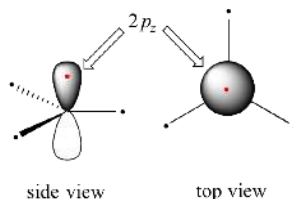


ethene

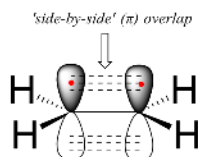
Clearly, these characteristics are not consistent with an sp^3 hybrid bonding picture for the two carbon atoms. Instead, the bonding in ethene is described by a model involving the participation of a different kind of hybrid orbital. Three atomic orbitals on each carbon – the $2s$, $2p_x$ and $2p_y$ orbitals – combine to form three sp^2 hybrids, leaving the $2p_z$ orbital unhybridized.



The three sp^2 hybrids are arranged with trigonal planar geometry, pointing to the three corners of an equilateral triangle, with angles of 120° between them. The unhybridized $2p_z$ orbital is *perpendicular* to this plane (in the next several figures, sp^2 orbitals and the sigma bonds to which they contribute are represented by lines and wedges; only the $2p_z$ orbitals are shown in the 'space-filling' mode).



The carbon-carbon double bond in ethene consists of one sigma bond, formed by the overlap of two sp^2 orbitals, and a second bond, called a **pi (π) bond**, which is formed by the *side-by-side* overlap of the two unhybridized $2p_z$ orbitals from each carbon.

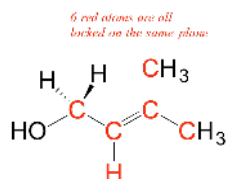


[animation](#)

[video tutorial](#)

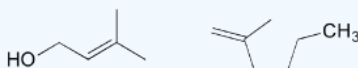
[Interactive 3D model](#) (select 'show resulting pi orbital')

Unlike a sigma bond, a pi bond does *not* have cylindrical symmetry. If rotation about this bond were to occur, it would involve disrupting the side-by-side overlap between the two $2p_z$ orbitals that make up the pi bond. The presence of the pi bond thus 'locks' the six atoms of ethene into the same plane. This argument extends to larger alkene groups: in each case, six atoms lie in the same plane.



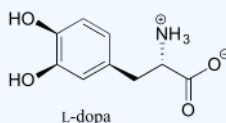
Exercise 2.4

Redraw the structures below, indicating the six atoms that lie in the same plane due to the carbon-carbon double bond.



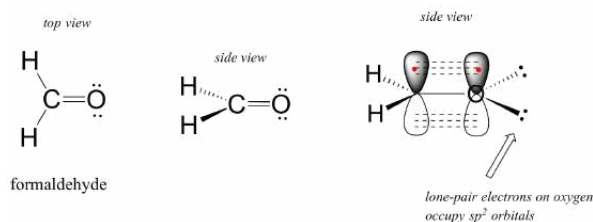
Exercise 2.5

What is wrong with the way the following structure is drawn?



[Solutions to exercises](#)

A similar picture can be drawn for the bonding in carbonyl groups, such as formaldehyde. In this molecule, the carbon is sp^2 -hybridized, and we will assume that the oxygen atom is also sp^2 hybridized. The carbon has three sigma bonds: two are formed by overlap between sp^2 orbitals with 1s orbitals from hydrogen atoms, and the third sigma bond is formed by overlap between the remaining carbon sp^2 orbital and an sp^2 orbital on the oxygen. The two lone pairs on oxygen occupy its other two sp^2 orbitals.



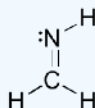
[spacefilling image](#)

[interactive 3D model](#)

The pi bond is formed by side-by-side overlap of the unhybridized $2p_z$ orbitals on the carbon and the oxygen. Just like in alkenes, the $2p_z$ orbitals that form the pi bond are perpendicular to the plane formed by the sigma bonds.

Exercise 2.6?

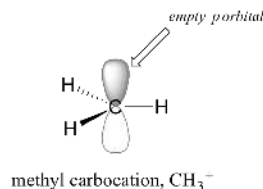
- Draw a diagram of hybrid orbitals in an sp^2 -hybridized nitrogen.
- Draw a figure showing the bonding picture for the imine below.



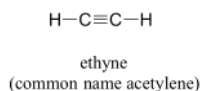
- In your drawing for part b, what kind of orbital holds the nitrogen lone pair?

[Solutions to exercises](#)

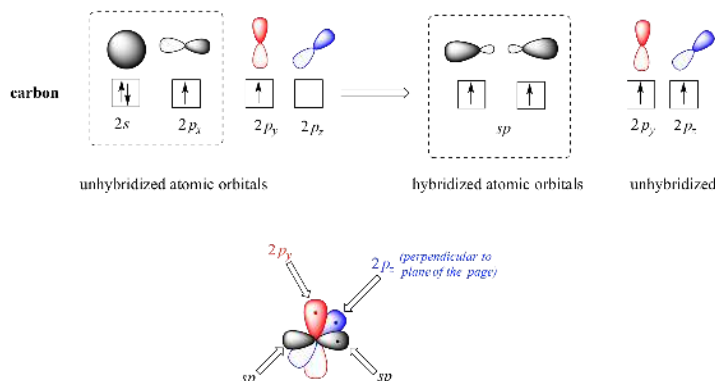
Recall that carbocations are transient, high-energy species in which a carbon only has three bonds (rather than the usual four) and a positive formal charge. We will have much more to say about carbocations in this and later chapters. For now, though, the important thing to understand is that a carbocation can be described as an sp^2 -hybridized carbon with an **empty** $2p$ orbital perpendicular to the plane of the sigma bonds.



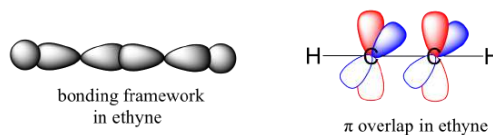
Finally, the hybrid orbital concept applies as well to triple-bonded groups, such as alkynes and nitriles. Consider, for example, the structure of ethyne (common name acetylene), the simplest alkyne.



Both the VSEPR theory and experimental evidence tells us that the molecule is linear: all four atoms lie in a straight line. The carbon-carbon triple bond is only 120 pm long, shorter than the double bond in ethene, and is very strong, about 837 kJ/mol. In the hybrid orbital picture of acetylene, both carbons are **sp -hybridized**. In an sp -hybridized carbon, the $2s$ orbital combines with the $2p_x$ orbital to form two sp hybrid orbitals that are oriented at an angle of 180° with respect to each other (eg. along the x axis). The $2p_y$ and $2p_z$ orbitals remain unhybridized, and are oriented perpendicularly along the y and z axes, respectively.



The carbon-carbon sigma bond, then, is formed by the overlap of one sp orbital from each of the carbons, while the two carbon-hydrogen sigma bonds are formed by the overlap of the second sp orbital on each carbon with a $1s$ orbital on a hydrogen. Each carbon atom still has two half-filled $2p_y$ and $2p_z$ orbitals, which are perpendicular both to each other and to the line formed by the sigma bonds. These two perpendicular pairs of $2p$ orbitals form two pi bonds between the carbons, resulting in a triple bond overall (one sigma bond plus two pi bonds).



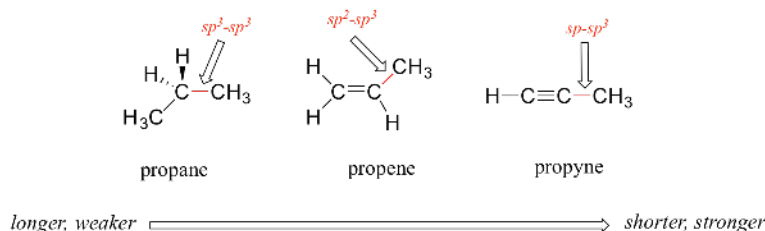
[interactive 3D model](#)

Exercise 2.7

Look at the structure of thiamine diphosphate in the 'structures of common coenzymes' table. Identify the hybridization of all carbon atoms in the molecule.

[Solutions to exercises](#)

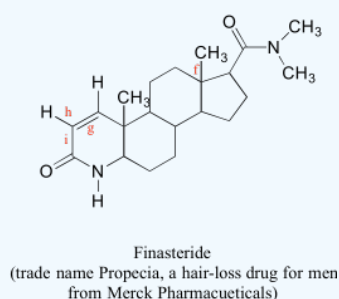
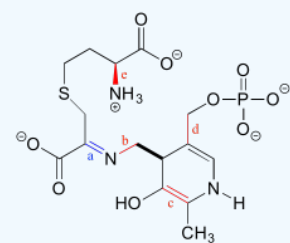
The hybrid orbital concept nicely explains another experimental observation: single bonds adjacent to double and triple bonds are progressively shorter and stronger than single bonds adjacent to other single bonds. Consider for example, the carbon-carbon single bonds in propane, propene, and propyne.



All three are single (sigma) bonds; the bond in propyne is shortest and strongest, while the bond in propane is longest and weakest. The explanation is relatively straightforward. An sp orbital is composed of one s orbital and one p orbital, and thus it has 50% s character and 50% p character. sp^2 orbitals, by comparison, have 33% s character and 67% p character, while sp^3 orbitals have 25% s character and 75% p character. Because of their spherical shape, $2s$ orbitals are smaller, and hold electrons closer and 'tighter' to the nucleus, compared to $2p$ orbitals. It follows that electrons in an sp orbital, with its greater s character, are closer to the nucleus than electrons in an sp^2 or sp^3 orbital. Consequently, bonds involving sp - sp^3 overlap (as in propyne) are shorter and stronger than bonds involving sp^2 - sp^3 overlap (as in propene). Bonds involving sp^3 - sp^3 overlap (as in propane) are the longest and weakest of the three.

? Exercise 2.8

- What kinds of orbitals are overlapping in bonds b-i indicated below? Be sure to distinguish between sigma and pi bonds. An example is provided for bond 'a'.
- In what kind of orbital is the lone pair of electrons located on the nitrogen atom of bond a? Of bond e?



Bond a:
sigma bond: overlap of sp^2 orbital on N and sp^2 orbital on C
pi bond: overlap of $2p$ orbital on N and $2p$ orbital on C

Solutions to exercises

[Khan Academy video tutorial on valence bond theory / hybrid orbitals](#)

Contributors and Attributions

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled 1.2: Valence Bond Theory is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 2.2: Valence Bond Theory by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Functional Groups

For week 2, we have one goal: Learn to recognize the key organic chemistry functional groups and to understand how they are named.

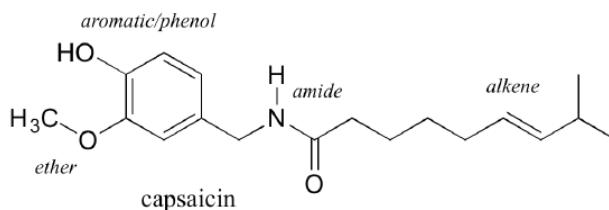
[2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature](#)

[2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II](#)

[2: Functional Groups](#) is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

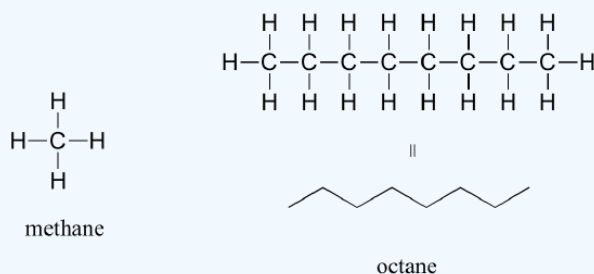
Functional groups are structural units within organic compounds that are defined by specific bonding arrangements between specific atoms. The structure of capsaicin, the compound discussed in the beginning of this chapter, incorporates several functional groups, labeled in the figure below and explained throughout this section.



As we progress in our study of organic chemistry, it will become extremely important to be able to quickly recognize the most common functional groups, because *they are the key structural elements that define how organic molecules react*. For now, we will only worry about drawing and recognizing each functional group, as depicted by Lewis and line structures. Much of the remainder of your study of organic chemistry will be taken up with learning about how the different functional groups behave in organic reactions.

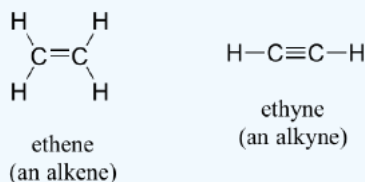
The 'default' in organic chemistry (essentially, the *lack* of any functional groups) is given the term **alkane**, characterized by single bonds between carbon and carbon, or between carbon and hydrogen. Methane, CH_4 , is the natural gas you may burn in your furnace. Octane, C_8H_{18} , is a component of gasoline.

✓ Alkanes

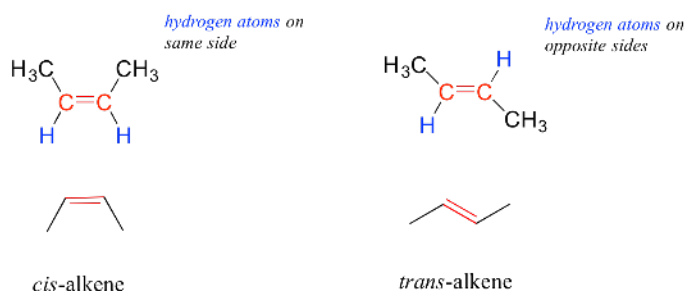


Alkenes (sometimes called **olefins**) have carbon-carbon double bonds, and **alkynes** have carbon-carbon triple bonds. Ethene, the simplest alkene example, is a gas that serves as a cellular signal in fruits to stimulate ripening. (If you want bananas to ripen quickly, put them in a paper bag along with an apple - the apple emits ethene gas, setting off the ripening process in the bananas). Ethyne, commonly called acetylene, is used as a fuel in welding blow torches.

✓ Alkenes and alkynes



In chapter 2, we will study the nature of the bonding on alkenes and alkynes, and learn that that the bonding in alkenes is trigonal planar in in alkynes is linear. Furthermore, many alkenes can take two geometric forms: **cis** or **trans**. The *cis* and *trans* forms of a given alkene are different molecules with different physical properties because, as we will learn in chapter 2, there is a very high energy barrier to rotation about a double bond. In the example below, the difference between *cis* and *trans* alkenes is readily apparent.

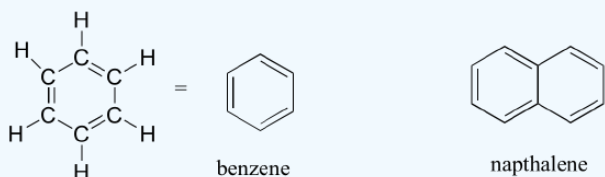


We will have more to say about the subject of *cis* and *trans* alkenes in chapter 3, and we will learn much more about the reactivity of alkenes in chapter 14.

Alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes are all classified as **hydrocarbons**, because they are composed solely of carbon and hydrogen atoms. Alkanes are said to be **saturated hydrocarbons**, because the carbons are bonded to the maximum possible number of hydrogens - in other words, they are *saturated* with hydrogen atoms. The double and triple-bonded carbons in alkenes and alkynes have fewer hydrogen atoms bonded to them - they are thus referred to as **unsaturated hydrocarbons**. As we will see in chapter 15, hydrogen can be added to double and triple bonds, in a type of reaction called 'hydrogenation'.

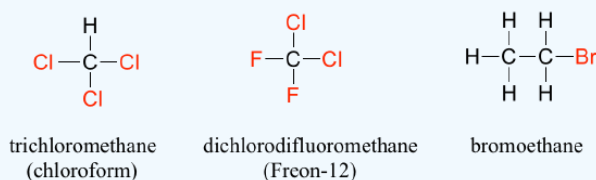
The **aromatic** group is exemplified by benzene (which used to be a commonly used solvent on the organic lab, but which was shown to be carcinogenic), and naphthalene, a compound with a distinctive 'mothball' smell. Aromatic groups are planar (flat) ring structures, and are widespread in nature. We will learn more about the structure and reactions of aromatic groups in chapters 2 and 14.

✓ Aromatics



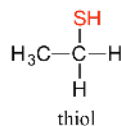
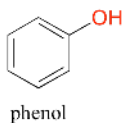
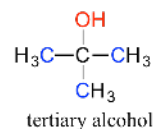
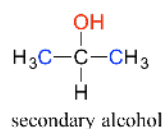
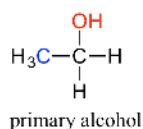
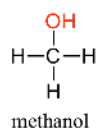
When the carbon of an alkane is bonded to one or more halogens, the group is referred to as a **alkyl halide** or **haloalkane**. Chloroform is a useful solvent in the laboratory, and was one of the earlier anesthetic drugs used in surgery. Chlorodifluoromethane was used as a refrigerant and in aerosol sprays until the late twentieth century, but its use was discontinued after it was found to have harmful effects on the ozone layer. Bromoethane is a simple alkyl halide often used in organic synthesis. Alkyl halides groups are quite rare in biomolecules.

✓ Haloalkanes

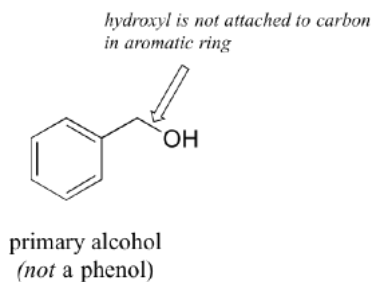


In the **alcohol** functional group, a carbon is single-bonded to an OH group (the OH group, by itself, is referred to as a **hydroxyl**). Except for methanol, all alcohols can be classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary. In a **primary alcohol**, the carbon bonded to the OH group is also bonded to only one other carbon. In a **secondary alcohol** and **tertiary alcohol**, the carbon is bonded to two or three other carbons, respectively. When the hydroxyl group is *directly* attached to an aromatic ring, the resulting group is called a **phenol**. The sulfur analog of an alcohol is called a **thiol** (from the Greek *thio*, for sulfur).

✓ Alcohols, phenols, and thiols

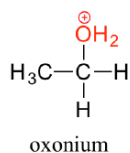
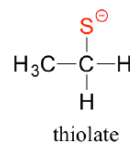
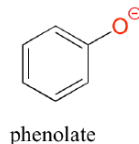
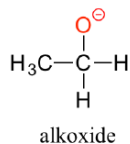


Note that the definition of a phenol states that the hydroxyl oxygen must be *directly* attached to one of the carbons of the aromatic ring. The compound below, therefore, is *not* a phenol - it is a primary alcohol.



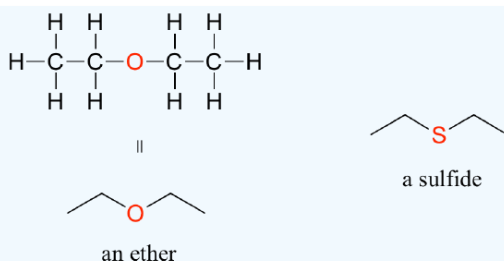
The distinction is important, because as we will see later, there is a significant difference in the reactivity of alcohols and phenols.

The deprotonated forms of alcohols, phenols, and thiols are called **alkoxides**, **phenolates**, and **thiolates**, respectively. A protonated alcohol is an **oxonium** ion.



In an **ether** functional group, a central oxygen is bonded to two carbons. Below is the structure of diethyl ether, a common laboratory solvent and also one of the first compounds to be used as an anesthetic during operations. The sulfur analog of an ether is called a **thioether** or **sulfide**.

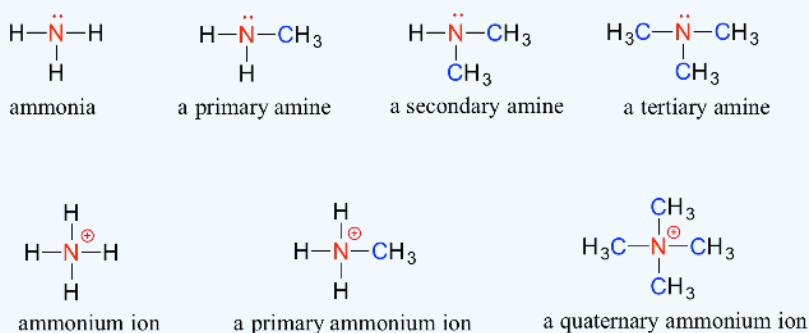
✓ Ethers and sulfides



Amines are characterized by nitrogen atoms with single bonds to hydrogen and carbon. Just as there are primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols, there are primary, secondary, and tertiary amines. Ammonia is a special case with no carbon atoms.

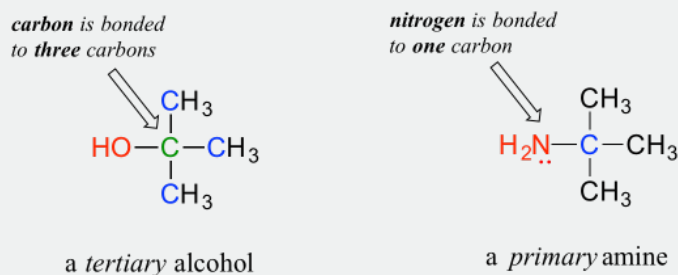
One of the most important properties of amines is that they are basic, and are readily protonated to form **ammonium** cations. In the case where a nitrogen has four bonds to carbon (which is somewhat unusual in biomolecules), it is called a quaternary ammonium ion.

✓ Amines



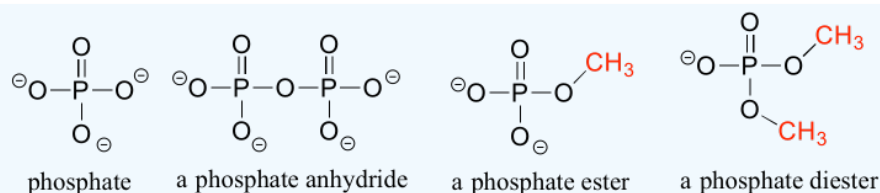
📌 Note

Do not be confused by how the terms 'primary', 'secondary', and 'tertiary' are applied to alcohols versus amines - the definitions are different. In alcohols, what matters is how many other carbons the alcohol *carbon* is bonded to, while in amines, what matters is how many carbons the *nitrogen* is bonded to.



Phosphate and its derivative functional groups are ubiquitous in biomolecules. Phosphate linked to a single organic group is called a **phosphate ester**; when it has two links to organic groups it is called a **phosphate diester**. A linkage between two phosphates creates a **phosphate anhydride**.

Organic phosphates

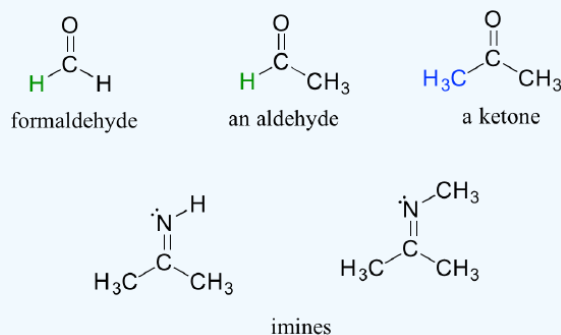


Chapter 9 of this book is devoted to the structure and reactivity of the phosphate group.

There are a number of functional groups that contain a carbon-oxygen double bond, which is commonly referred to as a **carbonyl**. **Ketones** and **aldehydes** are two closely related carbonyl-based functional groups that react in very similar ways. In a ketone, the carbon atom of a carbonyl is bonded to two other carbons. In an aldehyde, the carbonyl carbon is bonded on one side to a hydrogen, and on the other side to a carbon. The exception to this definition is formaldehyde, in which the carbonyl carbon has bonds to two hydrogens.

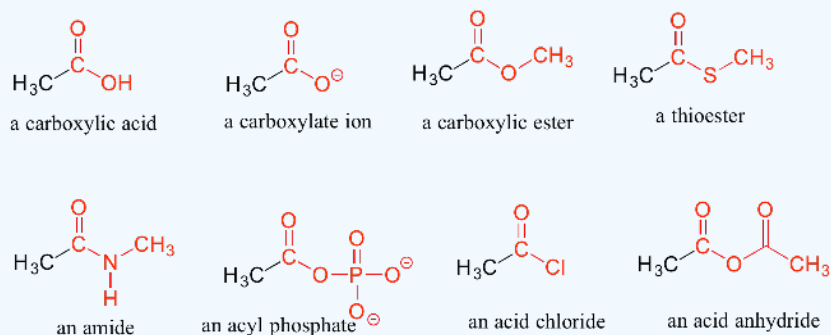
A group with a carbon-nitrogen double bond is called an **imine**, or sometimes a **Schiff base** (in this book we will use the term 'imine'). The chemistry of aldehydes, ketones, and imines will be covered in chapter 10.

✓ Aldehydes, ketones, and imines



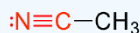
When a carbonyl carbon is bonded on one side to a carbon (or hydrogen) and on the other side to an oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur, the functional group is considered to be one of the '**carboxylic acid derivatives**', a designation that describes a set of related functional groups. The eponymous member of this family is the **carboxylic acid** functional group, in which the carbonyl is bonded to a hydroxyl group. The conjugate base of a carboxylic acid is a **carboxylate**. Other derivatives are carboxylic esters (usually just called '**esters**'), **thioesters**, **amides**, **acyl phosphates**, **acid chlorides**, and **acid anhydrides**. With the exception of acid chlorides and acid anhydrides, the carboxylic acid derivatives are very common in biological molecules and/or metabolic pathways, and their structure and reactivity will be discussed in detail in chapter 11.

✓ Carboxylic acid derivatives



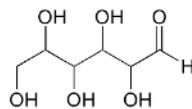
Finally, a **nitrile** group is characterized by a carbon triple-bonded to a nitrogen.

✓ Nitriles

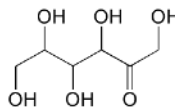


acetonitrile

A single compound often contains several functional groups, particularly in biological organic chemistry. The six-carbon sugar molecules glucose and fructose, for example, contain aldehyde and ketone groups, respectively, and both contain five alcohol groups (a compound with several alcohol groups is often referred to as a '**polyol**').

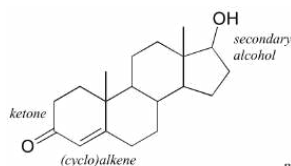


glucose

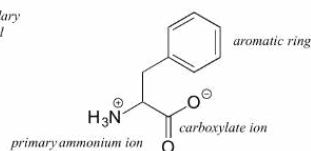


fructose

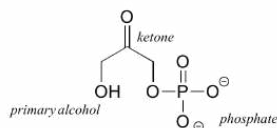
The hormone testosterone, the amino acid phenylalanine, and the glycolysis metabolite dihydroxyacetone phosphate all contain multiple functional groups, as labeled below.



testosterone



phenylalanine

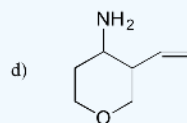
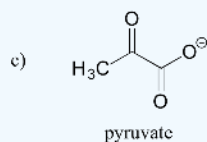
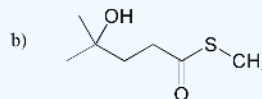
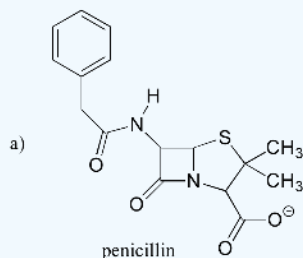


dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP)

While not in any way a complete list, this section has covered most of the important functional groups that we will encounter in biological organic chemistry. Table 9 in the tables section at the back of this book provides a summary of all of the groups listed in this section, plus a few more that will be introduced later in the text.

Exercise 1.12

Identify the functional groups (other than alkanes) in the following organic compounds. State whether alcohols and amines are primary, secondary, or tertiary.



Solutions to exercises

Exercise 1.13

Draw one example each of compounds fitting the descriptions below, using line structures. Be sure to designate the location of all non-zero formal charges. All atoms should have complete octets (phosphorus may exceed the octet rule). There are many possible correct answers for these, so be sure to check your structures with your instructor or tutor.

- a compound with molecular formula $C_6H_{11}NO$ that includes alkene, secondary amine, and primary alcohol functional groups
- an ion with molecular formula $C_3H_5O_6P^{2-}$ that includes aldehyde, secondary alcohol, and phosphate functional groups.
- A compound with molecular formula C_6H_9NO that has an amide functional group, and does *not* have an alkene group.

Naming organic compounds

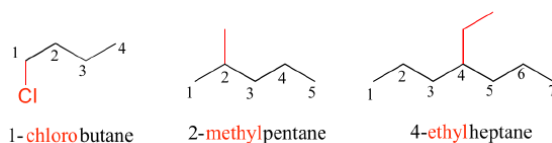
A system has been devised by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC, usually pronounced *eye-you-pack*) for naming organic compounds. While the IUPAC system is convenient for naming relatively small, simple organic compounds, it is not generally used in the naming of biomolecules, which tend to be quite large and complex. It is, however, a good idea (even for biologists) to become familiar with the basic structure of the IUPAC system, and be able to draw simple structures based on IUPAC names.

Naming an organic compound usually begins with identify what is referred to as the '**parent chain**', which is the longest straight chain of carbon atoms. We'll start with the simplest straight chain alkane structures. CH_4 is called **methane**, and C_2H_6 **ethane**. The table below continues with the names of longer straight-chain alkanes: be sure to commit these to memory, as they are the basis for the rest of the IUPAC nomenclature system (and are widely used in naming biomolecules as well).

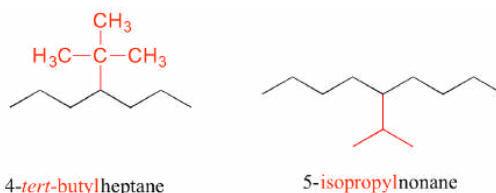
✓ Names for straight-chain alkanes:

- 1 carbon: methane
- 2 carbons: ethane
- 3 carbons: propane
- 4 carbons: butane
- 5 carbons: pentane
- 6 carbons: hexane
- 7 carbons: heptane
- 8 carbons: octane
- 9 carbons: nonane
- 10 carbons: decane

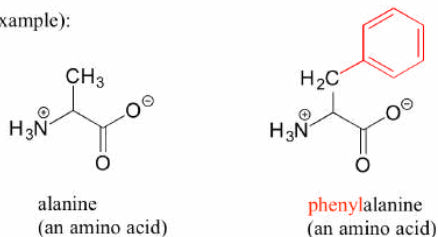
Substituents branching from the main parent chain are located by a carbon number, with *the lowest possible numbers* being used (for example, notice in the example below that the compound on the left is named 1-chlorobutane, *not* 4-chlorobutane). When the substituents are small alkyl groups, the terms **methyl**, **ethyl**, and **propyl** are used.



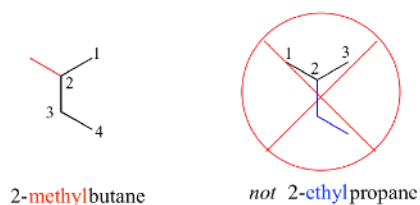
Other common names for hydrocarbon substituent groups are **isopropyl**, **tert-butyl** and **phenyl**.



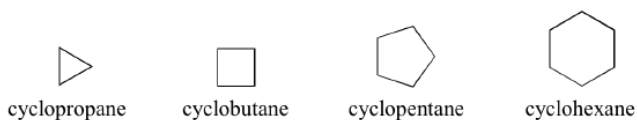
(non-IUPAC example):



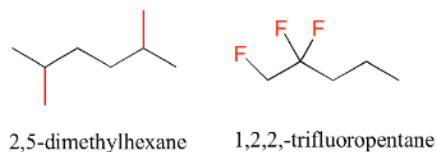
Notice in the example below, an 'ethyl group' (in blue) is not treated as a substituent, rather it is included as part of the parent chain, and the methyl group is treated as a substituent. The IUPAC name for straight-chain hydrocarbons is always based on the *longest possible parent chain*, which in this case is four carbons, not three.



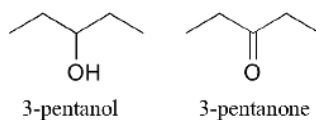
Cyclic alkanes are called cyclopropane, cyclobutane, cyclopentane, cyclohexane, and so on:



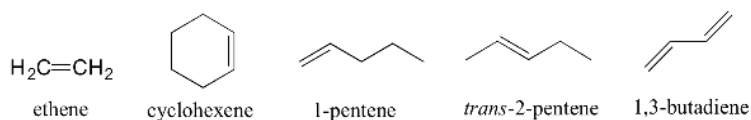
In the case of multiple substituents, the prefixes *di*, *tri*, and *tetra* are used.



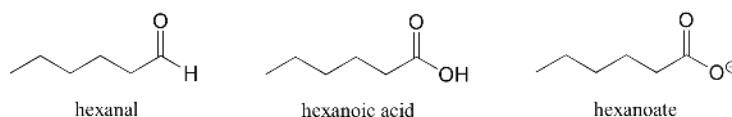
Functional groups have characteristic suffixes. Alcohols, for example, have '**ol**' appended to the parent chain name, along with a number designating the location of the hydroxyl group. Ketones are designated by '**one**'.



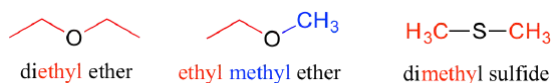
Alkenes are designated with an 'ene' ending, and when necessary the location and geometry of the double bond are indicated. Compounds with multiple double bonds are called dienes, trienes, etc.



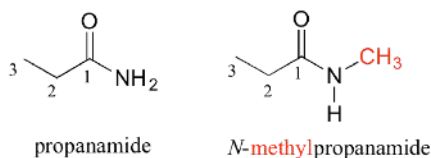
Some groups can only be present on a terminal carbon, and thus a locating number is not necessary: aldehydes end in 'al', carboxylic acids in 'oic acid', and carboxylates in 'oate'.



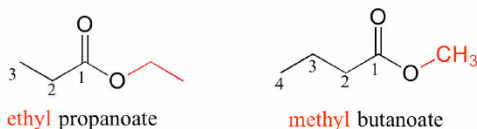
Ethers and sulfides are designated by naming the two groups on either side of the oxygen or sulfur.



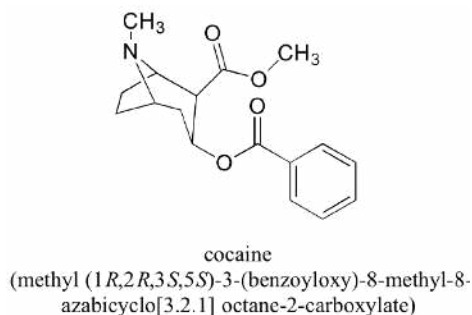
If an amide has an unsubstituted -NH_2 group, the suffix is simply 'amide'. In the case of a substituted amide, the group attached to the amide nitrogen is named first, along with the letter 'N' to clarify where this group is located. Note that the structures below are both based on a three-carbon (propan) parent chain.



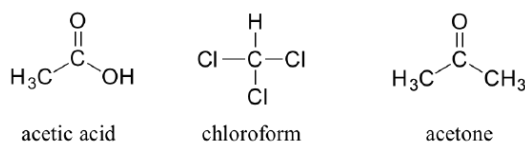
For esters, the suffix is 'oate'. The group attached to the oxygen is named first.



All of the examples we have seen so far have been simple in the sense that only one functional group was present on each molecule. There are of course many more rules in the IUPAC system, and as you can imagine, the IUPAC naming of larger molecules with multiple functional groups, ring structures, and substituents can get very unwieldy very quickly. The illicit drug cocaine, for example, has the IUPAC name 'methyl (1R,2R,3S,5S)-3-(benzoyloxy)-8-methyl-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1] octane-2-carboxylate' (this name includes designations for stereochemistry, which is a structural issue that we will not tackle until chapter 3).



You can see why the IUPAC system is not used very much in biological organic chemistry - the molecules are just too big and complex. A further complication is that, even outside of a biological context, many simple organic molecules are known almost universally by their 'common', rather than IUPAC names. The compounds acetic acid, chloroform, and acetone are only a few examples.



In biochemistry, nonsystematic names (like 'cocaine', 'capsaicin', 'pyruvate' or 'ascorbic acid') are usually used, and when systematic nomenclature is employed it is often specific to the class of molecule in question: different systems have evolved, for example, for fats and for carbohydrates. We will not focus very intensively in this text on IUPAC nomenclature or any other nomenclature system, but if you undertake a more advanced study in organic or biological chemistry you may be expected to learn one or more naming systems in some detail.

Exercise 1.14

Give IUPAC names for acetic acid, chloroform, and acetone.

Exercise 1.15

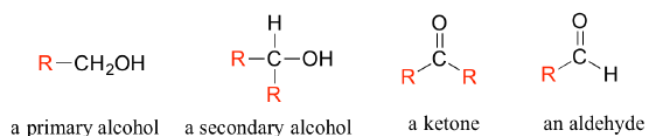
Draw line structures of the following compounds, based on what you have learned about the IUPAC nomenclature system:

- methylcyclohexane
- 5-methyl-1-hexanol
- 2-methyl-2-butene
- 5-chloropentanal
- 2,2-dimethylcyclohexanone
- 4-penteneoic acid
- N*-ethyl-*N*-cyclopentylbutanamide

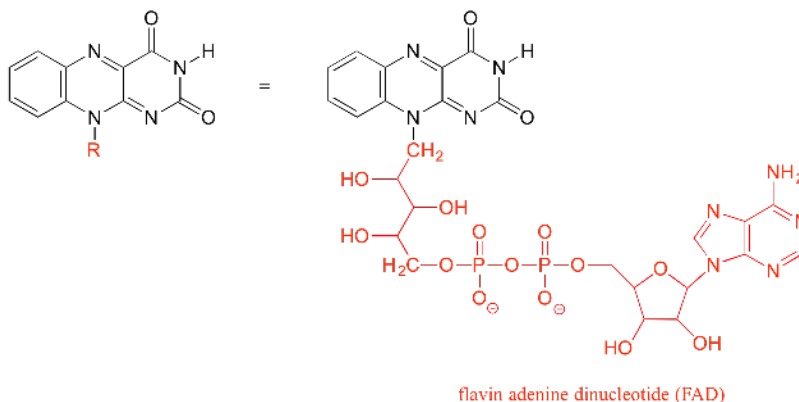
Solutions to exercises

Drawing abbreviated organic structures

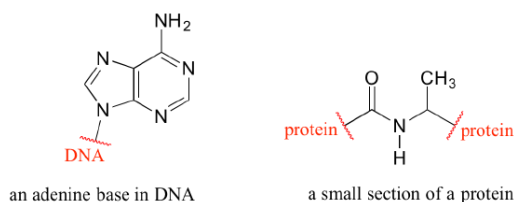
Often when drawing organic structures, chemists find it convenient to use the letter 'R' to designate part of a molecule outside of the region of interest. If we just want to refer in general to a functional group without drawing a specific molecule, for example, we can use 'R groups' to focus attention on the group of interest:



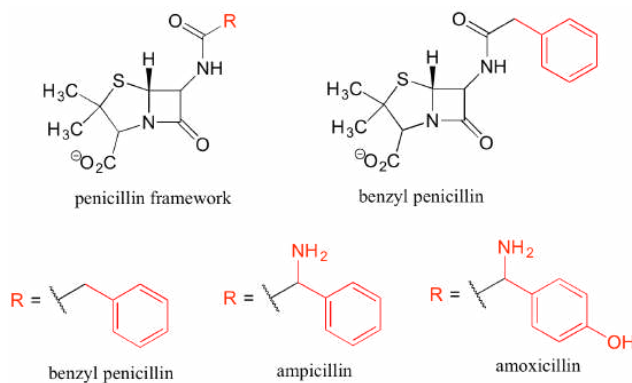
The 'R' group is a convenient way to abbreviate the structures of large biological molecules, especially when we are interested in something that is occurring specifically at one location on the molecule. For example, in chapter 15 when we look at biochemical oxidation-reduction reactions involving the flavin molecule, we will abbreviate a large part of the flavin structure which does not change at all in the reactions of interest:



As an alternative, we can use a 'break' symbol to indicate that we are looking at a small piece or section of a larger molecule. This is used commonly in the context of drawing groups on large polymers such as proteins or DNA.



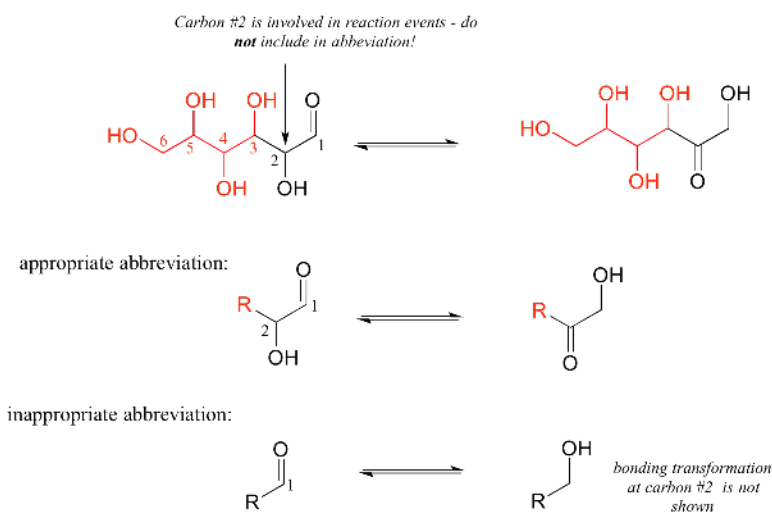
Finally, 'R' groups can be used to concisely illustrate a series of related compounds, such as the family of penicillin-based antibiotics.



Using abbreviations appropriately is a very important skill to develop when studying organic chemistry in a biological context, because although many biomolecules are very large and complex (and take forever to draw!), usually we are focusing on just one small part of the molecule where a change is taking place.

As a rule, you *should never abbreviate any atom involved in a bond-breaking or bond-forming event that is being illustrated*: only abbreviate that part of the molecule which is not involved in the reaction of interest.

For example, carbon #2 in the reactant/product below most definitely is involved in bonding changes, and therefore should not be included in the 'R' group.

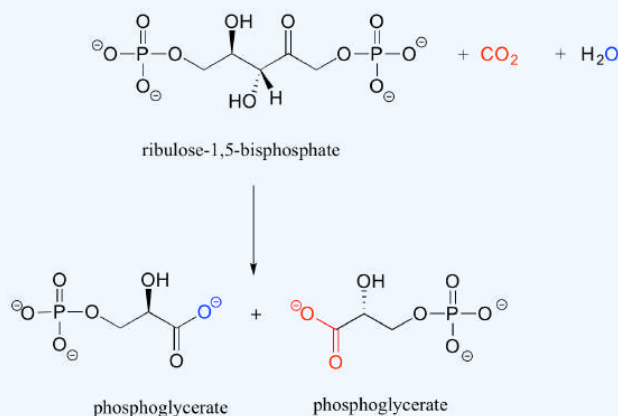


If you are unsure whether to draw out part of a structure or abbreviate it, the safest thing to do is to draw it out.



a) If you intend to draw out the chemical details of a reaction in which the methyl ester functional group of cocaine (see earlier figure) was converted to a carboxylate plus methanol, what would be an appropriate abbreviation to use for the cocaine structure (assuming that you *only* wanted to discuss the chemistry specifically occurring at the ester group)?

b) Below is the (somewhat complicated) reaction catalyzed by an enzyme known as 'Rubisco', by which plants 'fix' carbon dioxide. Carbon dioxide and the oxygen of water are colored red and blue respectively to help you see where those atoms are incorporated into the products. Propose an appropriate abbreviation for the starting compound (ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate), using two different 'R' groups, R₁ and R₂.



Solutions to exercises

[Khan Academy video tutorial on functional groups](#)

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [1.3: Functional groups and organic nomenclature](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II

What does Moby Dick have in common with train engines and skin cream?

"Towards thee I roll, thou all-destroying but unconquering whale; to the last I grapple with thee; from hell's heart I stab at thee; for hate's sake I spit my last breath at thee. Sink all coffins and all hearses to one common pool! and since neither can be mine, let me then tow to pieces, while still chasing thee, though tied to thee, thou damned whale! THUS, I give up the spear!" The harpoon was darted; the stricken whale flew forward; with igniting velocity the line ran through the grooves;--ran foul. Ahab stooped to clear it; he did clear it; but the flying turn caught him round the neck, and voicelessly as Turkish mutes bowstring their victim, he was shot out of the boat, ere the crew knew he was gone. Next instant, the heavy eye-splice in the rope's final end flew out of the stark-empty tub, knocked down an oarsman, and smiting the sea, disappeared in its depths.

Herman Melville, Moby Dick

In the classic 19th century novel 'Moby Dick', Herman Melville's Captain Ahab obsessively hunts down the enormous albino sperm whale which years before had taken one of his legs, the monomaniacal quest ending with Ahab being dragged by the neck to the bottom of the sea by his enormous white nemesis. It is fitting, somehow, that one of the most memorable fictional characters in modern literature should be a real-life 50 ton monster – sperm whales are such fantastic creatures that if they didn't in fact exist, it would stretch the imagination to make them up. They are the largest predator on the planet, diving to depths of up to three kilometers and staying down as long as 90 minutes to hunt the giant squid and other deep-dwelling species that make up the bulk of their diet.



(Credit: <https://www.flickr.com/photos/biodivlibrary/>)

It would be hard for anyone to mistake a sperm whale for any other creature in the ocean, due to their enormous, squared-off foreheads. It is what is inside this distinctive physical feature, though, that brought them to the edge of extinction in the middle of the 20th century. For over 200 years, sperm whales had been prized by whalers for the oil that fills the 'spermaceti' and 'melon' compartments which make up the bulk of the front part of their bodies. Whalers in the 17th and 18th centuries would lower one of their crew into a hole cut into a captured whale, and he would literally ladle out the 'sperm oil' by the bucketful, often filling eight barrels from the head of one animal. The different processed components obtained from raw sperm oil had properties that were ideal for a multitude of applications: as a lubricant for everything from sewing machines to train engines, as a fuel for lamps, and as a prized ingredient in cosmetics and skin products.

'Sperm oil' is not really an oil – it is mostly liquid wax. The composition of waxes in sperm oil is complex and variable throughout the life of the animal, but in general contains waxes with saturated and unsaturated hydrocarbon chains ranging from 16 to 24

carbons.

Remarkably, scientists are still not sure about the function of the enormous wax-filled reservoirs in the sperm whale's forehead. The most prevalent hypothesis holds that they play a role in echolocation. In the pitch-black void of the deep ocean a whale's eyes are useless, but it is able to navigate and locate prey in the same way that a bat does, using the reflection of sound waves. In fact, the sonic clicks generated by the sperm whale are the loudest sounds generated by any animal on earth. The wax reservoirs may be used somehow for the directional focusing of these sound waves.

Another intriguing but unproven hypothesis is that the reservoir serves as a buoyancy control device. The wax is normally liquid and buoyant at the whale's normal body temperature, but solidifies and becomes denser than water at lower temperatures. If the diving whale could cool the wax by directing cold seawater around the reservoir and restricting blood flow to the region, it could achieve negative buoyancy and thus conserve energy that otherwise would be expended in swimming down. When it needs to return to the surface, blood could be redirected to the wax, which would melt and become positively buoyant again, thus conserving energy on the upward trip.

Whatever its natural function, it is inarguable that the physical and chemical properties of sperm oil make it valuable, both to the whale and to humans. Fortunately for the world's population of whales, both economic forces and conservation efforts have made virtually all trade in sperm oil a thing of the past. Beginning in the late 19th century, the discovery of new oil fields and advances in petroleum processing led to the use of cheaper mineral oil alternatives for many of the major applications of sperm oil, one of the most notable substitutions being the use of kerosene for lamps. More recently, the 'oil' from the Jojoba plant, a native of the American southwest, has been found to be an excellent substitute for sperm oil in cosmetics and skin products, exhibiting many of the same desirable characteristics. Jojoba oil, like sperm oil, is composed primarily of liquid waxes rather than actual oils, and a major selling point of both is that the oily substance produced by human skin, called sebum, is also composed of about 25% wax.

While organic and biological chemistry is a very diverse field of study, one fundamental question that interests all organic chemists is how the structure of an organic molecule determines its physical properties. To understand why sperm oil has properties that made it both a useful industrial lubricant for humans and an effective buoyancy control and/or sonic lens for a hunting sperm whale, we first have to understand the nature of both the forces holding each wax molecule together – the covalent single and double bonds between atoms – and also the forces governing the noncovalent interactions between one wax molecule and all the others around it – the so-called 'intermolecular forces' which determine physical properties such as viscosity, melting point, and density.

That is what we will learn about in this chapter. First, we will look more closely at the nature of single and double covalent bonds, using the concepts of 'hybrid orbitals' and 'resonance' to attempt to explain how orbital overlap results in characteristic geometries and rotational behavior for single and double bonds, as well as bonds that have characteristics of somewhere in between single and double. Then we will move on to a review of the noncovalent interactions between molecules - Van der Waals, ion-ion, dipole-dipole and ion-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonds - and how they are manifested in the observable physical properties of all organic substances.

Before reading any further on this chapter, you will probably need to go back and review some topics from your Introductory Chemistry course. Be sure that you understand the concepts of atomic orbitals, atomic electron configuration, and that you are able to describe *s* and *p* orbitals and orbital lobes and nodes. Now would also be a very good time to review VSEPR theory. You might want to watch review tutorials from Kahn academy on [atomic orbitals and electron configuration](#) and [dot structures and VSEPR theory](#).

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II has no license indicated.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Properties and Principles

3.0: Non-covalent interactions

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

3.2: Resonance

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

3: Properties and Principles is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

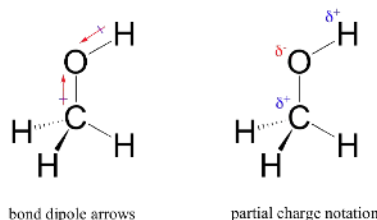
3.0: Non-covalent interactions

Until now we have been focusing on understanding the covalent bonds that hold individual molecules together. We turn next to a review on the subject of non-covalent interactions *between* molecules, or between different functional groups within a single molecule. You have probably learned all of these concepts already in your general chemistry course, but this review will focus on applications to organic and biological chemistry, and specifically will allow us to explain differences in physical properties -such boiling points, melting points, and solubility - between different organic compounds. An understanding of noncovalent interactions is also critical for looking at the environment inside the active site of an enzyme, where much of the chemistry that we will study in this book takes place.

Dipoles

To understand the nature of noncovalent interactions, we first must return to covalent bonds and delve into the subject of dipoles. Many of the covalent bonds that we have seen – between two carbons, for example, or between a carbon and a hydrogen –involve the approximately equal sharing of electrons between the two atoms in the bond. In these examples, the two atoms have approximately the same **electronegativity**. Recall from your general chemistry course that electronegativity refers to “ the power of an atom in a molecule to attract electrons to itself” (this is the definition offered by Linus Pauling, the eminent 20th-century American chemist who was primarily responsible for developing many of the bonding concepts that we have been learning).

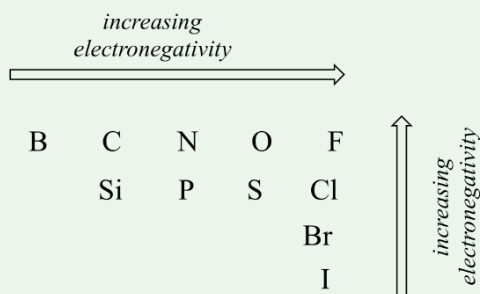
However, quite often in organic chemistry we deal with covalent bonds between two atoms with different electronegativities, and in these cases the sharing of electrons is not equal: the more electronegative nucleus pulls the two electrons closer. In the carbon-oxygen bond of an alcohol, for example, the two electrons in the sigma bond are held more closely to the oxygen than they are to the carbon, because oxygen is significantly more electronegative than carbon. The same is true for the oxygen-hydrogen bond, as hydrogen is slightly less electronegative than carbon, and much less electronegative than oxygen.



The result of this unequal sharing is what we call a **bond dipole**, which exists in a **polar covalent bond**. A bond dipole has both negative and positive ends, or poles, where electron density is lower (the positive pole) and higher (the negative pole). The difference in electron density can be expressed using the Greek letter *delta* to denote ‘partial positive’ and ‘partial negative’ charge on the atoms. ‘Dipole arrows’, with a positive sign on the tail, are also used to indicated the negative (higher electron density) direction of the dipole.

The degree of polarity in a covalent bond depends on the difference in electronegativity between the two atoms. Electronegativity is a periodic trend: it increases going from left to right across a row of the periodic table of the elements, and also increases as we move up a column. Therefore, oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen, which is in turn more electronegative than carbon. Oxygen is also more electronegative than sulfur. Fluorine, in the top right corner of the periodic table, is the most electronegative of the elements. Hydrogen is slightly less electronegative than carbon.

Periodic trends in electronegativity

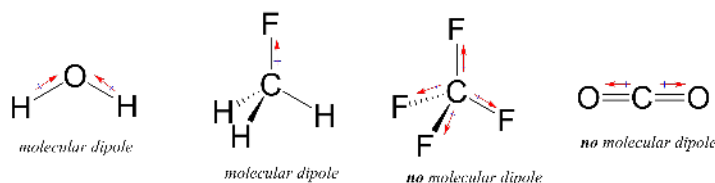


? Exercise 2.26

Using what you about atomic orbitals, rationalize the periodic trends in electronegativity. Why does it increase from left to right, and decrease from top to bottom? This is a good question to talk through with classmates and an instructor or tutor.

Solutions to exercises

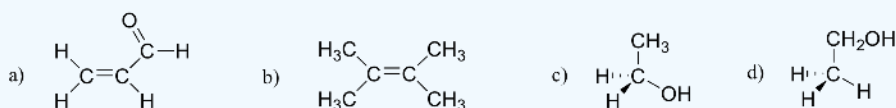
Most molecules contain both polar and nonpolar covalent bonds. Depending on the location of polar bonds and bonding geometry, molecules may posses a net polarity, called a **molecular dipole moment**. Water, as you probably recall, has a dipole moment that results from the combined dipoles of its two oxygen-hydrogen bonds. Fluoromethane also has a dipole moment.



Tetrafluoromethane, however, has four polar bonds that pull equally in to the four corners of a tetahedron, meaning that although there are four bond dipoles there is no overall *molecular* dipole moment. Carbon dioxide also lacks a molecular dipole moment.

? Exercise 2.27

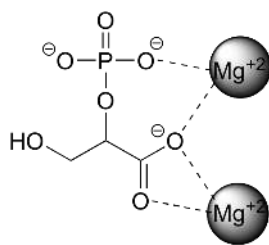
Which of the molecules below have molecular dipole moments?



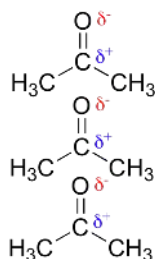
Solutions to exercises

Ion-ion, dipole-dipole and ion-dipole interactions

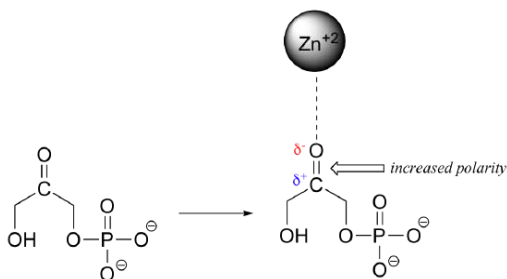
The strongest type of non-covalent interaction is between two ionic groups of opposite charge (an **ion-ion** or **charge-charge interaction**). You probably saw lots of examples of ionic bonds in inorganic compounds in your general chemistry course: for example, table salt is composed of sodium cations and chloride anions, held in a crystal lattice by ion-ion interactions. One of the most common examples in biological organic chemistry is the interaction between a magnesium cation (Mg^{+2}) and an anionic carboxylate or phosphate group. The figure below shows 2-phosphoglycerate, an intermediate in the glycolysis pathway, interacting with two Mg^{+2} ions in the active site of a glycolytic enzyme called enolase.



Polar molecules – those with an overall dipole moment, such as acetone – can align themselves in such a way as to allow their respective positive and negative poles to interact with each other. This is called a **dipole-dipole interaction**.



When a charged species (an ion) interacts favorably with a polar molecule or functional group, the result is called an **ion-dipole interaction**. A common example of ion-dipole interaction in biological organic chemistry is that between a metal cation, most often Mg^{+2} or Zn^{+2} , and the partially negative oxygen of a carbonyl.



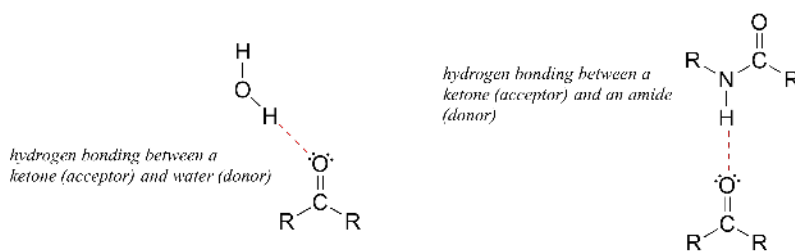
Because the metal cation is very electronegative, this interaction has the effect of pulling electron density in the carbonyl double bond even further toward the oxygen side, increasing the partial positive charge on carbon. As we shall later, this has important implications in terms of the reactivity of carbonyl groups in biochemical reactions.

Van der Waals forces

Nonpolar molecules such as hydrocarbons also are subject to relatively weak but still significant attractive noncovalent forces. **Van der Waals forces** (also called **London dispersion forces** or **nonpolar interactions**) result from the constantly shifting electron density in any molecule. Even a nonpolar molecule will, at any given moment, have a weak, short-lived dipole. This transient dipole will induce a neighboring nonpolar molecule to develop a corresponding transient dipole of its own, with the end result that a transient dipole-dipole interaction is formed. These van der Waals forces are relatively weak, but are constantly forming and dissipating among closely-packed nonpolar molecules, and when added up the cumulative effect can become significant.

Hydrogen bonds

Hydrogen bonds result from the interaction between a hydrogen bonded to an electronegative heteroatom – specifically a nitrogen, oxygen, or fluorine – and lone-pair electrons on a nitrogen, oxygen, or fluorine a neighboring molecule or functional group. Because a hydrogen atom is just a single proton and a single electron, when it loses electron density in a polar bond it essentially becomes an approximation of a ‘naked’ proton, capable of forming a strong interaction with a lone pair on a neighboring electronegative atom.

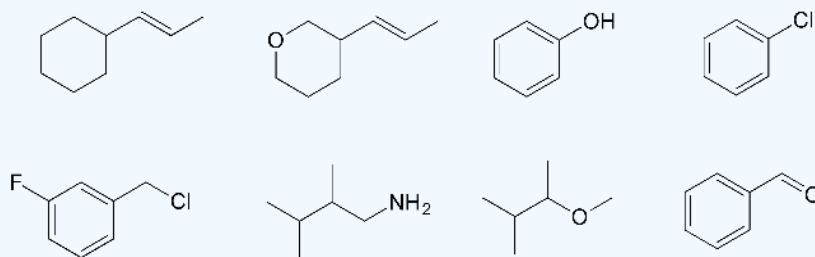


Hydrogen bonds are usually depicted with dotted lines in chemical structures. A group that provides a proton to a hydrogen bond is said to be acting as a **hydrogen bond donor**. A group that provides an oxygen or nitrogen lone pair is said to be acting as a **hydrogen bond acceptor**. Many common organic functional groups can participate in the formation of hydrogen bonds, either as donors, acceptors, or both. Water and alcohols, for example, can be both hydrogen bond donors and acceptors. A carbonyl, as it lacks a hydrogen bound to an oxygen or nitrogen, can only act as a hydrogen bond acceptor.

? Exercise 2.28

Classify the structures below as:

- capable of being both a hydrogen bond donor and acceptor
- capable of being a hydrogen bond acceptor, but not a donor
- not capable of participating in hydrogen bonding.



Exercise 2.29

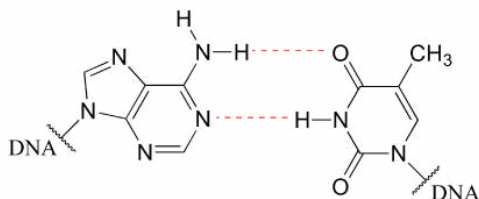
Draw figures that show the hydrogen bonds described below.

- A hydrogen bond between methanol (donor) and water (acceptor).
- A hydrogen bond between methanol (acceptor) and water (donor).
- Two possible hydrogen bonds between methyl acetate and methylamine.

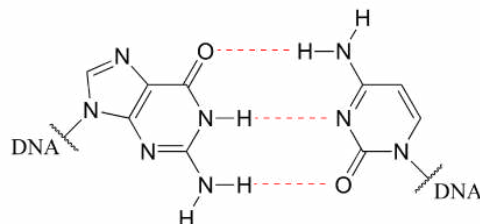
Solutions to exercises

In general, hydrogen bonds are stronger than dipole-dipole interactions, but also much weaker than covalent bonds. The strength of hydrogen bonds has enormous implications in biology. Copying of DNA in the cell, for example, is based on very specific hydrogen bonding arrangements between DNA bases on complimentary strands: adenine pairs with thymine, while guanine pairs with cytosine:

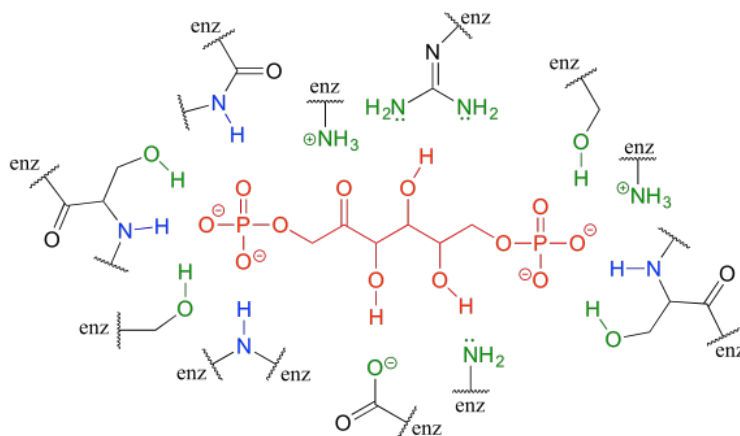
A-T base pair:



G-C base pair:



Hydrogen bonds, as well as the other types of noncovalent interactions, are very important in terms of the binding of a ligand to a protein. In section 1.3, we saw a 'space-filling' picture of an enzyme with its substrate bound in its active site. Here, in a two-dimensional approximation, is an image of the same substrate-enzyme pair showing how amino acid side chain (green) and parent chain (blue) groups surround and interact with functional groups on the substrate (red).



[Khan Academy video tutorial on noncovalent intermolecular interactions](#)

This page titled [3.0: Non-covalent interactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [2.5: Non-covalent interactions](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

An understanding of the various types of noncovalent forces allows us to explain, on a molecular level, many observable physical properties of organic compounds. In this section, we will concentrate on solubility (especially solubility in water), melting point, and boiling point.

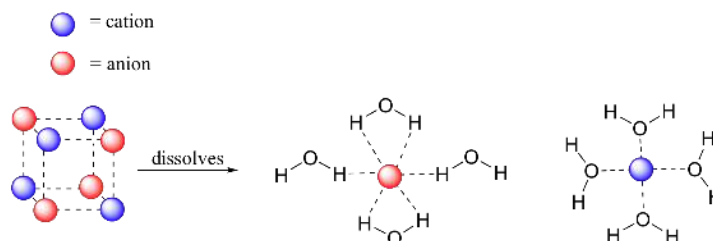
Solubility

Virtually all of the organic chemistry that you will see in this course takes place in the solution phase. In the organic laboratory, reactions are often run in nonpolar or slightly polar solvents such as toluene (methylbenzene), dichloromethane, or diethylether. In recent years, much effort has been made to adapt reaction conditions to allow for the use of 'greener' (in other words, more environmentally friendly) solvents such as water or ethanol, which are polar and capable of hydrogen bonding. In biochemical reactions the solvent is of course water, but the 'microenvironment' inside an enzyme's active site - where the actual chemistry is going on - can range from very polar to very non-polar, depending on which amino acid residues are present.

You probably remember the 'like dissolves like' rule you learned in general chemistry, and even before you took any chemistry at all, you probably observed at some point in your life that oil does not mix with water. Let's revisit this rule, and put our knowledge of covalent and noncovalent bonding to work.

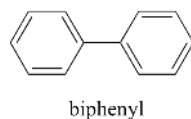
When considering the solubility of an organic compound in a given solvent, the most important question to ask ourselves is: how strong are the noncovalent interactions between the compound and the solvent molecules? If the solvent is polar, like water, then a smaller hydrocarbon component and/or more charged, hydrogen bonding, and other polar groups will tend to increase the solubility. If the solvent is non-polar, like hexane, then the exact opposite is true.

Imagine that you have a flask filled with water, and a selection of substances that you will test to see how well they dissolve in the water. The first substance is table salt, or sodium chloride. As you would almost certainly predict, especially if you've ever inadvertently taken a mouthful of water while swimming in the ocean, this ionic compound dissolves readily in water. Why? Because water, as a very polar molecule, is able to form many ion-dipole interactions with both the sodium cation and the chloride anion, the energy from which is more than enough to make up for energy required to break up the ion-ion interactions in the salt crystal.



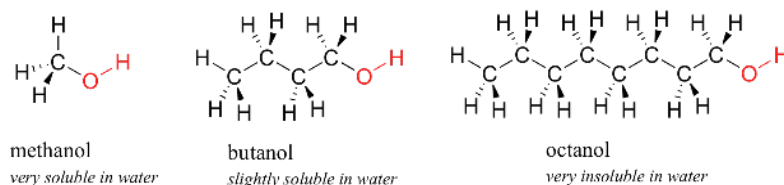
The end result, then, is that in place of sodium chloride crystals, we have individual sodium cations and chloride anions surrounded by water molecules – the salt is now *in solution*. Charged species as a rule dissolve readily in water: in other words, they are very **hydrophilic** (water-loving).

Now, we'll try a compound called biphenyl, which, like sodium chloride, is a colorless crystalline substance.



Biphenyl does not dissolve at all in water. Why is this? Because it is a very non-polar molecule, with only carbon-carbon and carbon-hydrogen bonds. It is able to bond to itself very well through nonpolar van der Waals interactions, but it is not able to form significant attractive interactions with very polar solvent molecules like water. Thus, the energetic cost of breaking up the biphenyl-to-biphenyl interactions in the solid is high, and very little is gained in terms of new biphenyl-water interactions. Water is a terrible solvent for nonpolar hydrocarbon molecules: they are very **hydrophobic** (water-fearing).

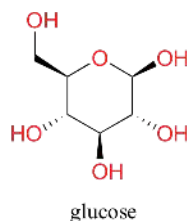
Next, you try a series of increasingly large alcohol compounds, starting with methanol (1 carbon) and ending with octanol (8 carbons).



You find that the smaller alcohols - methanol, ethanol, and propanol - dissolve easily in water, at any water/alcohol ratio that you try. This is because the water is able to form hydrogen bonds with the hydroxyl group in these molecules, and the combined energy of formation of these water-alcohol hydrogen bonds is more than enough to make up for the energy that is lost when the alcohol-alcohol (and water-water) hydrogen bonds are broken up. When you try butanol, however, you begin to notice that, as you add more and more to the water, it starts to form a layer on top of the water. Butanol is only sparingly soluble in water.

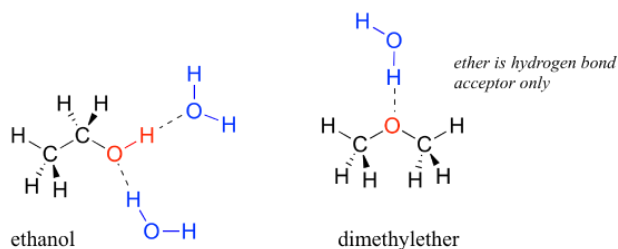
The longer-chain alcohols - pentanol, hexanol, heptanol, and octanol - are increasingly non-soluble in water. What is happening here? Clearly, the same favorable water-alcohol hydrogen bonds are still possible with these larger alcohols. The difference, of course, is that the larger alcohols have larger nonpolar, hydrophobic regions in addition to their hydrophilic hydroxyl group. At about four or five carbons, the influence of the hydrophobic part of the molecule begins to overcome that of the hydrophilic part, and water solubility is lost.

Now, try dissolving glucose in the water – even though it has six carbons just like hexanol, it also has five hydrogen-bonding, hydrophilic hydroxyl groups in addition to a sixth oxygen that is capable of being a hydrogen bond acceptor.



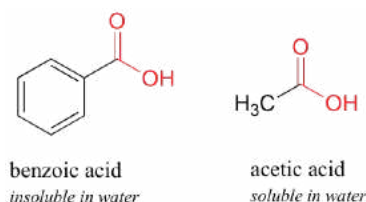
We have tipped the scales to the hydrophilic side, and we find that glucose is quite soluble in water.

We saw that ethanol was very water-soluble (if it were not, drinking beer or vodka would be rather inconvenient!) How about dimethyl ether, which is a constitutional isomer of ethanol but with an ether rather than an alcohol functional group? We find that diethyl ether is much less soluble in water. Is it capable of forming hydrogen bonds with water? Yes, in fact, it is –the ether oxygen can act as a hydrogen-bond acceptor. The difference between the ether group and the alcohol group, however, is that the alcohol group is both a hydrogen bond donor *and* acceptor.



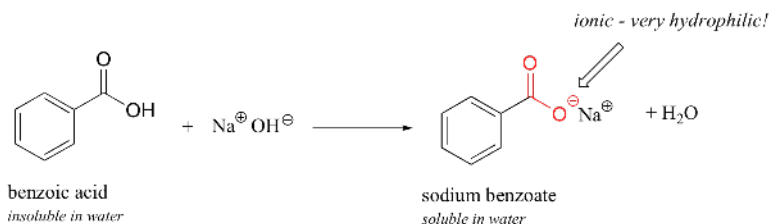
The result is that the alcohol is able to form more energetically favorable interactions with the solvent compared to the ether, and the alcohol is therefore much more soluble.

Here is another easy experiment that can be done (with proper supervision) in an organic laboratory. Try dissolving benzoic acid crystals in room temperature water – you'll find that it is not soluble. As we will learn when we study acid-base chemistry in a later chapter, carboxylic acids such as benzoic acid are relatively weak acids, and thus exist mostly in the acidic (protonated) form when added to pure water.



Acetic acid (vinegar) is quite soluble. This is easy to explain using the small alcohol vs large alcohol argument: the hydrogen-bonding, hydrophilic effect of the carboxylic acid group is powerful enough to overcome the hydrophobic effect of a single hydrophobic methyl group on acetic acid, but not the larger hydrophobic effect of the 6-carbon benzene group on benzoic acid.

Now, try slowly adding some aqueous sodium hydroxide to the flask containing undissolved benzoic acid. As the solvent becomes more and more basic, the benzoic acid begins to dissolve, until it is completely in solution.



What is happening here is that the benzoic acid is being converted to its conjugate base, benzoate. The *neutral* carboxylic acid group was not hydrophilic enough to make up for the hydrophobic benzene ring, but the carboxylate group, with its *full negative charge*, is much more hydrophilic. Now, the balance is tipped in favor of water solubility, as the powerfully hydrophilic anion part of the molecule drags the hydrophobic part into solution. Remember, charged species usually dissolve readily in water. If you want to precipitate the benzoic acid back out of solution, you can simply add enough hydrochloric acid to neutralize the solution and reprotonate the carboxylate.

If you are taking a lab component of your organic chemistry course, you will probably do at least one experiment in which you will use this phenomenon to physically separate an organic acid like benzoic acid from a hydrocarbon compound like biphenyl.

Similar arguments can be made to rationalize the solubility of different organic compounds in nonpolar or slightly polar solvents. In general, the greater the content of charged and polar groups in a molecule, the less soluble it tends to be in solvents such as hexane. The ionic and very hydrophilic sodium chloride, for example, is not at all soluble in hexane solvent, while the hydrophobic biphenyl is very soluble in hexane.

Because we are concentrating on the biologically relevant chemistry, let's take a minute to review how to evaluate a compound's solubility in water, the biological solvent:

Summary of factors contributing to water solubility

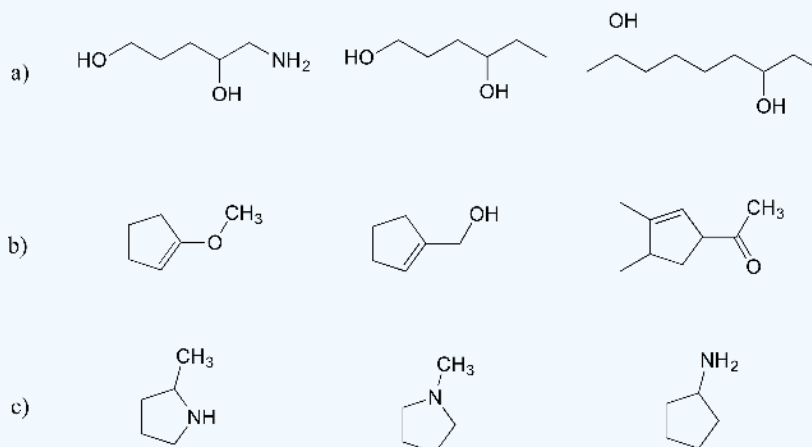
A: How many carbons? All else being equal, more carbons means more of a non-polar/hydrophobic character, and thus lower solubility in water.

B: How many, and what kind of hydrophilic groups? The more, the greater the water solubility. In order of importance:

1. Anything with a **charged** group (eg. ammonium, carboxylate, phosphate) is almost certainly water soluble, unless has a very large nonpolar group, in which case it will most likely be soluble in the form of micelles, like a soap or detergent (see next section).
2. Any functional group that can **donate a hydrogen bond** to water (eg. alcohols, amines) will significantly contribute to water solubility.
3. Any functional group that can only **accept a hydrogen bond** from water (eg. ketones, aldehydes, ethers) will have a somewhat smaller but still significant effect on water solubility.
4. Other groups that contribute to polarity (eg. alkyl halides, thiols sulfides) will make a small contribution to water solubility.

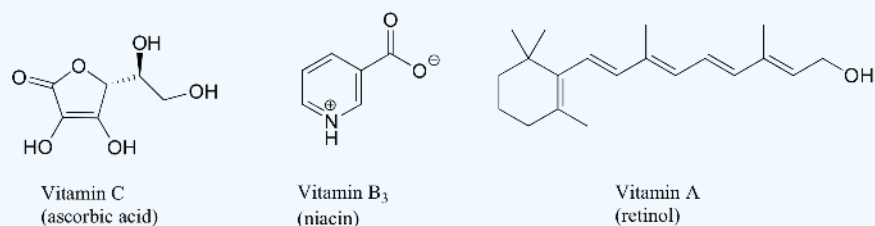
? Exercise 2.30

Rank each set of three compounds below according to their solubility in water (most soluble to least):



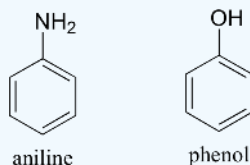
Exercise 2.31

Vitamins can be classified as water-soluble or fat-soluble (consider fat to be a very non-polar 'solvent'). Decide on a classification for each of the vitamins shown below.



Exercise 2.32

Both aniline and phenol are mostly insoluble in pure water. Predict the solubility of these two compounds in 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid, and explain your reasoning.

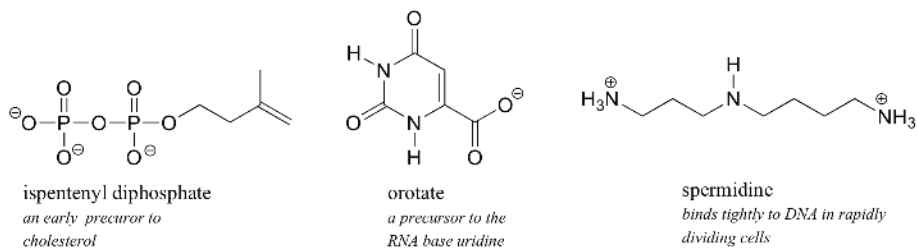


Exercise 2.33

Would you predict methanol or 2-propanol (rubbing alcohol) to be a better solvent for cyclohexanone? Why?

Solutions to exercises

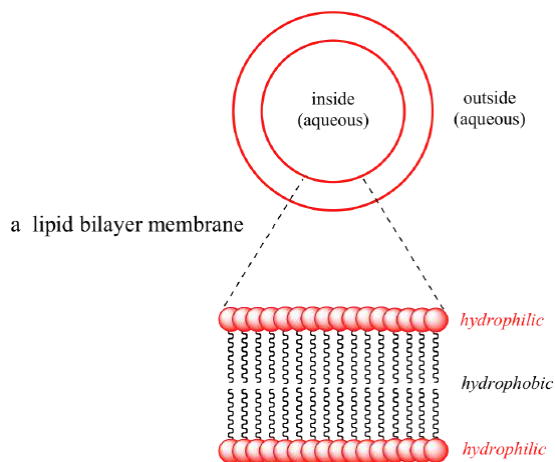
Because water is the biological solvent, most biological organic molecules, in order to maintain water-solubility, contain one or more charged functional groups: most often phosphate, ammonium or carboxylate.



Note that the charge on these functional groups depends on their protonation state: spermidine, for example, could be drawn with three (uncharged) amine groups rather than the charged ammonium groups as shown, and orotate could be drawn in the uncharged carboxylic acid form. It turns out, however, that these three functional groups are all charged when in a buffer at the physiological pH of approximately 7.3. We will have much more to say about the acid-base aspects of these groups in chapter 7.

Carbohydrates often lack charged groups, but as we discussed in our 'thought experiment' with glucose, they are quite water-soluble due to the presence of multiple hydroxyl groups, which can hydrogen bond with water.

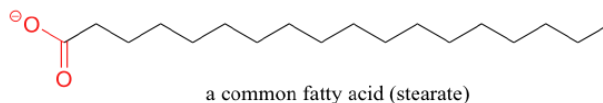
Some biomolecules, in contrast, contain distinctly hydrophobic components. Membrane lipids are **amphipathic**, meaning that they contain both hydrophobic and hydrophilic components. Cell membranes are composed of membrane lipids arranged in a 'bilayer', with the hydrophobic 'tails' pointing inward and the hydrophilic 'heads' forming the inner and outer surfaces, both of which are in contact with water.



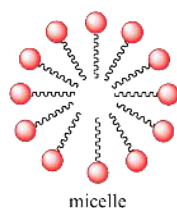
[Interactive 3D images of a fatty acid soap molecule and a soap micelle](#) (Edutopics)

The nonpolar interior of the lipid bilayer is able to 'dissolve' hydrophobic biomolecules such as cholesterol. Polar and charged biomolecules, on the other hand, are not able to cross the membrane, because they are repelled by the hydrophobic environment of the bilayer's interior. The transport of water-soluble molecules across a membrane can be accomplished in a controlled and specific manner by special transmembrane transport proteins, a fascinating topic that you will learn more about if you take a class in biochemistry.

A similar principle is the basis for the action of soaps and detergents. Soaps are composed of fatty acids such as stearate obtained through basic hydrolysis of triacylglycerols in fats and oils.



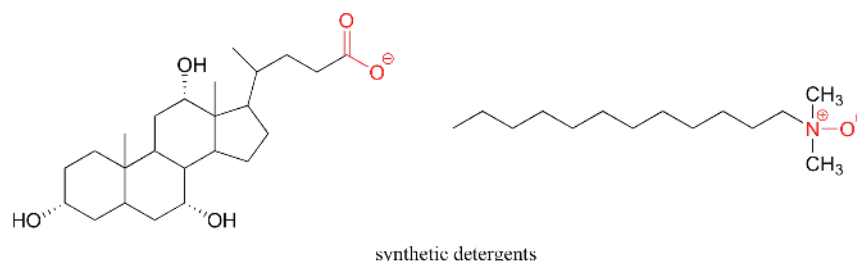
Like membrane lipids, fatty acids are amphipathic. In aqueous solution, the fatty acid molecules in soaps will spontaneously form **micelles**, a spherical structure that allows the hydrophobic tails to avoid contact with water and simultaneously form favorable van der Waals contacts with each other.



Interactive 3D images of a fatty acid soap molecule and a soap micelle (Edutopics)

Because the outside of the micelle is charged, the structure as a whole is soluble in water. Micelles will form spontaneously around small particles of oil that normally would not dissolve in water, and will carry the particle away with it into solution. We will learn more about the chemistry of soap-making in chapter 11.

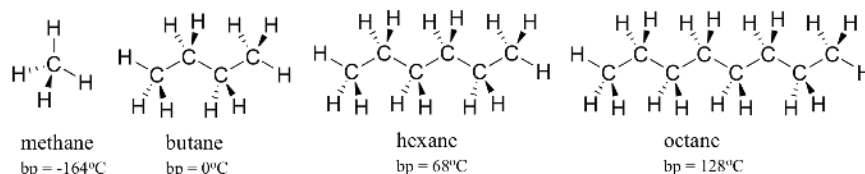
Synthetic detergents are non-natural amphipathic molecules that work by the same principle as that described for soaps.



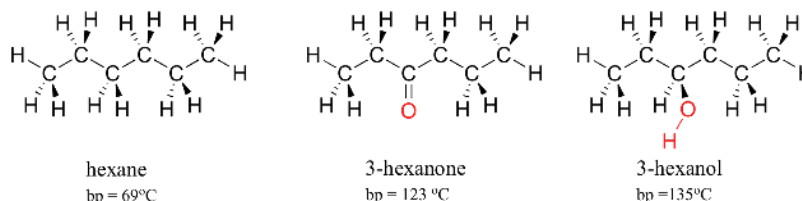
Boiling point and melting point

The observable melting and boiling points of different organic molecules provides an additional illustration of the effects of noncovalent interactions. The overarching principle involved is simple: *how well can a compound bind to itself?* Melting and boiling are processes in which noncovalent interactions between identical molecules in a pure sample are disrupted. The stronger the noncovalent interactions, the more energy that is required, in the form of heat, to break them apart.

As a rule, larger molecules have higher boiling (and melting) points. Consider the boiling points of increasingly larger hydrocarbons. More carbons and hydrogens means a greater surface area possible for van der Waals interaction, and thus higher boiling points. Below zero degrees centigrade (and at atmospheric pressure) butane is a liquid, because the butane molecules are held together by Van der Waals forces. Above zero degrees, however, the molecules gain enough thermal energy to break apart and enter the gas phase. Octane, in contrast, remains in the liquid phase all the way up to 128°C, due to the increased van der Waals interactions made possible by the larger surface area of the individual molecules.



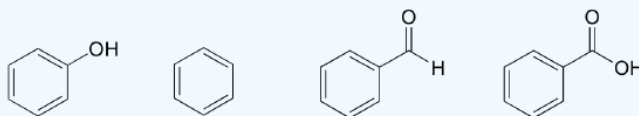
The strength of intermolecular hydrogen bonding and dipole-dipole interactions is reflected in higher boiling points. Look at the trend for hexane (van der Waals interactions only), 3-hexanone (dipole-dipole interactions), and 3-hexanol (hydrogen bonding). In all three molecules, van der Waals interactions are significant. The polar ketone group allows 3-hexanone to form intermolecular dipole-dipole interactions, in addition to the weaker van der Waals interactions. 3-hexanol, because of its hydroxyl group, is able to form intermolecular hydrogen bonds, which are stronger yet.



Of particular interest to biologists (and pretty much anything else that is alive on the planet) is the effect of hydrogen bonding in water. Because it is able to form tight networks of intermolecular hydrogen bonds, water remains in the liquid phase at temperatures up to 100 °C despite its small size. The world would obviously be a very different place if water boiled at 30 °C.

? Exercise 2.34

Based on their structures, rank phenol, benzene, benzaldehyde, and benzoic acid in terms of lowest to highest boiling point. Explain your reasoning.

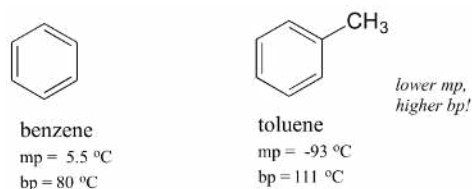


Solutions to exercises

By thinking about noncovalent intermolecular interactions, we can also predict relative melting points. All of the same principles apply: stronger intermolecular interactions result in a higher melting point. Ionic compounds, as expected, usually have very high melting points due to the strength of ion-ion interactions. Just like with boiling points, the presence of polar and hydrogen-bonding groups on organic compounds generally leads to higher melting points. The size of a molecule influences its melting point as well as its boiling point, again due to increased van der Waals interactions between molecules.

What is different about melting point trends, that we don't see with boiling point or solubility trends, is the importance of a molecule's shape and its ability to pack tightly together. Picture yourself trying to make a stable pile of baseballs in the floor. It just doesn't work, because spheres don't pack together well - there is very little area of contact between each ball. It is very easy, though, to make a stack of flat objects like books.

The same concept applies to how well molecules pack together in a solid. The flat shape of aromatic compounds allows them to pack efficiently, and thus aromatics tend to have higher melting points compared to non-planar hydrocarbons with similar molecular weights. Comparing the melting points of benzene and toluene, you can see that the extra methyl group on toluene disrupts the molecule's ability to pack tightly, thus decreasing the cumulative strength of intermolecular van der Waals forces and lowering the melting point.



Note also that the boiling point for toluene is significantly above the boiling point of benzene! The key factor for the boiling point trend in this case is *size* (toluene has one more carbon), whereas for the melting point trend, *shape* plays a much more important role. This makes sense when you consider that melting involves 'unpacking' the molecules from their ordered array, whereas boiling involves simply separating them from their already loose (liquid) association with each other.

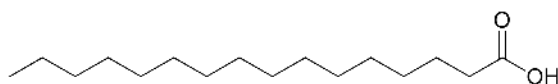
Exercise 2.35

Which would you expect to have the higher melting point, 2,3-dimethylbutane or hexane? Explain.

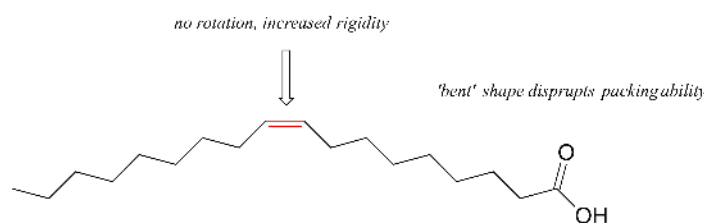
Physical properties of lipids and proteins

Lipids

An interesting biological example of the relationship between molecular structure and melting point is provided by the observable physical difference between animal fats like butter or lard, which are solid at room temperature, and vegetable oils, which are liquid. Recall that fats and oils are triacylglycerols: fatty acids linked to a glycerol backbone. In vegetable oils, the fatty acid components are unsaturated, meaning that they contain one or more double bonds. Solid animal fat, in contrast, contains mainly saturated hydrocarbon chains, with no double bonds.



palmitic acid
(a saturated fatty acid)



oleic acid
(an unsaturated fatty acid)

[Interactive 3D image of a saturated triacylglycerol](#) (BioTopics)

[Saturated vs mono-unsaturated fatty acid](#) (BioTopics)

The double bond(s) in vegetable oils cause those hydrocarbon chains to be more rigid, and 'bent' at an angle (remember that rotation is restricted around double bonds), with the result that they don't pack together as closely, and thus can be broken apart (melted) more readily.

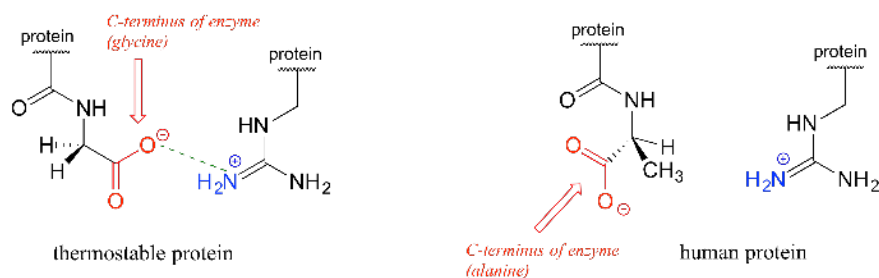
In a related context, the fluidity of a cell membrane (essentially, the melting point) is determined to a large extent by the length and degree of unsaturation of the fatty acid 'tails' on the membrane lipids. Longer and more saturated fatty acids make the membrane less fluid (they are able maximize van der Waals interactions), while shorter and more unsaturated fatty acids cause the membrane to be more fluid.

Proteins

The very same noncovalent forces we have just learned about are also integral to protein structure: when a protein folds up, it does so in such a way that very specific non-covalent interactions form between amino acid residues on different regions of the chain, each one becoming part of the 'molecular glue' that holds the chain together in its correctly folded shape. Hydrogen bonds and charge-charge interactions are particularly important in this respect. In general, the interior of a folded protein is relatively hydrophobic, while the outside surface, which of course is in constant contact with water, is very hydrophilic - many charged side chains such as aspartate, glutamate, lysine, and arginine point out of the surface of a protein structure.

Most of the proteins of 'mesophilic' organisms (those who thrive in intermediate temperatures, including humans) will denature - come unfolded - at high temperatures, as the heat disrupts the specific noncovalent interactions holding the protein chain together. Unfolded proteins usually are not water soluble because the more hydrophobic interior regions are no longer hidden from the solvent, so denaturing is accompanied by precipitation. Obviously, an unfolded protein also loses its functionality.

In the last few decades, we have become aware that a wide variety of microbes naturally inhabit extremely hot environments such as the boiling water of hot springs in Yellowstone National Park, or the base of a deep-sea thermal vent. How do the proteins of these 'thermophiles' hold up to the heat? There is nothing extraordinary about these proteins that makes them so resistant to heat, other than the fact that they have evolved so that they simply have *more* molecular 'glue' holding them together - in particular, more ionic interactions between oppositely charged residues. In just one of many examples, the three-dimensional structure of an enzyme from *Pyrococcus horikoshii*, a microbe isolated from a thermal vent deep in the Pacific Ocean, was compared to a very similar enzyme in humans. The thermophilic protein has a stabilizing charge-charge interaction between the terminal carboxylate group on the last amino acid in the chain and an arginine residue near the beginning of the chain.



This interaction is not present in the human version of the protein because the terminal carboxylate group is angled away from the positively-charged group on the arginine. The single charge-charge interaction is not by itself responsible for the thermostability of the *P. horikoshii* protein - other similar interactions throughout the protein structure also contribute (see the original report at [PLOS Biology 2011, 9, e1001027](https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1001027)).

Conversely, proteins from 'psychrophilic' organisms - those which live in extremely cold temperatures, such as in arctic soils or in small water pockets in polar ice - have fewer stabilizing charge-charge interactions. This gives them the flexibility to function at temperatures in which mesophilic human or *E. coli* proteins would be frozen and inactive. On the other hand, a typical psychrophilic protein will rapidly unfold, precipitate, and lose its functionality at room temperature.

Scientists are extremely interested in thermostable proteins, because the ability to function at high temperatures can be a very desirable trait for a protein used in industrial processes. In fact, thermostable DNA polymerase from *Thermus aquaticus* (the enzyme is known to molecular biologists as '*Taq* polymerase') is the enzyme that makes the PCR (polymerase chain reaction) process possible, and has earned billions of dollars in royalties for drug company Hoffman La Roche, the patent owner. Many research groups are searching for useful enzymes in thermophilic species, and others are working on ways to engineer heat stability into existing mesophilic enzymes by tinkering with their amino acid sequences to introduce new stabilizing charge-charge interactions.

[Khan Academy video tutorials on solubility, boiling point](#)

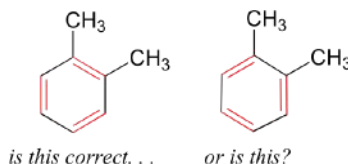
This page titled [3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **2.6: Physical properties of organic compounds** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

3.2: Resonance

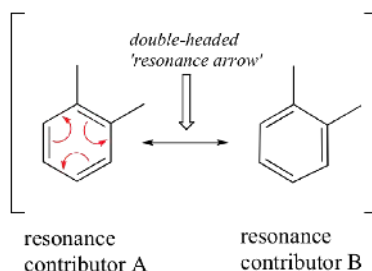
What is resonance?

If we were to draw the structure of an aromatic molecule such as 1,2-dimethylbenzene, there are two ways that we could draw the double bonds:



Which way is correct? There are two simple answers to this question: 'both' and 'neither one'. Both ways of drawing the molecule are equally acceptable approximations of the bonding picture for the molecule, but neither one, by itself, is an accurate picture of the delocalized pi bonds. The two alternative drawings, however, *when considered together*, give a much more accurate picture than either one on its own. This is because they imply, together, that the carbon-carbon bonds are not double bonds, not single bonds, but about halfway in between.

These two drawings are an example of what is referred to in organic chemistry as **resonance contributors**: two or more different Lewis structures depicting the same molecule or ion that, when considered together, do a better job of approximating delocalized pi-bonding than any single structure. By convention, resonance contributors are linked by a double-headed arrow, and are sometimes enclosed by brackets:



In order to make it easier to visualize the difference between two resonance contributors, small, curved arrows are often used. Each of these arrows depicts the 'movement' of two pi electrons. A few chapters from now when we begin to study organic reactions - a process in which electron density shifts and covalent bonds between atoms break and form - this 'curved arrow notation' will become extremely important in depicting electron movement. In the drawing of resonance contributors, however, this electron 'movement' occurs only in our minds, as we try to visualize delocalized pi bonds. Nevertheless, use of the curved arrow notation is an essential skill that you will need to develop in drawing resonance contributors.

The depiction of benzene using the two resonance contributors A and B in the figure above does *not* imply that the molecule at one moment looks like structure A, then at the next moment shifts to look like structure B. Rather, at all moments, the molecule is a combination, or **resonance hybrid** of both A and B.

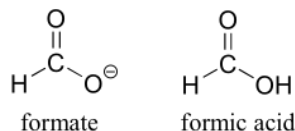
Caution! It is very important to be clear that in drawing two (or more) resonance contributors, we are not drawing two different molecules: they are simply *different depictions of the exact same molecule*. Furthermore, the double-headed resonance arrow does NOT mean that a chemical reaction has taken place.

Usually, derivatives of benzene (and phenyl groups, when the benzene ring is incorporated into a larger organic structure) are depicted with only one resonance contributor, and it is assumed that the reader understands that resonance hybridization is implied. This is the convention that will be used for the most part in this book. In other books or articles, you may sometimes see benzene or a phenyl group drawn with a circle inside the hexagon, either solid or dashed, as a way of drawing a resonance hybrid.

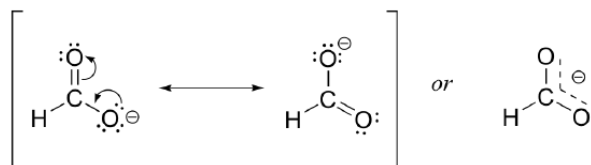


Resonance contributors for the carboxylate group

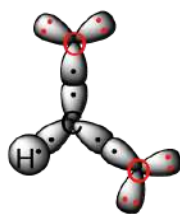
The convention of drawing two or more resonance contributors to approximate a single structure may seem a bit clumsy to you at this point, but as you gain experience you will see that the practice is actually very useful when discussing the manner in which many functional groups react. Let's next consider the carboxylate ion (the conjugate base of a carboxylic acid). As our example, we will use formate, the simplest possible carboxylate-containing molecule. The conjugate acid of formate is formic acid, which causes the painful sting you felt if you have ever been bitten by an ant.



Usually, you will see carboxylate groups drawn with one carbon-oxygen double bond and one carbon-oxygen single bond, with a negative formal charge located on the single-bonded oxygen. In actuality, however, the two carbon-oxygen bonds are the same length, and although there is indeed an overall negative formal charge on the group, it is shared equally between the two oxygens. Therefore, the carboxylate can be more accurately depicted by a *pair* of resonance contributors. Alternatively, a single structure can be used, with a dashed line depicting the resonance-delocalized pi bond and the negative charge located in between the two oxygens.

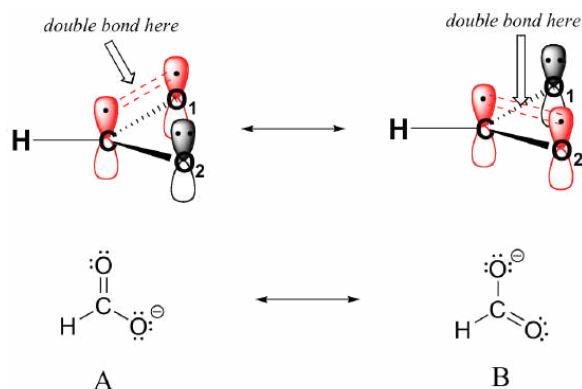


Let's see if we can correlate these drawing conventions to a valence bond theory picture of the bonding in a carboxylate group. We know that the carbon must be sp^2 -hybridized, (the bond angles are close to 120° , and the molecule is planar), and we will treat both oxygens as being sp^2 -hybridized as well. Both carbon-oxygen sigma bonds, then, are formed from the overlap of carbon sp^2 orbitals and oxygen sp^2 orbitals.



the σ -bonding framework of formate

In addition, the carbon and both oxygens each have an unhybridized $2p_z$ orbital situated perpendicular to the plane of the sigma bonds. These three $2p_z$ orbitals are parallel to each other, and can overlap in a side-by-side fashion to form a delocalized pi bond.

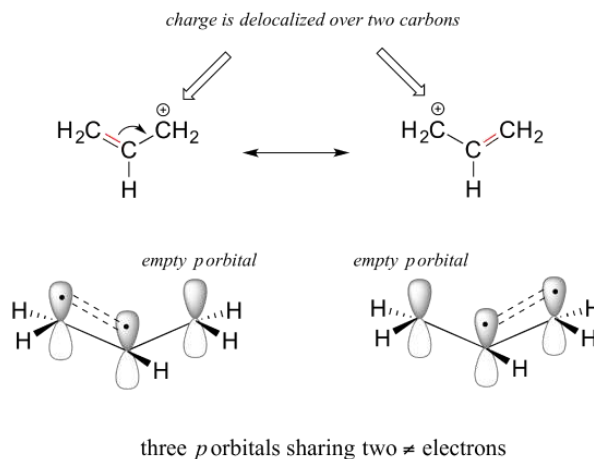


Resonance contributor A shows oxygen #1 sharing a pair of electrons with carbon in a pi bond, and oxygen #2 holding a lone pair of electrons in its $2p_z$ orbital. Resonance contributor B, on the other hand, shows oxygen #2 participating in the pi bond with carbon, and oxygen #1 holding a lone pair in its $2p_z$ orbital. Overall, the situation is one of *three parallel, overlapping $2p_z$ orbitals sharing four delocalized pi electrons*. Because there is one more electron than there are $2p_z$ orbitals, the system has an overall charge of -1 . This is the kind of 3D picture that resonance contributors are used to approximate, and once you get some practice you should be able to quickly visualize overlapping $2p_z$ orbitals and delocalized pi electrons whenever you see resonance structures being used. In this text, carboxylate groups will usually be drawn showing only one resonance contributor for the sake of simplicity, but you should always keep in mind that the two C-O bonds are equal, and that the negative charge is delocalized to both oxygens.

? Exercise 2.13

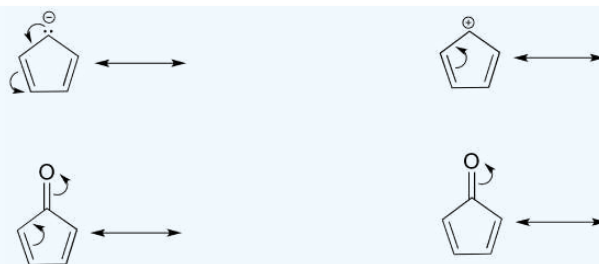
There is a third resonance contributor for formate (which we will soon learn is considered a 'minor' contributor). Draw this resonance contributor.

Here's another example, this time with a carbocation. Recall from section 2.1 that carbocations are sp^2 -hybridized, with an empty $2p$ orbital oriented perpendicular to the plane formed by three sigma bonds. If a carbocation is adjacent to a double bond, then three $2p$ orbitals can overlap and share the two pi electrons - another kind of conjugated pi system in which the positive charge is shared over two carbons.



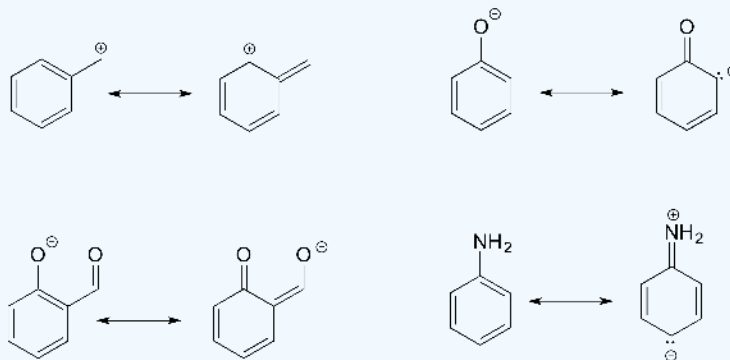
? Exercise 2.14

Draw the resonance contributors that correspond to the curved, two-electron movement arrows in the resonance expressions below.



Exercise 2.15

In each resonance expression, draw curved two-electron movement arrows on the left-side contributor that shows how we get to the right-side contributor. Be sure to include formal charges.



Solutions to exercises

Rules for drawing resonance structures

As you work on learning how to draw and interpret resonance structures, there are a few basic rules that you should keep in mind in order to avoid drawing nonsensical structures. All of these rules make perfect sense as long as you keep in mind that resonance contributors are merely a human-invented convention for depicting the delocalization of pi electrons in conjugated systems.

Rules for drawing resonance structures:

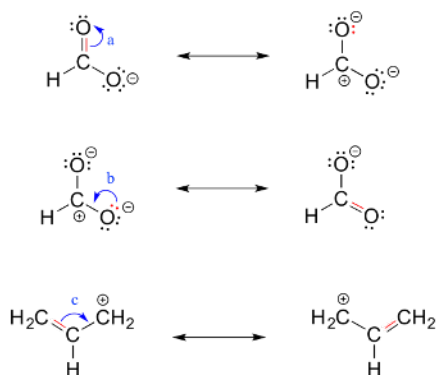
- 1) When you see two different resonance contributors, you are *not* seeing a chemical reaction! Rather, you are seeing the exact same molecule or ion depicted in two different ways.
- 2) Resonance contributors involve the 'imaginary movement' of pi-bonded electrons or of lone-pair electrons that are adjacent to (*i.e.* conjugated to) pi bonds. You can *never* shift the location of electrons in sigma bonds – if you show a sigma bond forming or breaking, you are showing a chemical reaction taking place (see rule #1). Likewise, the positions of *atoms* in the molecule cannot change between two resonance contributors.
- 3) All resonance contributors for a molecule or ion must have the same *net* charge.
- 4) All resonance contributors must be drawn as proper Lewis structures, with correct formal charges. Never show curved 'electron movement' arrows that would lead to a situation where a second-row element (*ie.* carbon, nitrogen, or oxygen) has more than eight electrons: this would break the 'octet rule'. Sometimes, however, we will draw resonance contributors in which a carbon atom has only six electrons (*ie.* a carbocation). In general, all oxygen and nitrogen atoms should have a complete octet of valence electrons.

To expand a bit on rule #4, there are really only three things we can do with curved arrows when drawing resonance structures:

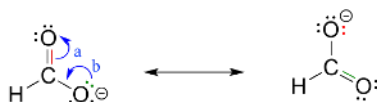
First, we can take the two electrons in a pi bond and shift them to become a lone pair on an adjacent atom (arrow 'a' below).

Second, we can take a lone pair on an atom and put those two electrons into a pi bond on the same atom (arrow 'b').

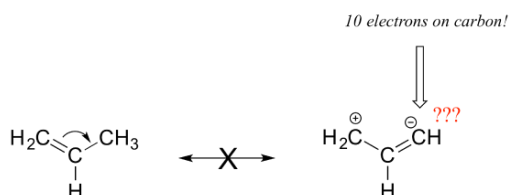
Third, we can shift a pi bond one position over (arrow c).



Resonance arrows can also be combined - below, we show arrows a and b together:

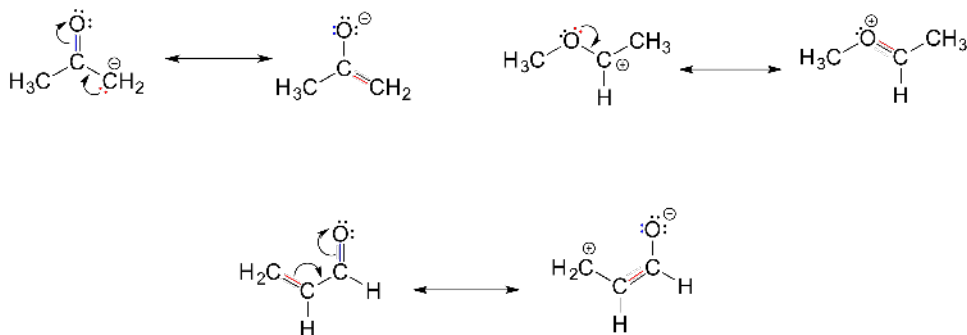


Notice that we do not exceed the octet rule on any atoms when we move electrons with arrows a, b and c. The resonance picture below shows an 'illegal' movement of electrons, because it would result in a carbon with five bonds, or 10 valence electrons (this would break the octet rule):



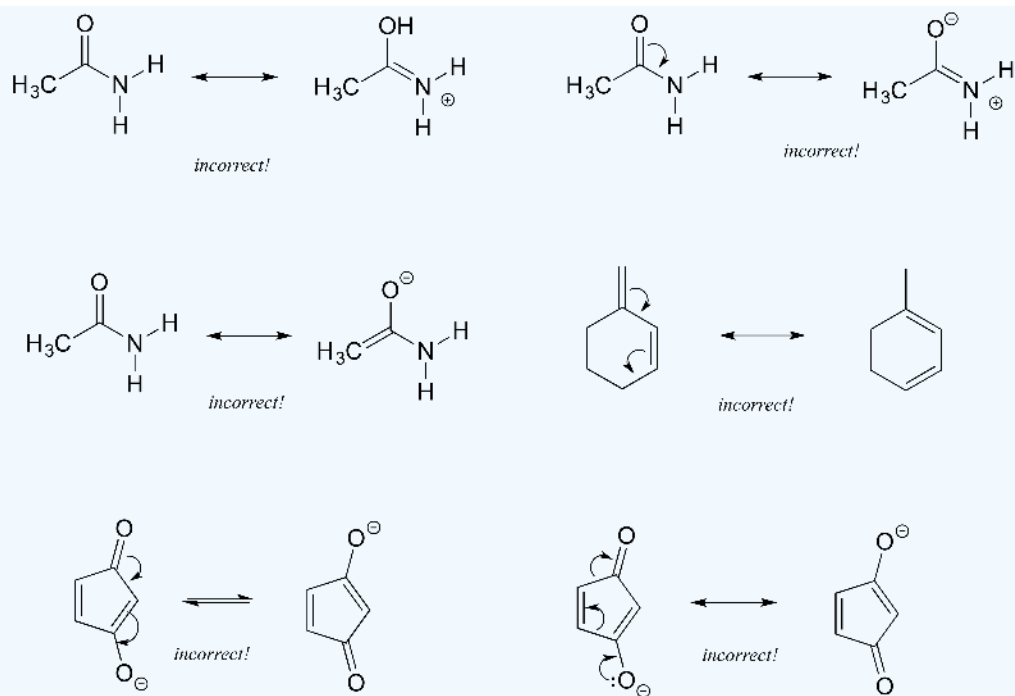
Always be very careful when drawing resonance structures that your arrows do **only** the three types of electron movement described above, and that you **never** exceed the octet rule on a second-row element. It is often helpful (but optional), to include all lone-pair electrons on oxygen and nitrogen in the drawing in order to keep track of valence electrons, avoid breaking the octet rule, and recognize when atoms have a negative or positive formal charge. Getting the 'electron accounting' correct is a big part of working with resonance contributors.

Below are a few more examples of 'legal' resonance expressions. Confirm for yourself that the octet rule is not exceeded for any atoms, and that formal charges are correct.



? Exercise 2.16

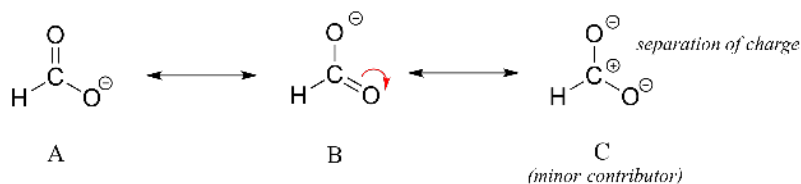
Each of the 'illegal' resonance expressions below contains one or more mistakes. Explain what is incorrect in each.



Solutions to exercises

Major vs minor resonance contributors

Different resonance contributors do not always make the same contribution to the overall structure of the hybrid - rather, in many cases one contributor comes closer to depicting the actual bonding picture than another. In the case of carboxylates, contributors A and B below are equivalent in terms of their relative contribution to the hybrid structure. However, there is also a third resonance contributor 'C', in which the carbon bears a positive formal charge and both oxygens are single-bonded and bear negative charges.

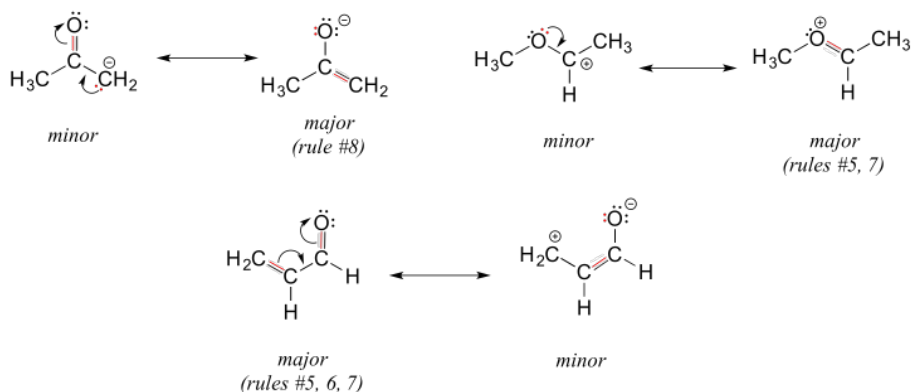


Structure C makes a less important contribution to the overall bonding picture of the group relative to A and B. How do we know that structure C is the 'minor' contributor? There are four basic rules which you need to learn in order to evaluate the relative importance of different resonance contributors. We will number them 5-8 so that they may be added to in the 'rules for resonance' list earlier on this page.

Rules for determining major and minor resonance contributors:

- 5) The carbon in contributor C does not have an octet – in general, resonance contributors in which a carbon does not fulfill the octet rule are relatively less important.
- 6) In structure C, a separation of charge has been introduced that is not present in A or B. In general, resonance contributors in which there is a greater separation of charge are relatively less important.
- 7) In structure C, there are only three bonds, compared to four in A and B. In general, a resonance structure with a lower number of total bonds is relatively less important.
- 8) The resonance contributor in which a negative formal charge is located on a more electronegative atom, usually oxygen or nitrogen, is more stable than one in which the negative charge is located on a less electronegative atom such as carbon. *An example is in the upper left expression in the next figure.*

Below are some additional examples of major and minor resonance contributors:



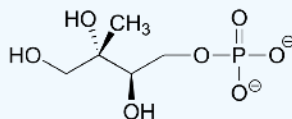
Why do we worry about a resonance contributor if it is the minor one? We will see later that very often a minor contributor can still be extremely important to our understanding of how a molecule reacts.

? Exercise 2.17

- Draw a minor resonance structure for acetone (IUPAC name 2-propanone). Explain why it is a minor contributor.
- Are acetone and 2-propanol resonance contributors of each other? Explain.

Exercise 2.18

Draw four additional resonance contributors for the molecule below. Label each one as major or minor (the structure below is of a major contributor).



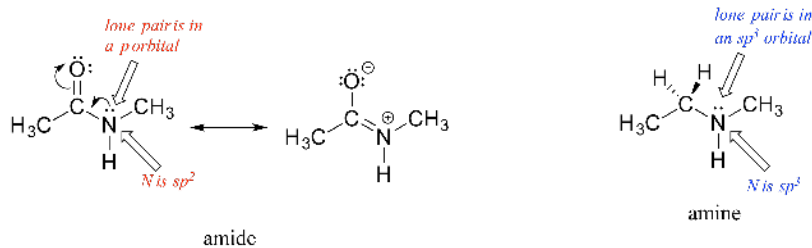
Exercise 2.19

Draw three resonance contributors of methyl acetate (IUPAC name methyl methanoate), and order them according to their relative importance to the bonding picture of the molecule. Explain your reasoning.

Solutions to exercises

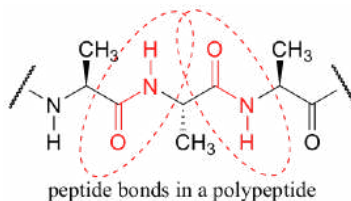
Resonance and peptide bonds

What is the hybridization state of the nitrogen atom in an amide? At first glance, it would seem logical to say that it is sp^3 -hybridized, because, like the nitrogen in an amine, the Lewis structure shows three single bonds and a lone pair. The picture looks quite different, though, if we consider another resonance contributor in which the nitrogen has a double bond to the carbonyl carbon: in this case, we would have to say that applicable hybridization is sp^2 , and the bonding geometry trigonal planar rather than tetrahedral.

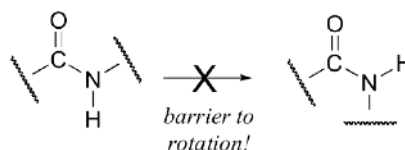


In fact, the latter picture is more accurate: the lone pair of electrons on an amide nitrogen are not localized in an sp^3 orbital, rather, they are delocalized as part of a conjugated pi system, and the bonding geometry around the nitrogen is trigonal planar as expected for sp^2 hybridization. This is a good illustration of an important point: conjugation and the corresponding delocalization of electron density is stabilizing, thus if conjugation can occur, it probably will.

One of the most important examples of amide groups in nature is the 'peptide bond' that links amino acids to form polypeptides and proteins.



Critical to the structure of proteins is the fact that, although it is conventionally drawn as a single bond, *the C-N bond in a peptide linkage has a significant barrier to rotation*, indicating that to some degree, C-N pi overlap is present - in other words, there is some double bond character, and the nitrogen is sp^2 hybridized with trigonal planar geometry.



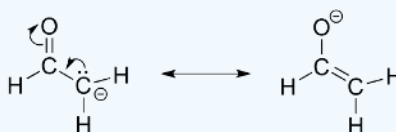
The barrier to rotation in peptide bonds is an integral part of protein structure, introducing more rigidity to the protein's backbone. If there were no barrier to rotation in a peptide bond, proteins would be much more 'floppy' and three dimensional folding would be very different.

? Exercise 2.20

Draw two pictures showing the unhybridized $2p$ orbitals and the location of pi electrons in methyl amide. One picture should represent the major resonance contributor, the other the minor contributor. How many overlapping $2p$ orbitals are sharing how many pi-bonded electrons?

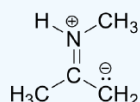
Exercise 2.21

Draw two pictures showing the unhybridized $2p$ orbitals and the location of pi electrons in the 'enolate' anion shown below. One picture should represent the major resonance contributor, the other the minor contributor. How many overlapping $2p$ orbitals are sharing how many pi-bonded electrons?



Exercise 2.22

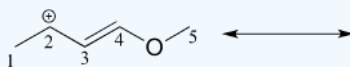
Below is a minor resonance contributor of a species known as an 'enamine', which we will study more in chapter 12. Draw the major resonance contributor for the enamine, and explain why your contributor is the major one (refer to resonance rules #5-8 from this section).



Solutions to exercises

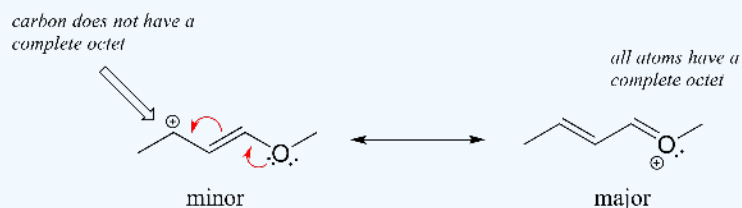
✓ Solved example

Draw the major resonance contributor of the structure below. Include in your figure the appropriate curved arrows showing how you got from the given structure to your structure. Explain why your contributor is the major one. In what kind of orbitals are the two lone pairs on the oxygen?



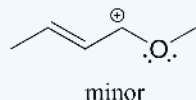
Solution

In the structure above, the carbon with the positive formal charge does not have a complete octet of valence electrons. Using the curved arrow convention, a lone pair on the oxygen can be moved to the adjacent bond to the left, and the electrons in the double bond shifted over to the left (see the rules for drawing resonance contributors to convince yourself that these are 'legal' moves).



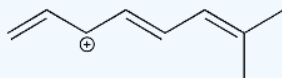
The resulting resonance contributor, in which the oxygen bears the formal charge, is the major one because all atoms have a complete octet, and there is one additional bond drawn (resonance rules #5 and #7 both apply). This system can be thought of as four parallel $2p$ orbitals (one each on C_2 , C_3 , and C_4 , plus one on oxygen) sharing four pi electrons. One lone pair on the oxygen is in an unhybridized $2p$ orbital and is part of the conjugated pi system, and the other is located in an sp^2 orbital.

Also note that one additional contributor can be drawn, but it is also minor because it has a carbon with an incomplete octet:



? Exercise 2.23

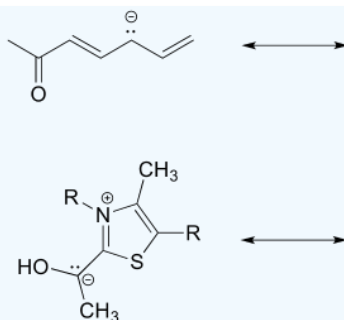
a) Draw three additional resonance contributors for the carbocation below. Include in your figure the appropriate curved arrows showing how one contributor is converted to the next.



b) Fill in the blanks: the conjugated pi system in this carbocation is composed of _____ $2p$ orbitals sharing _____ delocalized pi electrons.

Exercise 2.24

Draw the major resonance contributor for each of the anions below.



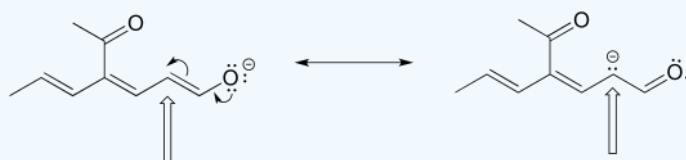
c) Fill in the blanks: the conjugated pi system in part (a) is composed of _____ $2p$ orbitals containing _____ delocalized pi electrons.

Exercise 2.25

The figure below shows how the negative formal charge on the oxygen can be delocalized to the carbon indicated by an arrow. More resonance contributors can be drawn in which negative charge is delocalized to three other atoms on the molecule.

a) Circle these atoms.

b) Draw the two most important resonance contributors for the molecule.



Solutions to exercises

A word of advice

Becoming adept at drawing resonance contributors, using the curved arrow notation to show how one contributor can be converted to another, and understanding the concepts of conjugation and resonance delocalization are some of the most challenging but also most important jobs that you will have as a beginning student of organic chemistry. If you work hard now to gain a firm grasp of these ideas, you will have come a long way toward understanding much of what follows in your organic chemistry course. Conversely, if you fail to come to grips with these concepts now, a lot of what you see later in the course will seem like a bunch of mysterious and incomprehensible lines, dots, and arrows, and you will be in for a rough ride, to say the least. More so than many other topics in organic chemistry, *understanding bonding, conjugation, and resonance is something that most students really need to work on 'in person' with an instructor or tutor, preferably using a molecular modeling kit.* Keep working problems, keep asking questions, and keep at it until it all makes sense!

Khan Academy video tutorials

[Drawing resonance structures](#)
[More on resonance](#)

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled 3.2: Resonance is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

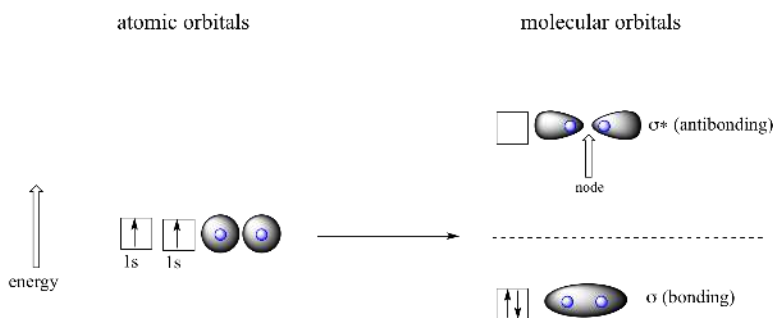
- 2.4: Resonance by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

Valence bond theory does a remarkably good job at explaining the bonding geometry of many of the functional groups in organic compounds. There are some areas, however, where the valence bond theory falls short. It fails to adequately account, for example, for some interesting properties of compounds that contain alternating double and single bonds. In order to understand these properties, we need to think about chemical bonding in a new way, using the ideas of molecular orbital (MO) theory.

Let's go back and consider again the simplest possible covalent bond: the one in molecular hydrogen (H_2). When we described the hydrogen molecule using valence bond theory, we said that the two 1s orbitals from each atom overlap, allowing the two electrons to be shared and thus forming a covalent bond. In molecular orbital theory, we make a further statement: we say that the two atomic 1s orbitals mathematically combine to form two new orbitals. Recall that an atomic orbital (such as the 1s orbital of a hydrogen atom) describes a region of space around a single atom inside which electrons are likely to be found. *A molecular orbital describes a region of space around two or more atoms inside which electrons are likely to be found.*

Mathematical principles tell us that when orbitals combine, the number of orbitals before the combination takes place must equal the number of new orbitals that result from the combination – orbitals don't just disappear! We saw this previously when we discussed hybrid orbitals: one s and three p orbitals make four sp^3 hybrids. When two atomic 1s orbitals combine in the formation of H_2 , the result is two **sigma (σ) orbitals**.



Molecular orbitals for H_2

According to MO theory, one sigma orbital is lower in energy than either of the two isolated atomic 1s orbitals –this lower sigma orbital is referred to as a **bonding molecular orbital**. The second, 'sigma star' (**sigma***, **σ^***) orbital is higher in energy than the two atomic 1s orbitals, and is referred to as an **antibonding molecular orbital**.

The bonding sigma orbital, which holds both electrons in the ground state of the molecule, is egg-shaped, encompassing the two nuclei, and with the highest likelihood of electrons being in the area between the two nuclei. The high-energy, antibonding sigma* orbital can be visualized as a pair of droplets, with areas of higher electron density near each nucleus and a 'node', (area of zero electron density) midway between the two nuclei.

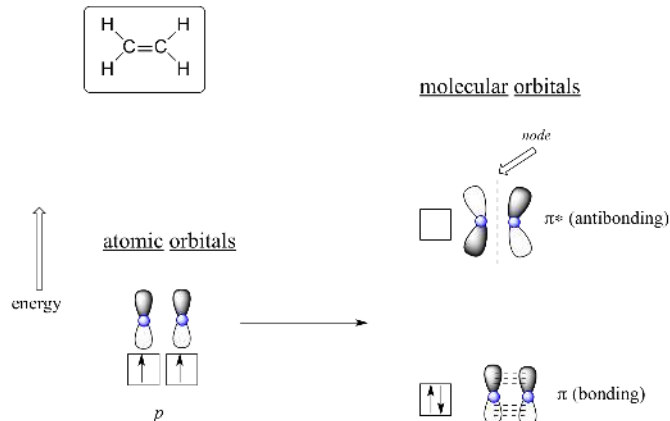
Remember that we are thinking here about electron behavior as *wave behavior*. When two separate waves combine, they can do so with **constructive interference**, where the two amplitudes build up and reinforce one another, or **destructive interference**, where the two amplitudes cancel one another out. Bonding MOs are the consequence of constructive interference between two atomic orbitals, which results in an attractive interaction and an increase in electron density between the nuclei. Antibonding MO's are the consequence of destructive interference which results in a repulsive interaction and a region of zero electron density between the nuclei (in other words, a node).

Following the same *aufbau* ('building up') principle you learned in General Chemistry for writing out electron configurations, we place the two electrons in the H_2 molecule in the lowest energy molecular orbital, which is the (bonding) sigma orbital. The bonding (attracting) MO is full, and the antibonding (repulsing) MO is empty.

MO theory and conjugated pi bonds

The advantage of using MO theory to understand bonding in organic molecules becomes more apparent when we think about pi bonds. Let's first consider the pi bond in ethene from an MO theory standpoint (in this example we will be disregarding the sigma

bonds in the molecule, and thinking *only* about the pi bond). We start with two atomic orbitals: one unhybridized 2p orbital from each carbon. Each contains a single electron. In MO theory, the two atomic combine mathematically to form two **pi (π) molecular orbitals**, one a low-energy pi bonding orbital and one a high-energy pi* (π^*) antibonding orbital.



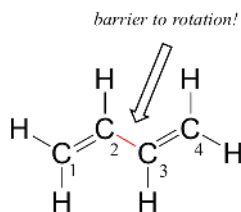
Molecular orbitals for ethene (ethylen)

In the bonding pi orbital, the two shaded lobes of the p orbitals interact *constructively* with each other, as do the two unshaded lobes (remember, the arbitrary shading choice represents mathematical (+) and (-) signs for the mathematical wavefunction describing the orbital). There is increased electron density between the two carbon nuclei in the molecular orbital - it is a bonding interaction.

In the higher-energy antibonding π^* orbital, the shaded lobe of one p orbital interacts *destructively* with the unshaded lobe of the second p orbital, leading to a node between the two nuclei and overall repulsion between the carbon nuclei.

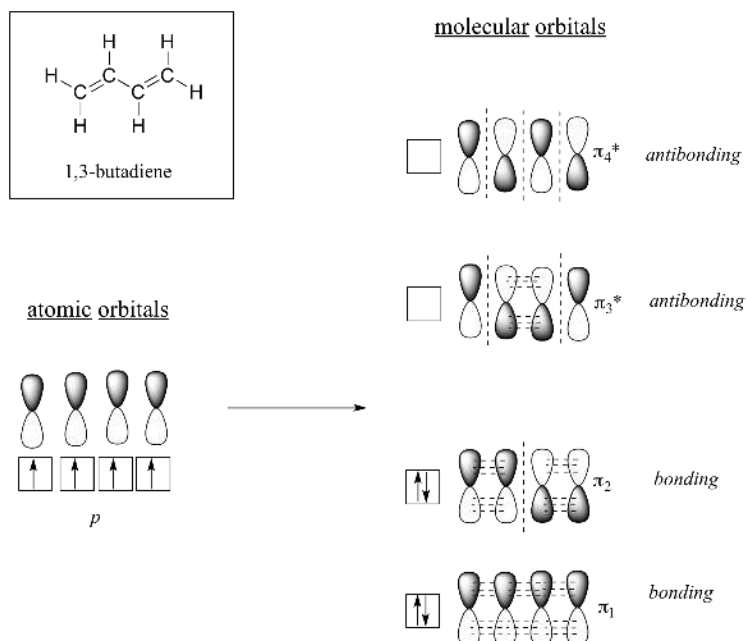
Again using the 'building up' principle, we place the two electrons in the lower-energy, bonding pi molecular orbital. The antibonding π^* orbital remains empty.

Next, we'll consider the 1,3-butadiene molecule. From valence orbital theory alone we might expect that the $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_3$ bond in this molecule, because it is a sigma bond, would be able to rotate freely.



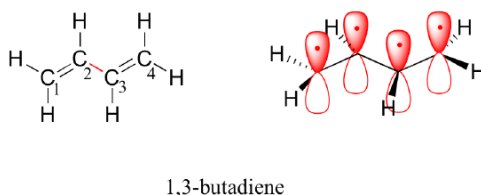
Experimentally, however, it is observed that there is a significant barrier to rotation about the $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_3$ bond, and that the entire molecule is planar. In addition, the $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_3$ bond is 148 pm long, shorter than a typical carbon-carbon single bond (about 154 pm), though longer than a typical double bond (about 134 pm).

Molecular orbital theory accounts for these observations with the concept of **delocalized pi bonds**. In this picture, the four 2p atomic orbitals combine mathematically to form four pi molecular orbitals of increasing energy. Two of these - the bonding pi orbitals - are lower in energy than the p atomic orbitals from which they are formed, while two - the antibonding π^* orbitals - are higher in energy.



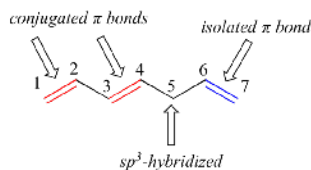
The lowest energy molecular orbital, π_1 , has only constructive interaction and zero nodes. Higher in energy, but still lower than the isolated p orbitals, the π_2 orbital has one node but two constructive interactions - thus it is still a bonding orbital overall. Looking at the two antibonding orbitals, π_3^* has two nodes and one constructive interaction, while π_4^* has three nodes and zero constructive interactions.

By the *aufbau* principle, the four electrons from the isolated $2p_z$ atomic orbitals are placed in the bonding π_1 and π_2 MO's. Because π_1 includes constructive interaction between C_2 and C_3 , there is a degree, in the 1,3-butadiene molecule, of π -bonding interaction between these two carbons, which accounts for its shorter length and the barrier to rotation. The valence bond picture of 1,3-butadiene shows the two π bonds as being isolated from one another, with each pair of π electrons 'stuck' in its own π bond. However, molecular orbital theory predicts (accurately) that the four π electrons are to some extent delocalized, or 'spread out', over the whole π system.



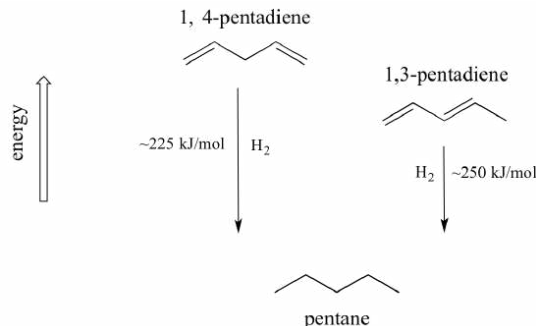
space-filling view

1,3-butadiene is the simplest example of a system of **conjugated π bonds**. To be considered conjugated, two or more π bonds must be separated by only one single bond – in other words, there cannot be an intervening sp^3 -hybridized carbon, because this would break up the overlapping system of parallel p orbitals. In the compound below, for example, the C_1 - C_2 and C_3 - C_4 double bonds are conjugated, while the C_6 - C_7 double bond is **isolated** from the other two π bonds by sp^3 -hybridized C_5 .



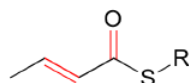
A very important concept to keep in mind is that *there is an inherent thermodynamic stability associated with conjugation*. This stability can be measured experimentally by comparing the **heat of hydrogenation** of two different dienes. (Hydrogenation is a reaction type that we will learn much more about in chapter 15: essentially, it is the process of adding a hydrogen molecule - two

protons and two electrons - to a pi bond). When the two *conjugated* double bonds of 1,3-pentadiene are 'hydrogenated' to produce pentane, about 225 kJ is released per mole of pentane formed. Compare that to the approximately 250 kJ/mol released when the two *isolated* double bonds in 1,4-pentadiene are hydrogenated, also forming pentane.

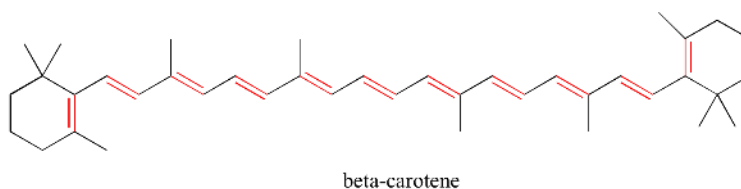


The conjugated diene is lower in energy: in other words, it is more stable. In general, conjugated pi bonds are more stable than isolated pi bonds.

Conjugated pi systems can involve oxygen and nitrogen atoms as well as carbon. In the metabolism of fat molecules, some of the key reactions involve alkenes that are conjugated to carbonyl groups.



In chapter 4, we will see that MO theory is very useful in explaining why organic molecules that contain extended systems of conjugated pi bonds often have distinctive colors. beta-carotene, the compound responsible for the orange color of carrots, has an extended system of 11 conjugated pi bonds.



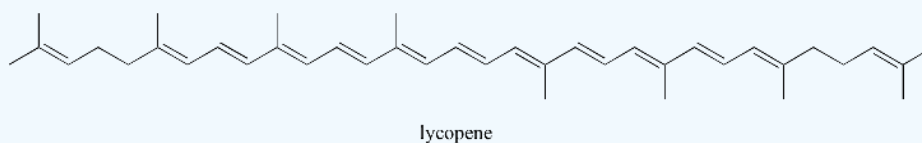
Exercise 2.9

Identify all conjugated and isolated double bonds in the structures below. For each conjugated pi system, specify the number of overlapping *p* orbitals, and how many pi electrons are shared among them.



Exercise 2.10

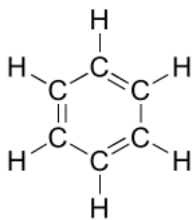
Identify all isolated and conjugated double bonds in lycopene, the red-colored compound in tomatoes. How many pi electrons are contained in the conjugated pi system?



Solutions to exercises

Aromaticity

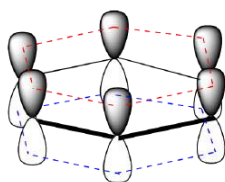
Molecular orbital theory is especially helpful in explaining the unique properties of **aromatic** compounds such as benzene:



[3D interactive model of benzene](#)

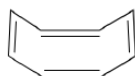
Although benzene is most often drawn with three double bonds and three single bonds, in fact all of the carbon-carbon bonds are exactly the same length (138 pm). In addition, the pi bonds in benzene are significantly less reactive than 'normal' pi bonds, either isolated or conjugated. Something about the structure of benzene makes its pi bonding arrangement especially stable. This 'something' has a name: it is called 'aromaticity'.

What exactly is this 'aromatic' property that makes the pi bonds in benzene so stable? In large part, the answer to this question lies in the fact that benzene is a *cyclic* molecule in which all of the ring atoms are sp^2 -hybridized. This allows the pi electrons to be delocalized in molecular orbitals that extend all the way around the ring, above and below the plane. For this to happen, of course, the ring must be planar – otherwise the p orbitals couldn't overlap properly. Benzene is indeed known to be a flat molecule.



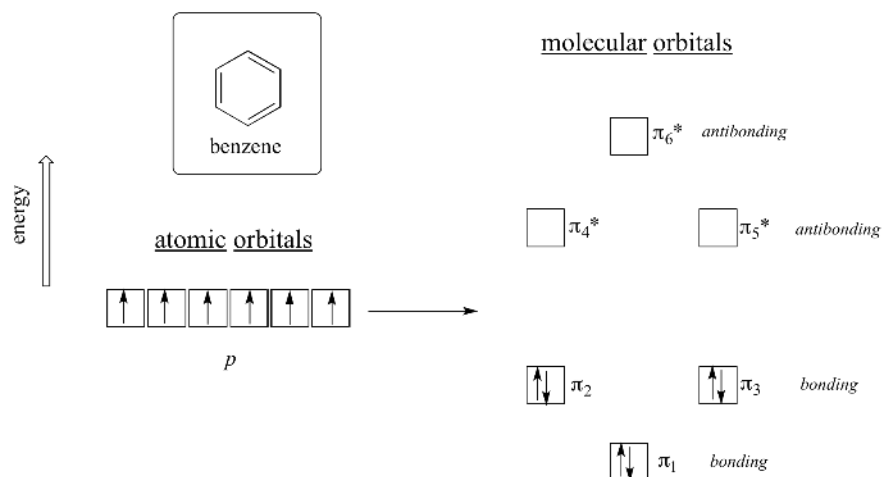
π electrons delocalized around the ring, above and below the plane

Do all cyclic molecules with alternating single and double bonds have this same aromatic stability? The answer, in fact, is 'no'. The eight-membered cyclooctatetraene ring shown below is *not* flat, and its pi bonds react like 'normal' alkenes. π



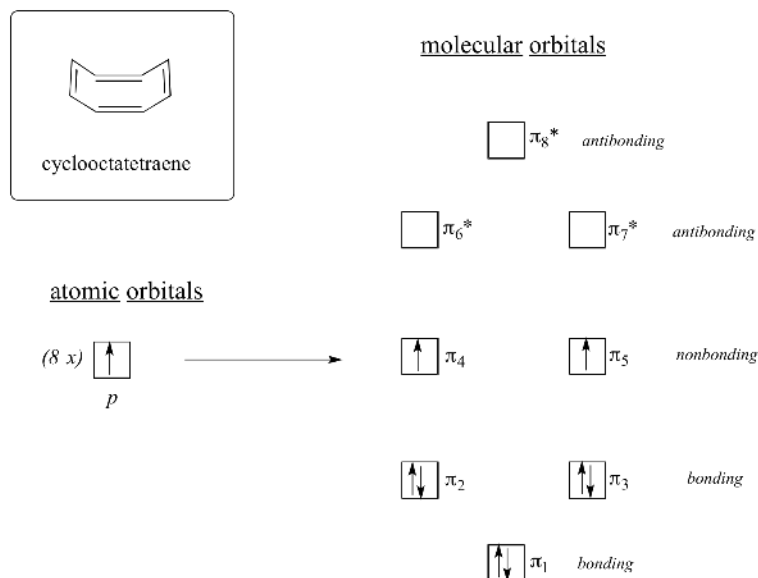
cyclooctatetraene
(not aromatic)

Clearly it takes something more to be aromatic, and this can best be explained with molecular orbital theory. Let's look at an energy diagram of the pi molecular orbitals in benzene.



Quantum mechanical calculations tell us that the six pi molecular orbitals in benzene, formed from six atomic p orbitals, occupy four separate energy levels. π_1 and π_6^* have unique energy levels, while the $\pi_2 - \pi_3$ and $\pi_4^* - \pi_5^*$ pairs are **degenerate**, meaning they are at the same energy level. When we use the *aufbau* principle to fill up these orbitals with the six pi electrons in benzene, we see that the bonding orbitals are completely filled, and the antibonding orbitals are empty. This gives us a good clue to the source of the special stability of benzene: a full set of bonding MO's is similar in many ways to the 'full shell' of electrons in the atomic orbitals of the stable noble gases helium, neon, and argon.

Now, let's do the same thing for cyclooctatetraene, which we have already learned is *not* aromatic.



The result of molecular orbital calculations tells us that the lowest and highest energy MOs (π_1 and π_8^*) have unique energy levels, while the other six form degenerate pairs. Notice that π_4 and π_5 are at the same energy level as the isolated $2p_z$ atomic orbitals: these are therefore neither bonding nor antibonding, rather they are referred to as **nonbonding MOs**. Filling up the MOs with the eight pi electrons in the molecule, we find that the last two electrons are unpaired and fall into the two degenerate nonbonding orbitals. Because we don't have a perfect filled shell of bonding MOs, our molecule is not aromatic. As a consequence, each of the double bonds in cyclooctatetraene acts more like an *isolated* double bond.

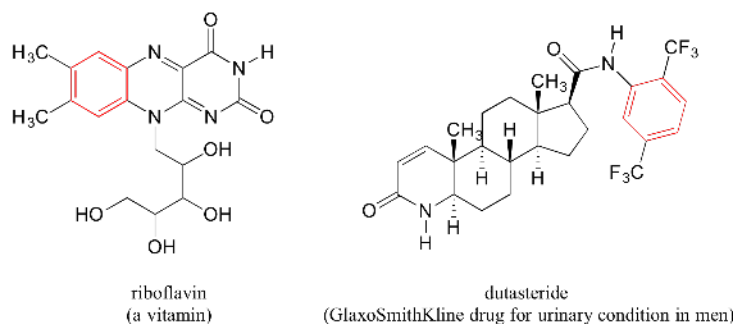
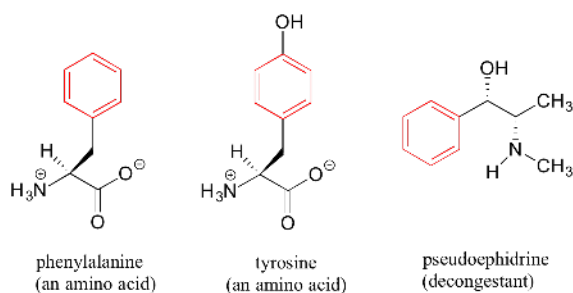
Here, then, are the conditions that must be satisfied for a molecule or group to be considered aromatic:

✓ Criteria for aromaticity:

- The molecule or group must be cyclic.
- The ring must be planar.
- Each atom in the ring must be sp^2 -hybridized.
- The number of pi electrons in the ring must equal $4n+2$, where n is any positive integer including zero.

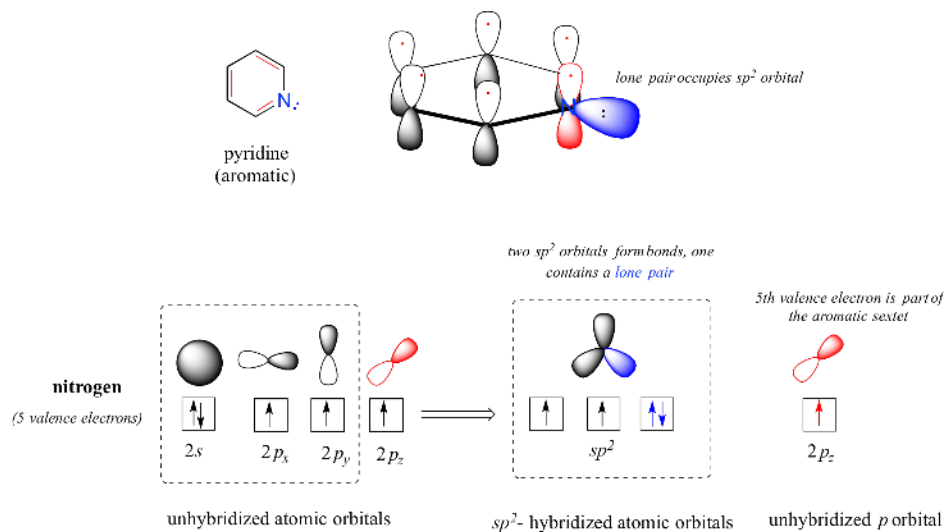
Rule #4 is known as the **Hückel rule**, named after Erich Hückel, a German scientist who studied aromatic compounds in the 1930's. If $n = 0$, the Hückel number is 2. If $n = 1$, the Hückel number is 6 (the Hückel number for benzene). The series continues with 10, 14, 18, 22, and so on. Cyclooctatetraene has eight pi electrons, which is *not* a Hückel number. Because six is such a common Hückel number, chemists often use the term '**aromatic sextet**'.

Benzene rings are ubiquitous in biomolecules and drugs - below are just a few examples.



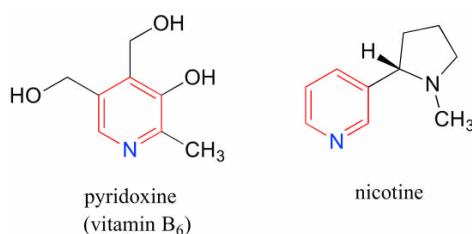
Recall that a benzene ring with a hydroxyl substituent -such as seen in the tyrosine structure above - is called a **phenol**.

Heterocycles - cyclic structures in which the ring atoms may include oxygen or nitrogen - can also be aromatic. Pyridine, for example, is an aromatic heterocycle. In the bonding picture for pyridine, the nitrogen is sp^2 -hybridized, with two of the three sp^2 orbitals forming sigma overlaps with the sp^2 orbitals of neighboring carbon atoms, and the third nitrogen sp^2 orbital containing the lone pair. The unhybridized p orbital contains a single electron, which is part of the 6 pi-electron system delocalized around the ring.

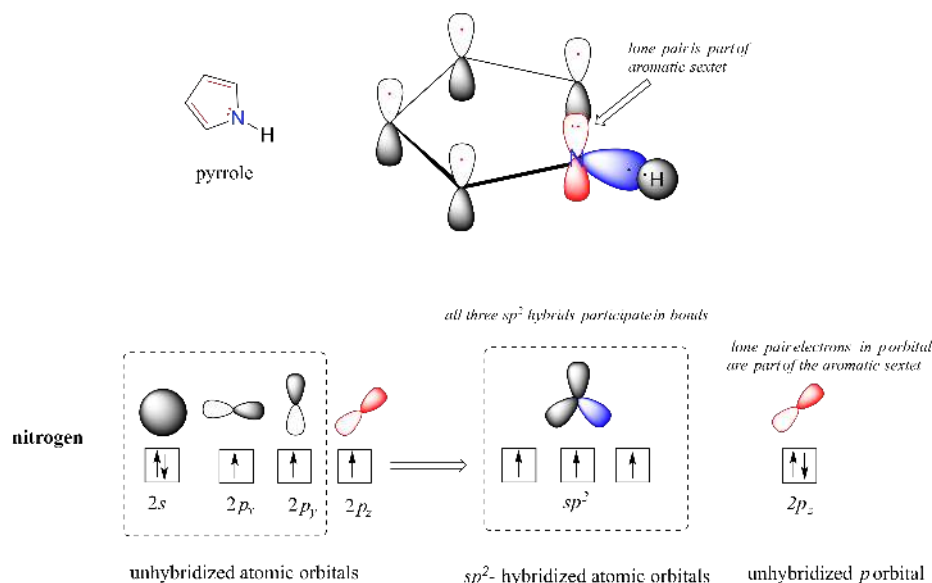


[another image of orbitals in pyridine](#)

Pyridoxine, commonly known as vitamin B₆, and nicotine are both substituted pyridines.

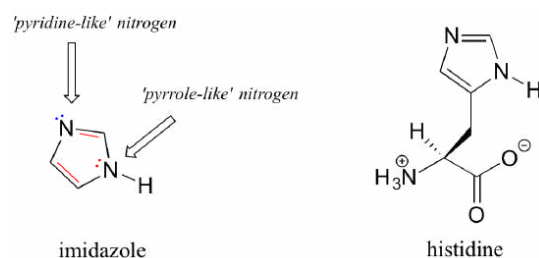


Pyrrole is a five-membered aromatic heterocycle. In pyrrole, the lone pair electrons on the sp^2 -hybridized nitrogen are part of the aromatic sextet (contrast this to pyridine, where the lone pair occupies one of the sp^2 hybrid orbitals).



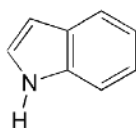
Why don't we assume that the nitrogen in pyrrole is sp^3 -hybridized, like a normal secondary amine? The answer is simple: if it were, then pyrrole could not be aromatic, and thus it would not have the stability associated with aromaticity. In general, *if a molecule or group can be aromatic, it will be*, just as water will always flow downhill if there is a downhill pathway available.

Imidazole is another important example of an aromatic heterocycle found in biomolecules - the side chain of the amino acid histidine contains an imidazole ring.

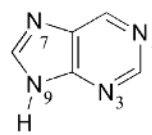


In imidazole, one nitrogen is 'pyrrole-like' (the lone pair contributes to the aromatic sextet) and one is 'pyridine-like' (the lone pair is located in an sp^2 orbital, and is *not* part of the aromatic sextet).

Fused-ring structures can also fulfill the Hückel criteria, and often have many of the same properties as monocyclic aromatic compounds, including a planar structure. Indole (a functional group on the side chain of the amino acid tryptophan) and purine (found in guanine and adenine nucleotide bases) both have a total of ten pi electrons delocalized around two rings.

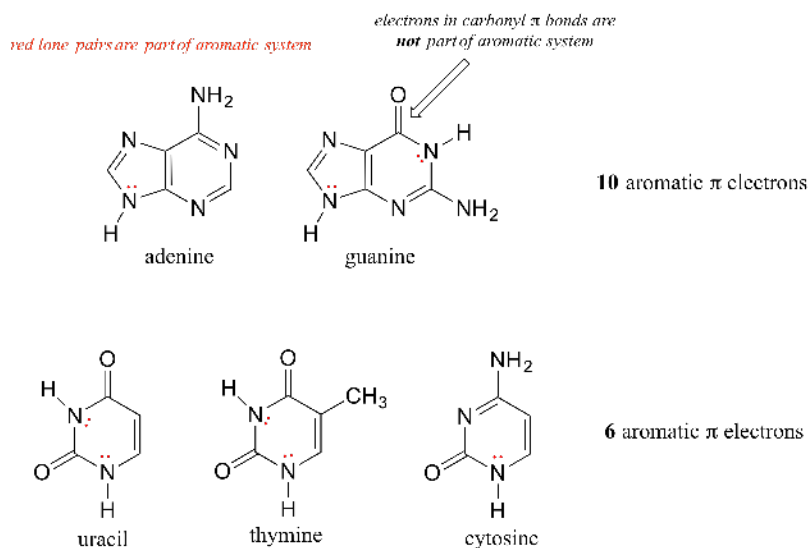


indole



purine

The nucleic acid bases of DNA and RNA - guanine, adenine, cytosine, thymine, and uracil - are all aromatic systems, with the characteristic aromatic properties of planarity and delocalized pi electron density. When you study the structure and function of DNA and RNA in a biochemistry or molecular biology course, you will see that the planar shape of the bases plays a critically important role.

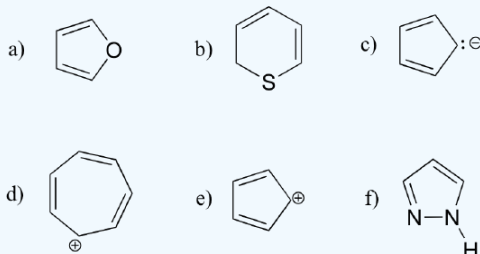


Exercise 2.11

Classify the nitrogen atoms of indole and purine as either 'pyrrole-like' or 'pyridine-like', in terms of where the lone pair electrons are located.

Exercise 2.12

Are the following molecules/ions aromatic? Explain, using criteria you learned in this section.



Solutions to exercises

Contributors and Attributions

- Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled 3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 2.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Conformations and Stereochemistry

- 4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry
- 4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules
- 4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules
- 4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers
- 4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system
- 4.5: Optical Activity
- 4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

4: Conformations and Stereochemistry is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry

Molecular models are your friend!

*Because this chapter deals extensively with concepts that are inherently three-dimensional in nature, it will be very important for you to use a molecular modeling kit that is specifically intended for organic chemistry. Many of the ideas we will be exploring can be extremely confusing if you are limited to the two dimensions of this page. Be prepared to follow along with these discussions in **three** dimensions, with a molecular model in your hands!*

Introduction: Louis Pasteur and the discovery of molecular chirality

In 1848, a 25 year old chemist named Louis Pasteur made a startling - and some thought brash - claim to the scientific community. Pasteur was inexperienced, to say the least: he had only earned his doctorate the previous year, and had just started his first job as an assistant to a professor at the *Ecole normale superieure*, a university in Paris. Jean-Baptiste Biot, a highly respected physicist who had already made major contributions to scientific fields as diverse as meteorites, magnetism, and optics, was intrigued but unconvinced by Pasteur's claim. He invited the young man to come to his laboratory and reproduce his experiments.



(Photo credit: <https://www.flickr.com/photos/nate/>)

Decades earlier, Biot had discovered that aqueous solutions of some biologically-derived substances, such as [tartaric acid](#), [quinine](#), [morphine](#), and various sugars, were optically active: that is, the plane of polarized light would rotate in either a positive (clockwise, or right-handed) or negative (counter-clockwise, or left-handed) direction when passed through the solutions. Nobody understood the source of this optical property. One of the biological substances known to be optically active was a salt of [tartaric acid](#), a compound found in abundance in grapes and a major by-product of the wine-making industry.

The compound was dextrorotatory in solution – in other words, it rotated plane-polarized light in the positive (right-handed, or clockwise) direction. Curiously, though, chemists had also found that another form of processed tartaric acid was optically *inactive*, despite the fact that it appeared to be identical to the optically active acid in every other respect. The optically inactive compound was called '*acide racémique*', from the Latin *racemus*, meaning 'bunch of grapes'.

Louis Pasteur's claims had to do with experiments he said he had done with the 'racemic' acid. Jean-Baptiste Biot summoned Pasteur to his laboratory, and presented him with a sample of racemic acid which he himself had already confirmed was optically inactive. With Biot watching over his shoulder, and using Biot's reagents, Pasteur prepared the salt form of the acid, dissolved it in water, and left the aqueous solution in an uncovered flask to allow crystals to slowly form as the water evaporated.

Biot again summoned Pasteur to the lab a few days later when the crystallization was complete. Pasteur placed the crystals under a microscope, and began to painstakingly examine their shape, just as he had done in his original experiments. He had recognized that the crystals, which had a regular shape, were asymmetric: in other words, they could not be superimposed on their mirror

image. Scientists referred to asymmetric crystals and other asymmetric objects as being 'chiral', from the Greek word for 'hand'. Your hands are chiral objects, because although your right hand and your left hand are mirror images of one another, they cannot be superimposed. That is why you cannot fit your right hand in a left-handed glove.

More importantly, Pasteur had claimed that the chiral crystals he was seeing under the lens of his microscope were of two different types, and the two types were mirror images of each other: about half were what he termed 'right handed' and half were 'left-handed'. He carefully separated the right and left-handed crystals from each other, and presented the two samples to Biot. The eminent scientist then took what Pasteur told him were the left-handed crystals, dissolved them in water, and put the aqueous solution in a polarimeter, an instrument that measures optical rotation. Biot knew that the processed tartaric acid he had provided Pasteur had been optically inactive. He also knew that unprocessed tartaric acid from grapes had right-handed optical activity, whereas left-handed tartaric acid was unheard of. Before his eyes, however, he now saw that the solution was rotating light to the left. He turned to his young colleague and exclaimed, "*Mon cher enfant, j'ai tant aimé les sciences dans ma vie que cela me fait battre le coeur!*" (My dear child, I have loved science so much during my life that this makes my heart pound!)

Biot had good reason to be so profoundly excited. Pasteur had just conclusively demonstrated, for the first time, the concept of **molecular chirality**: molecules themselves - not just macroscopic objects like crystals - could exhibit chirality, and could be separated into distinct right-handed and left-handed 'stereoisomers'. Tying together ideas from physics, chemistry, and biology, he had shown that nature could be chiral *at the molecular level*, and in doing so he had introduced to the world a new subfield which came to be known as 'stereochemistry'.

About ten years after his demonstration of molecular chirality, Pasteur went on to make another observation with profound implications for biological chemistry. It was already well known that 'natural' tartaric acid (the right-handed kind from grapes) could be fermented by bacteria. Pasteur discovered that the bacteria were selective with regard to the chirality of tartaric acid: no fermentation occurred when the bacteria were provided with pure left-handed acid, and when provided with racemic acid they specifically fermented the right-handed component, leaving the left-handed acid behind.

Pasteur was not aware, at the time of the discoveries described here, the details of the structural features of tartaric acid at the molecular level that made the acid chiral, although he made some predictions concerning the bonding patterns of carbon which turned out to be remarkably accurate. In the more than 150 years since Pasteur's initial tartaric acid work, we have greatly expanded our understanding of molecular chirality, and it is this knowledge that makes up the core of this chapter. Put simply, stereochemistry is the study of how bonds are oriented in three-dimensional space. It is difficult to overstate the importance of stereochemistry in nature, and in the fields of biology and medicine in particular. As Pasteur so convincingly demonstrated, life itself is chiral: living things recognize different stereoisomers of organic compounds and process them accordingly.

Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

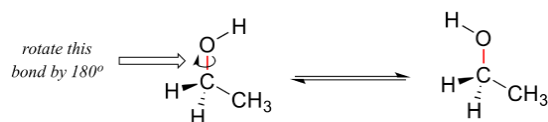
4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 3.1: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry has no license indicated.

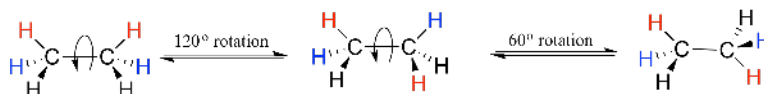
4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

Before we begin our exploration of stereochemistry and chirality, we first need to consider the subject of **conformational isomerism**, which has to do with rotation about single bonds.

We learned in section 2.1 that single bonds in organic molecules are free to rotate, due to the 'end-to-end' (sigma) nature of their orbital overlap. Consider the carbon-oxygen bond in ethanol, for example: with a 180° rotation about this bond, the shape of the molecule would look quite different:

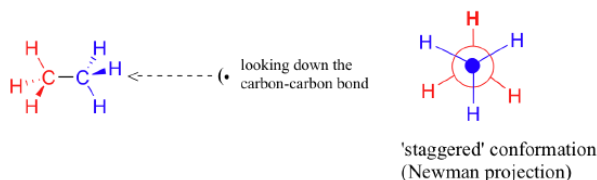


Or ethane: rotation about the carbon-carbon sigma bond results in many different possible three-dimensional arrangements of the atoms.



These different arrangements, resulting from sigma bond rotation, are referred to in organic chemistry as **conformations**. Any one specific conformation is called a **conformational isomer**, or **conformer**.

In order to better visualize different conformations of a molecule, it is convenient to use a drawing convention called the **Newman projection**. In a Newman projection, we look lengthwise down a specific bond of interest – in this case, the carbon-carbon bond in ethane. We depict the 'front' atom as a dot, and the 'back' atom as a larger circle.



[Interactive mode of ethane conformations](#)

The six carbon-hydrogen bonds are shown as solid lines protruding from the two carbons. Note that we do *not* draw bonds as solid or dashed wedges in a Newman projection.

Looking down the C-C bond in this way, the angle formed between a C-H bond on the front carbon and a C-H bond on the back carbon is referred to as a **dihedral angle**. (The dihedral angle between the hour hand and the minute hand on a clock is 0° at noon, 90° at 3:00, and so forth).

The lowest energy conformation of ethane, shown in the figure above, is called the '**staggered**' conformation: all of the dihedral angles are 60° , and the distance between the front and back C-H bonds is maximized.

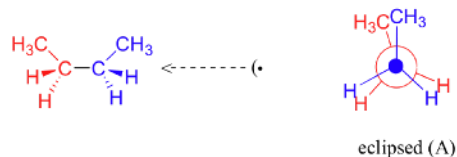
If we now rotate the front CH_3 group 60° clockwise, the molecule is in the highest energy '**eclipsed**' conformation, where the dihedral angles are all 0° (we stagger the bonds slightly in our Newman projection drawing so that we can see them all).



The energy of the eclipsed conformation, where the electrons in the front and back C-H bonds are closer together, is approximately 12 kJ/mol higher than that of the staggered conformation.

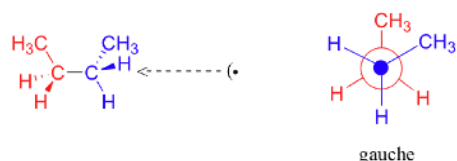
Another 60° rotation returns the molecule to a second staggered conformation. This process can be continued all around the 360° circle, with three possible eclipsed conformations and three staggered conformations, in addition to an infinite number of conformations in between these two extremes.

Now let's consider butane, with its four-carbon chain. There are now three rotating carbon-carbon bonds to consider, but we will focus on the middle bond between C_2 and C_3 . Below are two representations of butane in a conformation which puts the two CH_3 groups (C_1 and C_4) in the eclipsed position, with the two C-C bonds at a 0° dihedral angle.



[Interactive model of butane conformations](#)

If we rotate the front, (blue) carbon by 60° clockwise, the butane molecule is now in a staggered conformation.

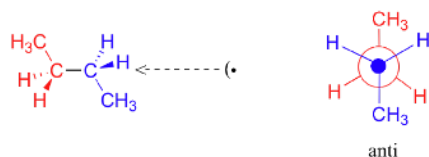


This is more specifically referred to as the **gauche** conformation of butane. Notice that although they are staggered, the two methyl groups are not as far apart as they could possibly be.

A further rotation of 60° gives us a second eclipsed conformation (B) in which both methyl groups are lined up with hydrogen atoms.

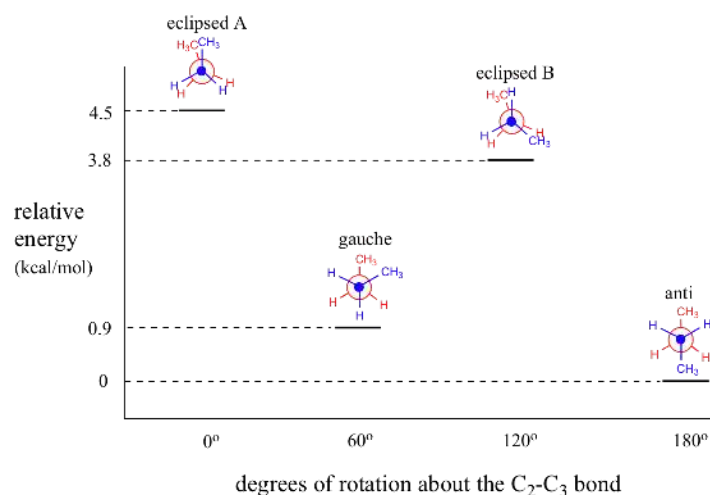


One more 60° rotation produces another staggered conformation called the **anti** conformation, where the two methyl groups are positioned opposite each other (a dihedral angle of 180°).

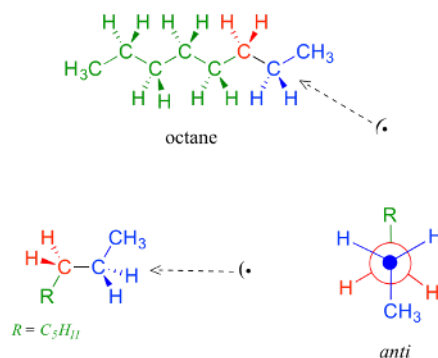


As with ethane, the staggered conformations of butane are energy 'valleys', and the eclipsed conformations are energy 'peaks'. However, in the case of butane there are two different valleys, and two different peaks. The gauche conformation is a higher energy valley than the anti conformation due to **steric strain**, which is the repulsive interaction caused by the two bulky methyl groups being forced too close together. Clearly, steric strain is lower in the anti conformation. In the same way, steric strain causes the eclipsed A conformation - where the two methyl groups are as close together as they can possibly be - to be higher in energy than the two eclipsed B conformations.

The diagram below summarizes the relative energies for the various eclipsed, staggered, and gauche conformations.

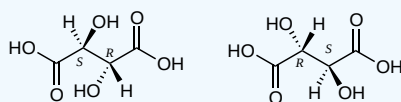


Because the anti conformation is lowest in energy (and also simply for ease of drawing), it is conventional to draw open-chain alkanes in a 'zigzag' form, which implies anti conformation at all carbon-carbon bonds. The figure below shows, as an example, a Newman projection looking down the C_2-C_3 bond of octane.



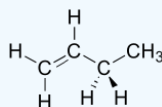
? Exercise 3.1

Using free rotation around C-C single bonds, show that (R,S) and (S,R)-tartaric acid are identical molecules.



Exercise 3.2

Draw a Newman projection, looking down the C_2-C_3 bond, of 1-butene in the conformation shown below (C_2 should be your front carbon).



Solutions to exercises

Online lectures from Khan Academy

[Newman projections part I](#)

[Newman projections part II](#)

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)
- Layne Morsch (University of Illinois Springfield)

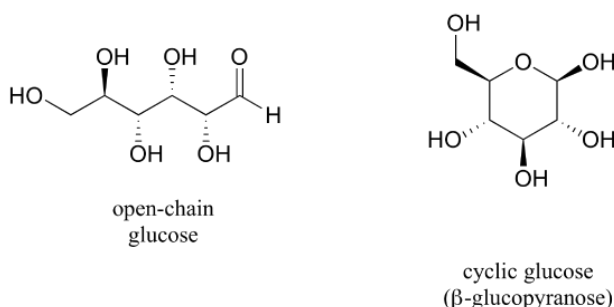
This page titled [4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.2: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

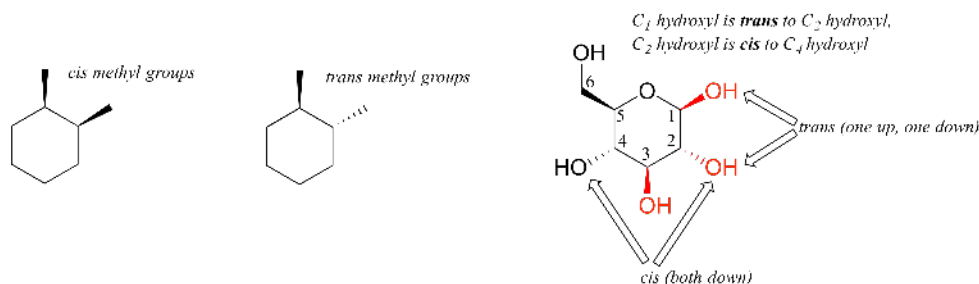
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

Browse through a biochemistry textbook and you will see any number of molecules with cyclic structures. Many of these cyclic structures are aromatic, and therefore planar. Many others, though, are composed of sp^3 -hybridized atoms, and it is these cyclic structures that are the topic of discussion in this section.

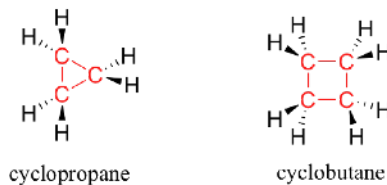
When discussing cyclic organic molecules, we will often use sugars as examples, because they are such important molecules in biological chemistry. It is important to recall that many sugars exist in aqueous solution as both open-chain and cyclic forms. You need not worry at this point about understanding how the cyclic form is named, or the reaction by which the cyclization occurs - this will be covered in chapter 10.



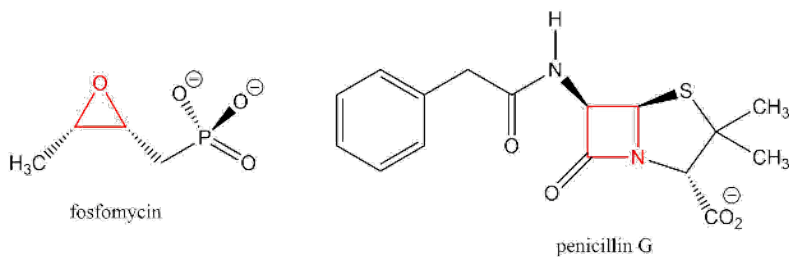
One thing that you should notice in the cyclic structure shown above is that atoms or groups bonded to tetrahedral ring carbons are either pointing up (out of the plane of the page) or down (into the plane of the page), as indicated by the use of dashed or solid wedge bonds. When two substituents on the same ring are both pointing toward the same side of the ring, they are said to be **cis** to each other. When they are pointed to opposite sides, they are said to be **trans** to each other.



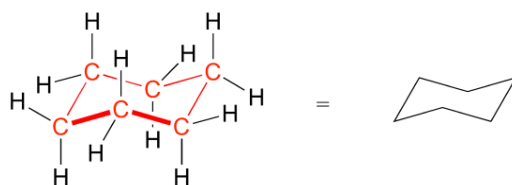
Ring structures in organic molecules are usually five-membered or six-membered. Three- and four-membered rings are occasionally found in nature, but are significantly higher in energy. The relative instability of these smaller ring structures can be explained by a concept called **angle strain**, in which the four bonds around the sp^3 -hybridized carbons are forced out of their preferred tetrahedral angles.



If one of the carbon-carbon bonds is broken, the ring will 'spring' open, releasing energy as the bonds reassume their preferred tetrahedral geometry. The effectiveness of two antibiotic drugs, fosfomycin and penicillin, is due in large part to the high reactivity of the three- and four-membered rings in their structures.



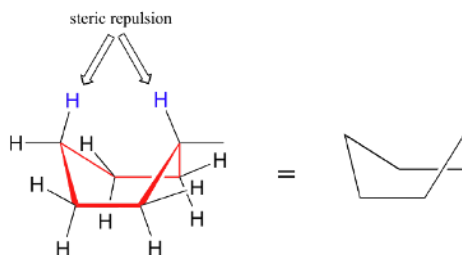
In six-membered cycloalkane structures, bonding angles are close to tetrahedral, and thus ring strain is not a factor – these rings are in fact very stable. However, the ‘flat’ drawings we have been using up to now do not accurately show the actual three-dimensional shape of a five- or six-membered ring. If cyclohexane were indeed flat, the bond angles would have to be distorted from 109.5° to 120° . If you build a model, though, you will find that when you rotate the carbon-carbon bonds so as to put the ring into a shape that resembles a reclining beach chair, all of the carbon-carbon bonds are able to assume tetrahedral bonding angles.



‘chair’ conformation of cyclohexane

This **chair conformation** is the lowest energy conformation for cyclohexane and other six-membered rings.

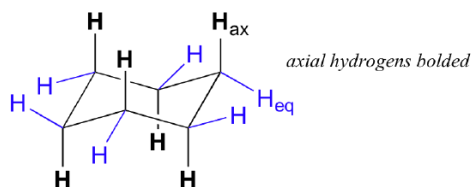
An alternate conformation for a six-membered ring is called the ‘boat’:



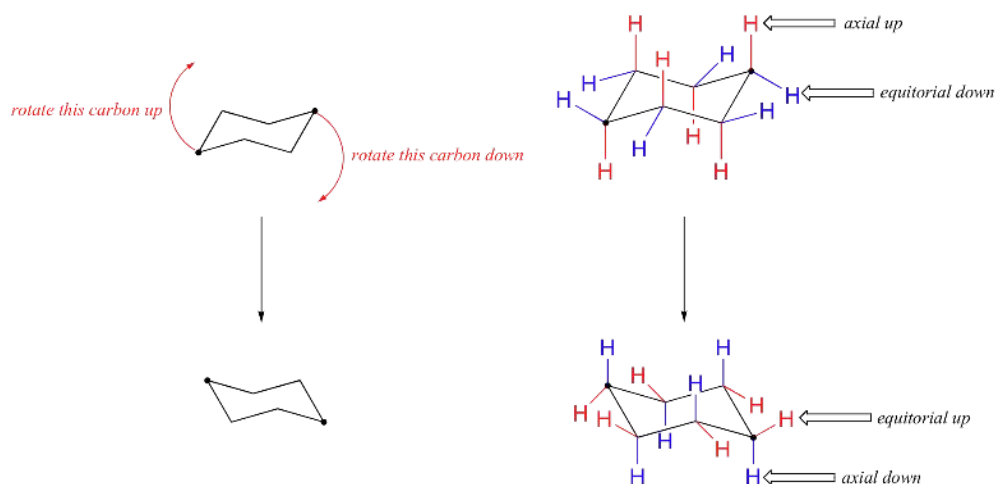
[Interactive model of cyclohexane conformations](#)

In the boat conformation, two of the substituents – those on the ‘bow’ and the ‘stern’ if you will – are brought close enough to each other to cause steric strain. An additional cause of the higher energy of the boat conformation is that adjacent hydrogen atoms on the ‘bottom of the boat’ are forced into eclipsed positions. For these reasons, the boat conformation is a high energy conformation of cyclohexane, about 30 kJ/mol less stable than the chair conformation.

If you look carefully at your model of cyclohexane in the chair conformation, you will see that all twelve hydrogens are not equivalent in terms of their three-dimensional arrangement in space. Six hydrogens are **axial** – that is, they are pointing either straight up or straight down relative to the ring. The other six hydrogens are **equatorial**, meaning that they are pointing away from the perimeter of the ring, either slightly up or slightly down. *(The equatorial vs axial distinction is often hard to see at first - it would be a very good idea at this point to sit down with your instructor or tutor and work with a modeling kit).*



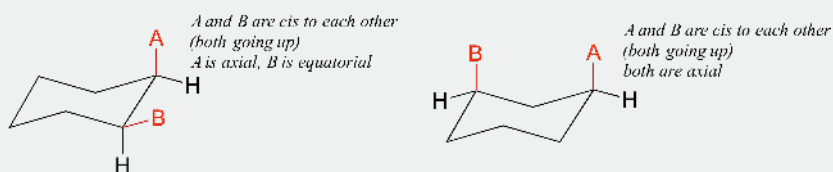
This is not the only possible chair conformation for cyclohexane. On your model, rotate one of the 'up' carbons down, and one of the 'down' carbons up. You now have a new, alternate chair conformation – this process is called **ring inversion**.



What you should recognize here is that, as a result of the ring inversion process, all of the axial and equatorial hydrogens have traded positions – axial hydrogens have become equatorial, and vice-versa. Notice, however, that the 'down' hydrogens are still pointing down, and the 'up' hydrogens are still pointing up regardless of whether they are axial or equatorial. At room temperature, cyclohexane is constantly inverting between two chair forms of equal energy – it is a rapid equilibrium situation. Thus, except at very low temperatures, we are not able to distinguish between axial and equatorial hydrogens, as they are constantly switching back and forth.

axial/equatorial vs cis/trans

A very common error made by organic chemistry students as they begin to learn about chair conformations is to confuse the terms axial and equatorial with the terms *cis* and *trans*. **These are completely different things!** For example, when two substituents on a ring are *cis* in relation to one another, it means that they are pointed to the same side of the ring (both up or both down). Depending on their positions on the ring, they might both be axial, both be equatorial, or one of each.

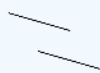


Do not make the mistake of calling two substituents *trans* to each other merely because one is equatorial and one is axial, or *cis* because they are both axial or both equatorial.

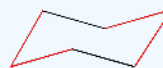
How to draw the cyclohexane chair conformation

As an organic chemistry student, you will be expected to be able to draw an accurate representation of the chair conformations of six-membered cycloalkanes, which includes being able to draw axial and equatorial substituents with their correct orientations. Here, then, are some guidelines to follow:

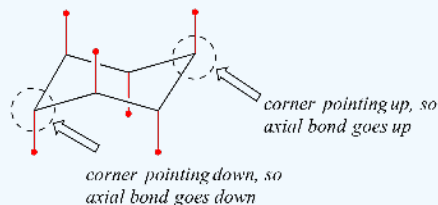
1: Draw two parallel lines, sloped slightly down



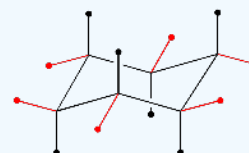
2: Draw the 'footrest' and 'back support' of the chair



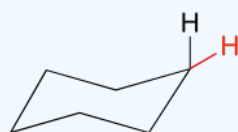
3: Draw axial bonds straight up or straight down



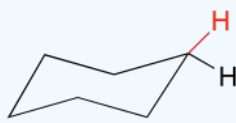
4: Draw equatorial bonds up and out, or down and out



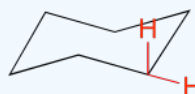
How **not** to draw the chair:



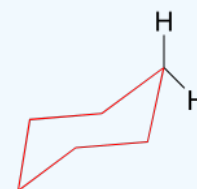
Incorrect. Equatorial bond should be **down** and out



Incorrect. Axial bond should be **straight up**

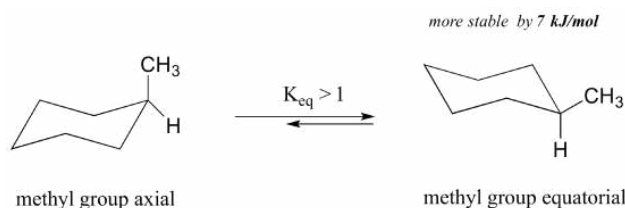


Incorrect. Axial bond should be straight **down**, equatorial bond should be **up** and out

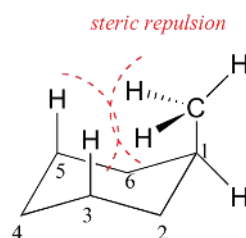


Incorrect. Ring should be tilted slightly

What happens to the relative energies of chair conformations when the ring has a large substituent, such as a methyl group? Now, the two chair conformations are quite different: in one, the methyl group is equatorial and in the other it is axial.



When the methyl group is in the axial position, it is brought close enough to the axial hydrogens on carbons two bonds away to cause destabilizing steric repulsion: this is referred to as **1,3-diaxial repulsion**.



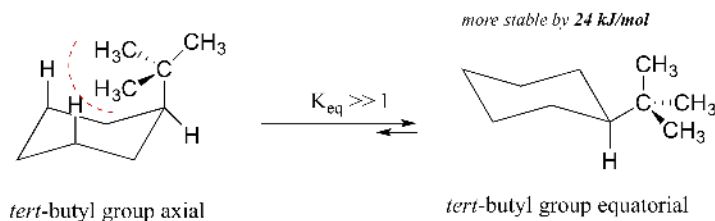
When in the equatorial position, the methyl group is pointing up and away from the rest of the ring, eliminating the unfavorable 1,3-diaxial interaction. As a consequence, the conformation in which the methyl group is in the equatorial position is more stable, by approximately 7 kJ/mol. At room temperature, methylcyclohexane exists as a rapid equilibrium between the two chair forms (and many other intermediate conformations), but the equilibrium constant (K_{eq}) favors the conformation where the methyl group is equatorial.

Exercise 3.3

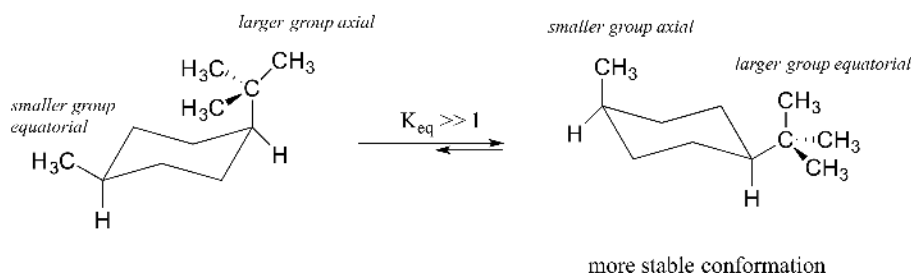
Here's some General Chemistry review: what is the value of K_{eq} at 25 °C for the axial to equatorial interconversion of methylcyclohexane as shown in the previous figure?

Solutions to exercises

The importance of the steric strain factor increases with the increasing size of a substituent. For example, the difference in energy between the two chair conformations of *tert*-butyl cyclohexane (24 kJ/mol) is much larger than for methylcyclohexane (7 kJ/mol), because a *tert*-butyl group is larger than a methyl group and results in more energetically unfavorable 1,3-diaxial interactions.



In the case of a disubstituted cyclohexane ring in which both substituents cannot be equatorial, the lower energy conformation generally places the bulkier substituent in the equatorial position.



As a general rule, the most stable chair conformation of a six-membered ring will be that in which the bulkiest groups are in the equatorial position.

? Exercise 3.4

Draw the lower energy chair conformations of a) *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane, and b) *trans*-1-isopropyl-3-methylcyclohexane. Draw all substituents on all carbons (including hydrogens), being sure that the axial or equatorial orientation is clear. Be sure to check your drawing with your instructor or tutor.

Exercise 3.5

Predict which of the following disubstituted hexanes has a greater energy difference between its two chair conformations, and state your reasons for your choices.

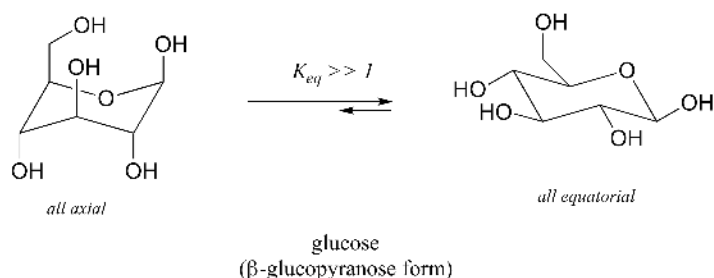
- cis*-1,3-dimethylcyclohexane or *cis*-1,4-dimethylcyclohexane
- cis*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane or *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane
- trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclohexane or *trans*-1-isopropyl-2-methylcyclohexane

Exercise 3.6

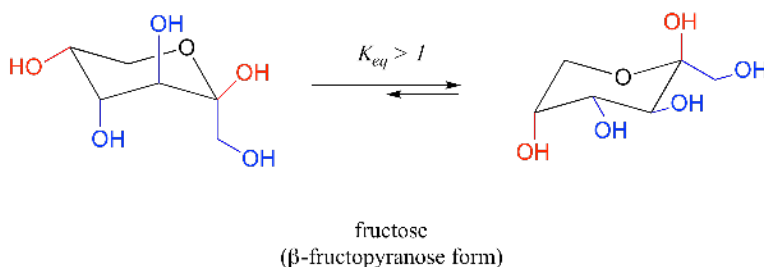
Can a 'ring inversion' change a *cis*-disubstituted cyclohexane to *trans*? Explain.

Solutions to exercises

Recall that five- and six-carbon sugars such as glucose and fructose exist in solution in open chain and cyclic forms. Glucose, in its most abundant form in solution, is a six-membered ring adopting a chair conformation with all substituents equatorial.



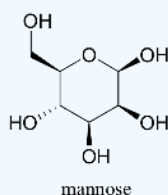
The most abundant form of fructose in aqueous solution is also a six-membered ring.



The lower energy chair conformation is the one with three of the five substituents (including the bulky $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ group) in the equatorial position.

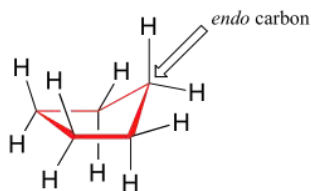
? Exercise 3.7

Draw the two chair conformations of the six-carbon sugar mannose, being sure to clearly show each non-hydrogen substituent as axial or equatorial. Predict which conformation is likely to be more stable, and explain why.



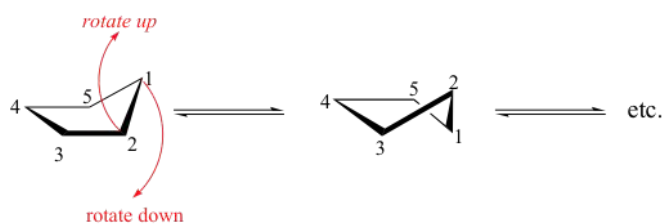
Solutions to exercises

The lowest energy conformation of cyclopentane and other five-membered rings is known as the 'envelope', with four of the ring atoms in the same plane and one out of plane (notice that this shape resembles an envelope with the flap open). The out-of-plane carbon is said to be in the **endo** position ('endo' means 'inside').

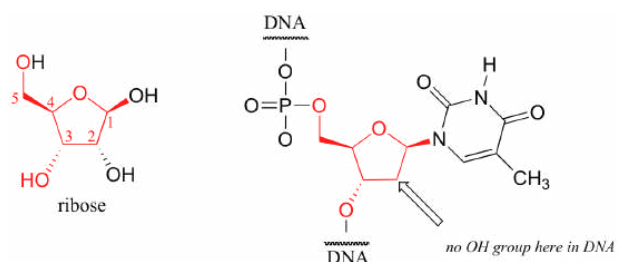


The 'equatorial' vs 'axial' distinction discussed in the context of 6-membered rings does not apply to five-membered rings.

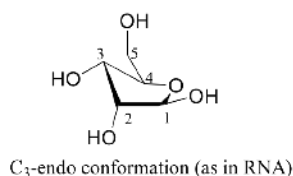
At room temperature, cyclopentane undergoes a rapid **pseudorotation** process in which each of the five carbons takes turns being in the **endo** position.



One of the most important five-membered rings in nature is a sugar called ribose – recall from section 1.3E that DNA and RNA are both constructed upon ‘backbones’ derived from ribose. Pictured below is one thymidine (T) deoxy-nucleotide from a stretch of DNA:



The lowest-energy conformations for ribose are envelope forms in which either C₃ or C₂ are *endo*, on the same side as the C₅ substituent.



This has very important implications for oligonucleotide structure – in DNA, it is C₂ that is in the *endo* position, while in RNA it is C₃.

[Khan Academy video tutorial on conformation of cycloalkanes](#)

This page titled [4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

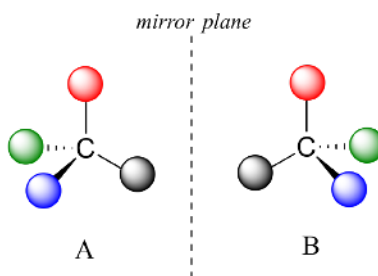
- [3.3: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

We turn now to concept of chirality that formed the basis of the story about Louis Pasteur in the beginning of this chapter. Recall that the term **chiral**, from the Greek work for 'hand', refers to anything which cannot be superimposed on its own mirror image. Your hands, of course, are chiral - you cannot superimpose your left hand on your right, and you cannot fit your left hand into a right-handed glove (which is also a chiral object). Another way of saying this is that your hands do not have a **mirror plane of symmetry**: you cannot find any plane which bisects your hand in such a way that one side of the plane is a mirror image of the other side. *Chiral objects do not have a plane of symmetry.*

Your face, on the other hand is **achiral** - lacking chirality - because, some small deviations notwithstanding, you could superimpose your face onto its mirror image. If someone were to show you a mirror image photograph of your face, you could line the image up, point-for-point, with your actual face. Your face has a plane of symmetry, because the left side is the mirror image of the right side.

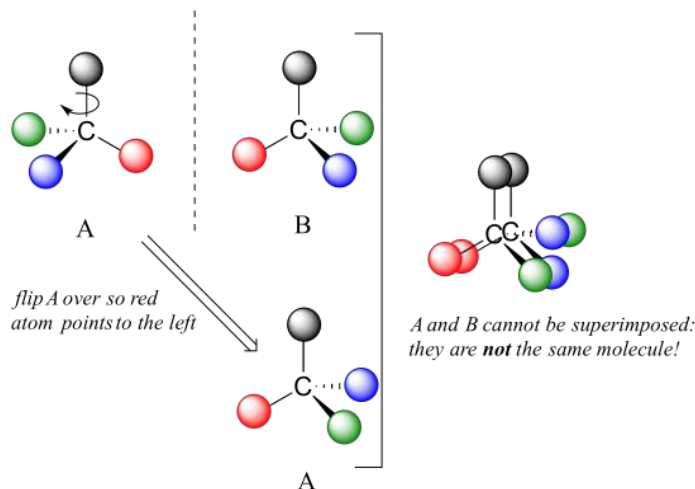
What Pasteur, Biot, and their contemporaries did not yet fully understand when Pasteur made his discovery of molecular chirality was the *source* of chirality at the molecular level. It stood to reason that a chiral molecule is one that does not contain a plane of symmetry, and thus cannot be superimposed on its mirror image. We now know that chiral molecules contain one or more **chiral centers**, which are almost always tetrahedral (sp^3 -hybridized) carbons with four different substituents. Consider the cartoon molecule A below: a tetrahedral carbon, with four different substituents denoted by balls of four different colors (for the time being, don't worry about exactly what these substituents could be - we will see real examples very soon).



[Another image](#)

The mirror image of A, which we will call B, is drawn on the right side of the figure, and an imaginary mirror is in the middle. Notice that every point on A lines up through the mirror with the same point on B: in other words, if A looked in the mirror, it would see B looking back.

Now, if we flip compound A over and try to superimpose it point for point on compound B, we find that we cannot do it: if we superimpose any two colored balls, then the other two are misaligned.

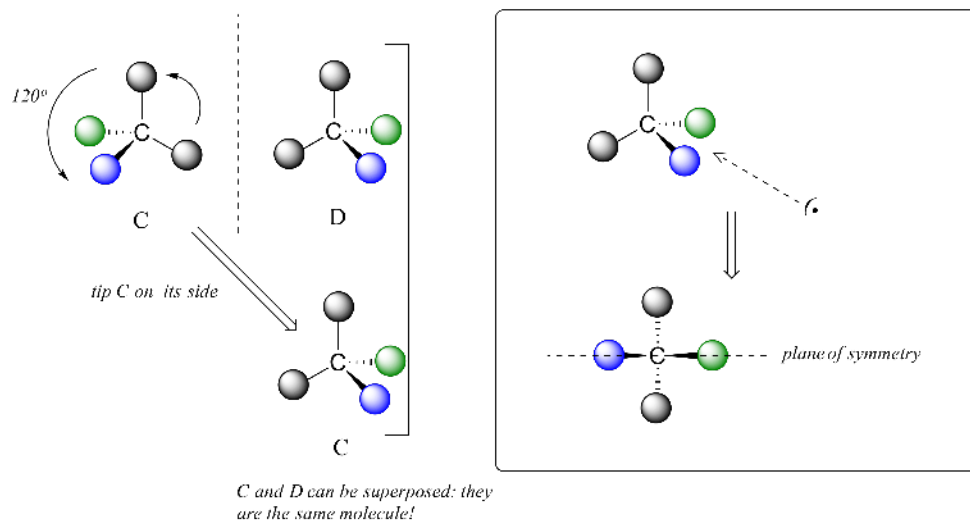


A is not superimposable on its mirror image (B), thus by definition A is a chiral molecule. It follows that B also is not superimposable on *its* mirror image (A), and thus it is also a chiral molecule. Also notice in the figure below (and convince yourself with models) that neither A nor B has an internal plane of symmetry.

A and B are **stereoisomers**: molecules with the same molecular formula and the same bonding arrangement, but a *different arrangement of atoms in space*. There are two types of stereoisomers: enantiomers and diastereomers. **Enantiomers** are pairs of stereoisomers which are mirror images of each other: thus, A and B are enantiomers. It should be self-evident that a chiral molecule will always have one (and *only* one) enantiomer: enantiomers come in pairs. Enantiomers have identical physical properties (melting point, boiling point, density, and so on). However, enantiomers do differ in how they interact with polarized light (we will learn more about this soon) and they may also interact in very different ways with other chiral molecules - proteins, for example. We will begin to explore this last idea in later in this chapter, and see many examples throughout the remainder of our study of biological organic chemistry.

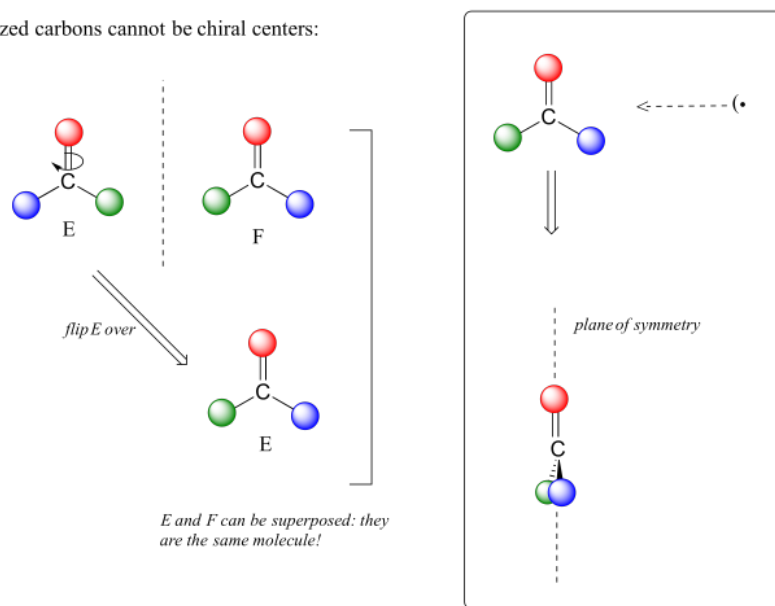
Diastereomers are stereoisomers which are *not* mirror images of each other. For now, we will concentrate on understanding enantiomers, and come back to diastereomers later.

We defined a chiral center as a tetrahedral carbon with four different substituents. If, instead, a tetrahedral carbon has two identical substituents (two black atoms in the cartoon figure below), then of course it still has a mirror image (*everything* has a mirror image, unless we are talking about a vampire!) However, it is superimposable on its mirror image, and has a plane of symmetry.



This molecule is **achiral** (lacking chirality). Using the same reasoning, we can see that a trigonal planar (sp^2 -hybridized) carbon is also not a chiral center.

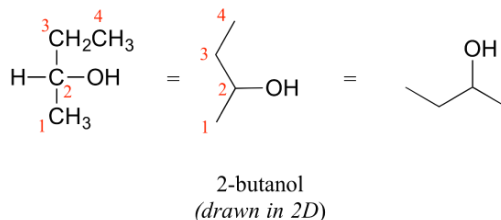
sp^2 -hybridized carbons cannot be chiral centers:



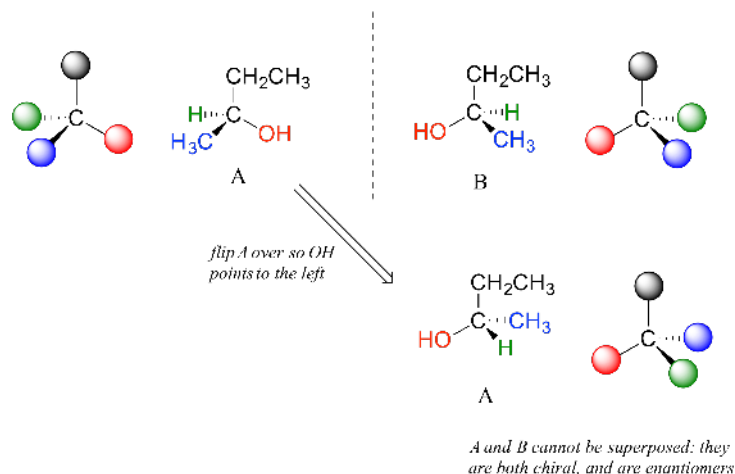
Notice that structure E can be superimposed on F, its mirror image - all you have to do is pick E up, flip it over, and it is the same as F. This molecule has a plane of symmetry, and is achiral.

Let's apply our general discussion to real molecules. For now, we will limit our discussion to molecules with a single chiral center. It turns out that tartaric acid, the subject of our chapter introduction, has *two* chiral centers, so we will come back to it later.

Consider 2-butanol, drawn in two dimensions below.



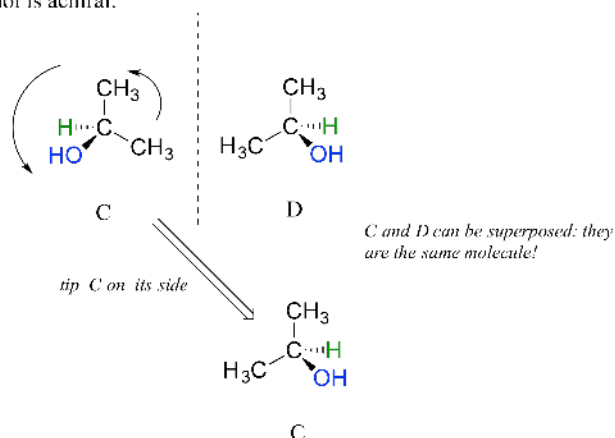
Carbon #2 is a chiral center: it is sp^3 -hybridized and tetrahedral (even though it is not drawn that way above), and the four things attached to it are different: a hydrogen, a methyl ($-CH_3$) group, an ethyl ($-CH_2CH_3$) group, and a hydroxyl (OH) group. Let's draw the bonding at C_2 in three dimensions, and call this structure A. We will also draw the mirror image of A, and call this structure B.



When we try to superimpose A onto B, we find that we cannot do it. A and B are both chiral molecules, and they are enantiomers of each other.

2-propanol, unlike 2-butanol, is *not* a chiral molecule. Carbon #2 is bonded to two identical substituents (methyl groups), and so it is not a chiral center.

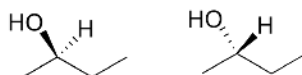
2-propanol is achiral:



Notice that 2-propanol is superimposable on its own mirror image.

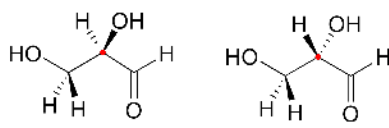
When we look at very simple molecules like 2-butanol, it is not difficult to draw out the mirror image and recognize that it is not superimposable. However, with larger, more complex molecules, this can be a daunting challenge in terms of drawing and three-dimensional visualization. The easy way to determine if a molecule is chiral is simply to look for the presence of one or more chiral centers: molecules with chiral centers will (almost always) be chiral. We insert the 'almost always' caveat here because it is possible to come up with the exception to this rule - we will have more to say on this later, but don't worry about it for now.

Here's another trick to make your stereochemical life easier: if you want to draw the enantiomer of a chiral molecule, it is not necessary to go to the trouble of drawing the point-for-point mirror image, as we have done up to now for purposes of illustration. Instead, keep the carbon skeleton the same, and simply reverse the solid and dashed wedge bonds on the chiral carbon: that accomplishes the same thing. You should use models to convince yourself that this is true, and also to convince yourself that swapping *any two substituents* about the chiral carbon will result in the formation of the enantiomer.

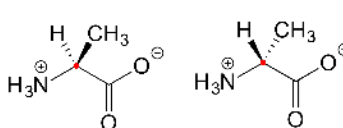


two enantiomers of 2-butanol

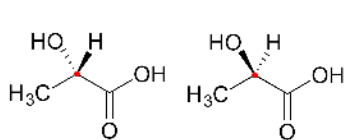
Here are four more examples of chiral biomolecules, each one shown as a pair of enantiomers, with chiral centers marked by red dots.



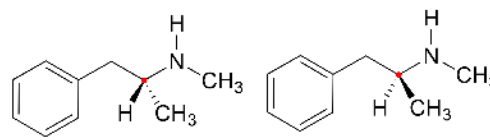
glyceraldehyde



alanine

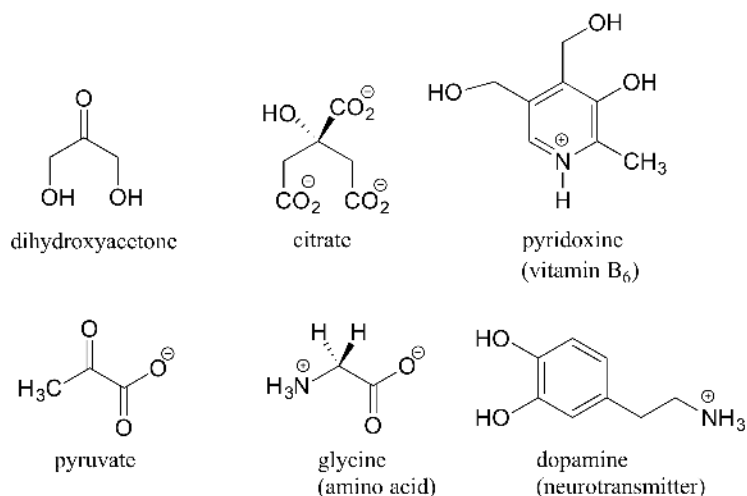


lactic acid



methamphetamine

Here are some examples of *achiral* biomolecules - convince yourself that none of them contain a chiral center:

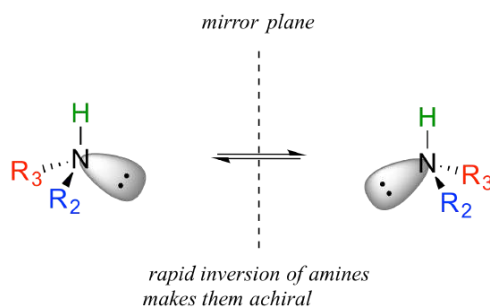


When looking for chiral centers, it is important to recognize that the question of whether or not the dashed/solid wedge drawing convention is used is irrelevant. Chiral molecules are sometimes drawn without using wedges (although obviously this means that stereochemical information is being omitted). Conversely, wedges may be used on carbons that are *not* chiral centers – look, for example, at the drawings of glycine and citrate in the figure above.

Can a chiral center be something other than a tetrahedral carbon with four different substituents? The answer to this question is 'yes' - however, these alternative chiral centers are very rare in the context of biological organic chemistry, and outside the scope of our discussion here.

You may also have wondered about amines: shouldn't we consider a secondary or tertiary amine to be a chiral center, as they are tetrahedral and attached to four different substituents, if the lone-pair electrons are counted as a 'substituent'? Put another way, isn't an amine non-superimposable on its mirror image?

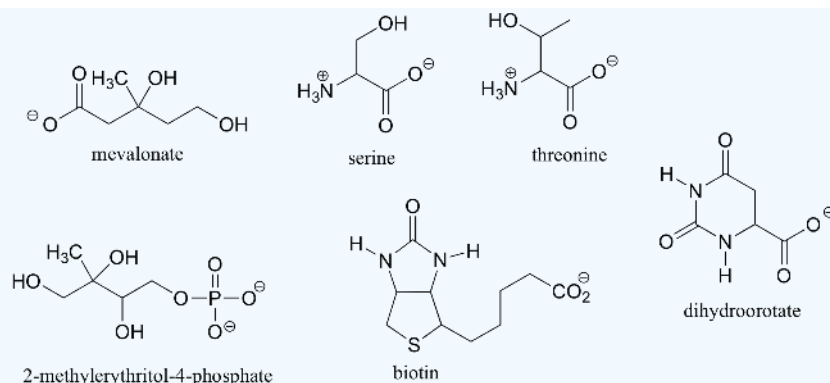
The answer: yes it is, in the static picture, but in reality, the nitrogen of an amine is rapidly and reversibly inverting, or turning inside out, at room temperature.



If you have trouble picturing this, take an old tennis ball and cut it in half. Then, take one of the concave halves and flip it inside out, then back again: this is what the amine is doing. The end result is that the two 'enantiomers' of the amine are actually two rapidly interconverting forms of the same molecule, and thus the amine itself is not a chiral center. This inversion process does *not* take place on a tetrahedral carbon, which of course has no lone-pair electrons.

? Exercise 3.8

Locate all of the chiral centers (there may be more than one in a molecule). Remember, hydrogen atoms bonded to carbon usually are not drawn in the line structure convention - but they are still there!



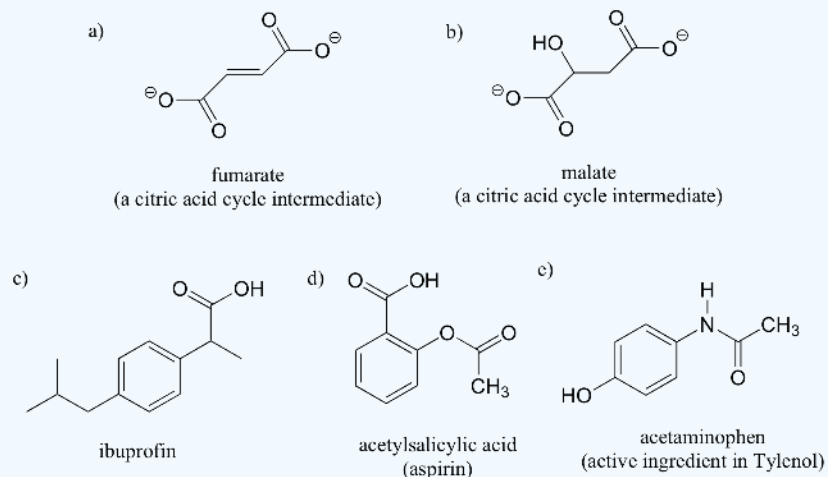
Exercise 3.9

- a) Draw two enantiomers of i) mevalonate and ii) serine.
- b) Are the two 2-butanol structures below enantiomers?



Exercise 3.10

Label the molecules below as chiral or achiral, and locate all chiral centers.



Solutions to exercises

Khan Academy video tutorials

[Chirality](#)

[Enantiomers](#)

This page titled [4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 3.4: [Chirality and stereoisomers](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system

Chemists need a convenient way to distinguish one stereoisomer from another. The **Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system** is a set of rules that allows us to unambiguously define the stereochemical configuration of any stereocenter, using the designations '**R**' (from the Latin *rectus*, meaning right-handed) or '**S**' (from the Latin *sinister*, meaning left-handed).

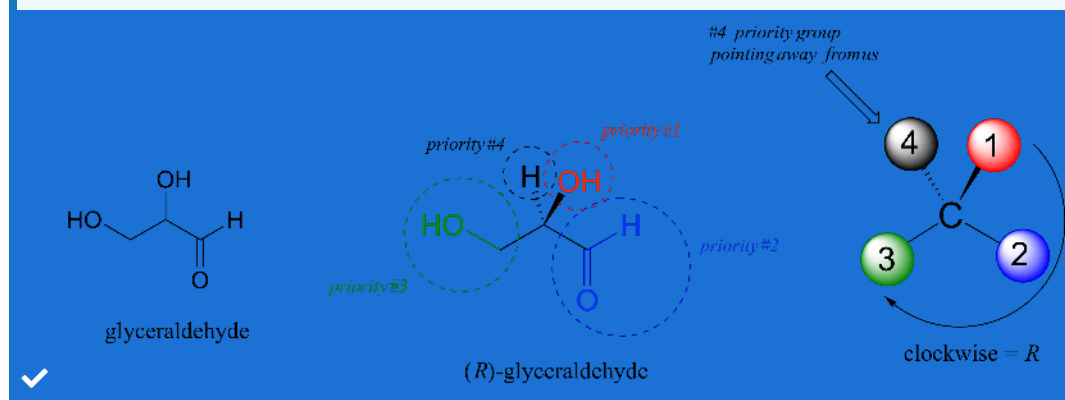
The rules for this system of stereochemical nomenclature are, on the surface, fairly simple.

Rules for assigning an R/S designation to a chiral center

- 1: Assign priorities to the four substituents, with #1 being the highest priority and #4 the lowest. Priorities are based on the atomic number.
- 2: Trace a circle from #1 to #2 to #3.
- 3: Determine the orientation of the #4 priority group. If it is oriented into the plane of the page (away from you), go to step 4a. If it is oriented out of the plane of the page (toward you) go to step 4b.
- 4a: (*#4 group pointing away from you*): a clockwise circle in part 2 corresponds to the *R* configuration, while a counterclockwise circle corresponds to the *S* configuration.
- 4b: (*#4 group pointing toward you*): a clockwise circle in part 2 corresponds to the *S* configuration, while a counterclockwise circle corresponds to the *R* configuration.

We'll use the 3-carbon sugar glyceraldehyde as our first example. The first thing that we must do is to assign a **priority** to each of the four substituents bound to the chiral center. We first look at the atoms that are directly bonded to the chiral center: these are H, O (in the hydroxyl), C (in the aldehyde), and C (in the CH₂OH group).

Assigning R/S configuration to glyceraldehyde

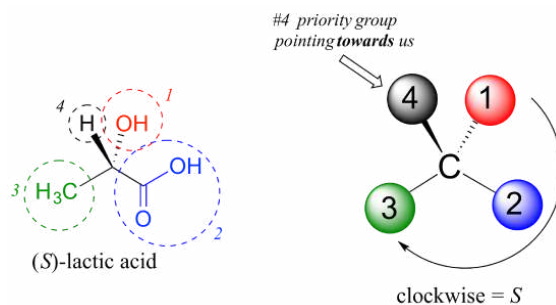


Two priorities are easy: hydrogen, with an atomic number of 1, is the lowest (#4) priority, and the hydroxyl oxygen, with atomic number 8, is priority #1. Carbon has an atomic number of 6. Which of the two 'C' groups is priority #2, the aldehyde or the CH₂OH? To determine this, we move one more bond away from the chiral center: for the aldehyde we have a *double* bond to an oxygen, while on the CH₂OH group we have a *single* bond to an oxygen. If the atom is the same, double bonds have a higher priority than single bonds. Therefore, the aldehyde group is assigned #2 priority and the CH₂OH group the #3 priority.

With our priorities assigned, we look next at the #4 priority group (the hydrogen) and see that it is pointed back away from us, into the plane of the page - thus step 4a from the procedure above applies. Then, we trace a circle defined by the #1, #2, and #3 priority groups, in increasing order. The circle is clockwise, which by step 4a tells us that this carbon has the '*R*' configuration, and that this molecule is (*R*)-glyceraldehyde. Its enantiomer, by definition, must be (*S*)-glyceraldehyde.

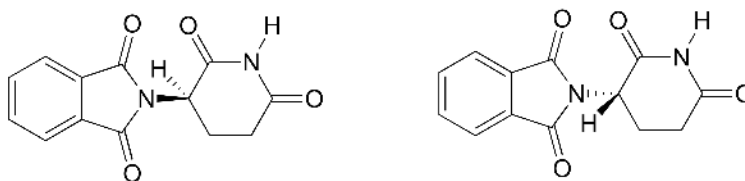
Next, let's look at one of the enantiomers of lactic acid and determine the configuration of the chiral center. Clearly, H is the #4 substituent and OH is #1. Owing to its three bonds to oxygen, the carbon on the acid group takes priority #2, and the methyl group

takes #3. The #4 group, hydrogen, happens to be drawn pointing *toward* us (out of the plane of the page) in this figure, so we use step 4b: The circle traced from #1 to #2 to #3 is clockwise, which means that the chiral center has the *S* configuration.



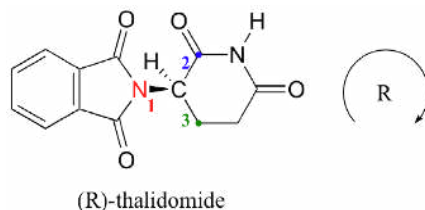
Interactive model of (S)-alanine

The drug thalidomide is an interesting - but tragic - case study in the importance of stereochemistry in drug design. First manufactured by a German drug company and prescribed widely in Europe and Australia in the late 1950's as a sedative and remedy for morning sickness in pregnant women, thalidomide was soon implicated as the cause of devastating birth defects in babies born to women who had taken it. Thalidomide contains a chiral center, and thus exists in two enantiomeric forms. It was marketed as a **racemic mixture**: in other words, a 50:50 mixture of both enantiomers.



two enantiomers of thalidomide

Let's try to determine the stereochemical configuration of the enantiomer on the left. Of the four bonds to the chiral center, the #4 priority is hydrogen. The nitrogen group is #1, the carbonyl side of the ring is #2, and the -CH_2 side of the ring is #3.



The hydrogen is shown pointing away from us, and the prioritized substituents trace a clockwise circle: this is the *R* enantiomer of thalidomide. The other enantiomer, of course, must have the *S* configuration.

Although scientists are still unsure today how thalidomide works, experimental evidence suggests that it was actually the *R* enantiomer that had the desired medical effects, while the *S* enantiomer caused the birth defects. Even with this knowledge, however, pure (*R*)-thalidomide is not safe, because enzymes in the body rapidly convert between the two enantiomers - we will see how that happens in chapter 12.

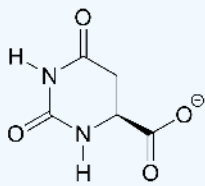
As a historical note, thalidomide was never approved for use in the United States. This was thanks in large part to the efforts of Dr. Frances Kelsey, a Food and Drug officer who, at peril to her career, blocked its approval due to her concerns about the lack of adequate safety studies, particularly with regard to the drug's ability to enter the bloodstream of a developing fetus. Unfortunately, though, at that time clinical trials for new drugs involved widespread and unregulated distribution to doctors and their patients across the country, so families in the U.S. were not spared from the damage caused.

Very recently a close derivative of thalidomide has become legal to prescribe again in the United States, with strict safety measures enforced, for the treatment of a form of blood cancer called multiple myeloma. In Brazil, thalidomide is used in the treatment of

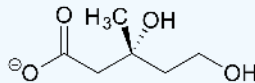
leprosy - but despite safety measures, children are still being born with thalidomide-related defects.

Exercise 3.11

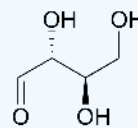
Determine the stereochemical configurations of the chiral centers in the biomolecules shown below.



dihydroorotate



mevalonate

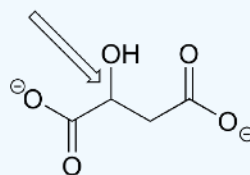


(D)-erythrose

Exercise 3.12

Should the (*R*) enantiomer of malate have a solid or dashed wedge for the C-O bond in the figure below?

Draw this bond as or
to get *R* configuration



(*R*)-malate

Exercise 3.13

Using solid or dashed wedges to show stereochemistry, draw the (*R*) enantiomer of ibuprofen and the (*S*) enantiomer of 2-methylerythritol-4-phosphate (structures are shown earlier in this chapter without stereochemistry).

Solutions to exercises

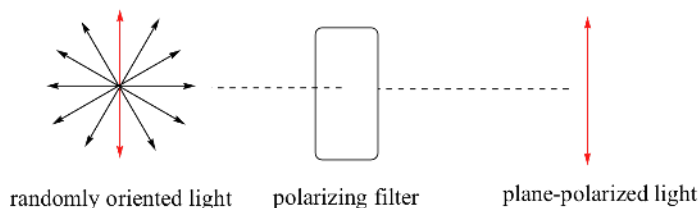
[Khan Academy video tutorial on the R-S naming system](#)

This page titled [4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

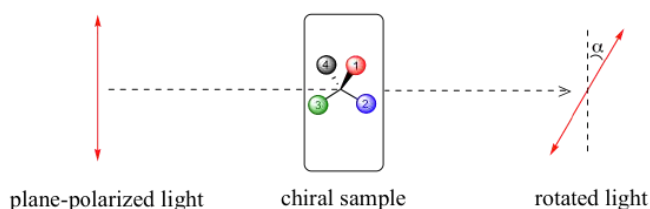
- **3.5: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

4.5: Optical Activity

Chiral molecules, as we learned in the introduction to this chapter, have an interesting optical property. You may know from studying physics that light waves are oscillating electric and magnetic fields. In ordinary light, the oscillation is randomly oriented in an infinite number of planes. When ordinary light is passed through a polarizer, all planes of oscillation are filtered out except one, resulting in **plane-polarized light**.



A beam of plane-polarized light, when passed through a sample of a chiral compound, interacts with the compound in such a way that the angle of oscillation will rotate. This property is called **optical activity**.



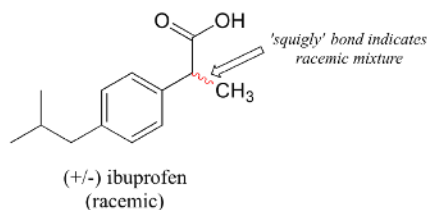
If a compound rotates plane polarized light in the clockwise (+) direction, it is said to be **dextrorotatory**, while if it rotates light in the counterclockwise (-) direction it is **levorotatory**. The magnitude of the observed optical activity is dependent on temperature, the wavelength of light used, solvent, concentration of the chiral sample, and the path length of the sample tube (path length is the length that the plane-polarized light travels through the chiral sample). Typically, optical activity measurements are made in a 1 decimeter (10 cm) path-length sample tube at 25 °C, using as a light source the so-called “D-line” from a sodium lamp, which has a wavelength of 589 nm. The **specific rotation** of a pure chiral compound at 25° is expressed by the expression:

$$[\alpha]_D^{25} = \frac{\alpha_{\text{obs}}}{lc}$$

where α_{obs} is the observed rotation, l is path length in decimeters, and c is the concentration of the sample in grams per 100 mL. In other words, the specific rotation of a chiral compound is the optical rotation that is observed when 1 g of the compound is dissolved in enough of a given solvent to make 100 mL solution, and the rotation is measured in a 1 dm cuvette at 25 °C using light from a sodium lamp.

Every chiral molecule has a characteristic specific rotation, which is recorded in the chemical literature as a physical property just like melting point or density. Different enantiomers of a compound will always rotate plane-polarized light with an equal but opposite magnitude. (S)-ibuprofen, for example, has a specific rotation of +54.5° (dextrorotatory) in methanol, while (R)-ibuprofen has a specific rotation of -54.5°. *There is no relationship between chiral compound's R/S designation and the direction of its specific rotation.* For example, the S enantiomer of ibuprofen is dextrorotatory, but the S enantiomer of glyceraldehyde is levorotatory.

A 50:50 mixture of two enantiomers (a racemic mixture) will have no observable optical activity, because the two optical activities cancel each other out. In a structural drawing, a 'squigly' bond from a chiral center indicates a mixture of both R and S configurations.



Chiral molecules are often labeled according to whether they are dextrorotatory or levorotatory as well as by their *R/S* designation. For example, the pure enantiomers of ibuprofen are labeled (*S*)-(+)-ibuprofen and (*R*)-(-)-ibuprofen, while (±)-ibuprofen refers to the racemic mixture, which is the form in which the drug is sold to consumers.

? Exercise 3.14

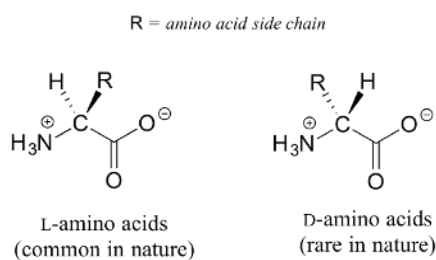
The specific rotation of (*R*)-limonene is +11.5° in ethanol. What is the expected observed rotation of a sample of 6.00 g (*S*)-limonene dissolved in ethanol to a total volume of 80.0 mL in a 1.00 dm (10.0 cm) pathlength cuvette?

Exercise 3.15

The specific rotation of (*S*)-carvone is +61°, measured 'neat' (pure liquid sample, no solvent). The optical rotation of a mixture of *R* and *S* carvone is measured at -23°. Which enantiomer is in excess in the mixture?

Solutions to exercises

All of the twenty natural amino acids except glycine have a chiral center at their alpha-carbon (recall that basic amino acid structure and terminology was introduced in section 1.3). Virtually all of the amino acids found in nature, both in the form of free amino acids or incorporated into peptides and proteins, have what is referred to in the biochemical literature as the 'L' configuration:



All but one of the 19 L-amino acids have *S* stereochemistry at the α-carbon, using the rules of the *R/S* naming system.

D-amino acids are very rare in nature, but we will learn about an interesting example of a peptide containing one D-amino acid residue later in chapter 12.

? Exercise 3.16

Which of the 20 common L-amino acids found in nature has the *R* configuration? Refer to the amino acid table for structures.

Solutions to exercises

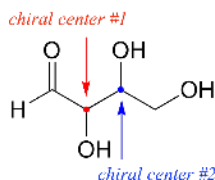
[Khan Academy video tutorial on optical activity](#)

This page titled [4.5: Optical Activity](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.6: Optical Activity** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

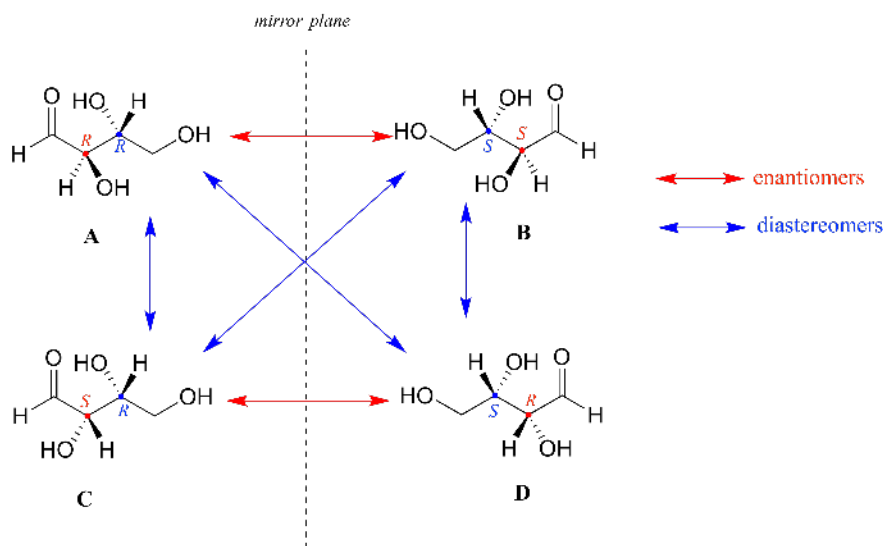
4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

So far, we have been analyzing compounds with a single chiral center. Next, we turn our attention to those which have multiple chiral centers. We'll start with some stereoisomeric four-carbon sugars with two chiral centers.



To avoid confusion, we will simply refer to the different stereoisomers by capital letters.

Look first at compound A below. Both chiral centers in have the *R* configuration (you should confirm this for yourself!). The mirror image of Compound A is compound B, which has the *S* configuration at both chiral centers. If we were to pick up compound A, flip it over and put it next to compound B, we would see that they are *not* superimposable (again, confirm this for yourself with your models!). A and B are nonsuperimposable mirror images: in other words, enantiomers.



Now, look at compound C, in which the configuration is *S* at chiral center 1 and *R* at chiral center 2. Compounds A and C are stereoisomers: they have the same molecular formula and the same bond connectivity, but a different arrangement of atoms in space (recall that this is the definition of the term 'stereoisomer'). However, they are *not* mirror images of each other (confirm this with your models!), and so they are *not* enantiomers. By definition, they are **diastereomers** of each other.

Notice that compounds C and B also have a diastereomeric relationship, by the same definition.

So, compounds A and B are a pair of enantiomers, and compound C is a diastereomer of both of them. Does compound C have its own enantiomer? Compound D is the mirror image of compound C, and the two are not superimposable. Therefore, C and D are a pair of enantiomers. Compound D is also a diastereomer of compounds A and B.

This can also seem very confusing at first, but there are some simple shortcuts to analyzing stereoisomers:

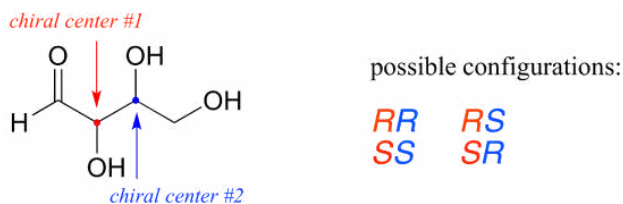
Stereoisomer shortcuts

If **all** of the chiral centers are of opposite R/S configuration between two stereoisomers, they are enantiomers.

If **at least one, but not all** of the chiral centers are opposite between two stereoisomers, they are diastereomers.

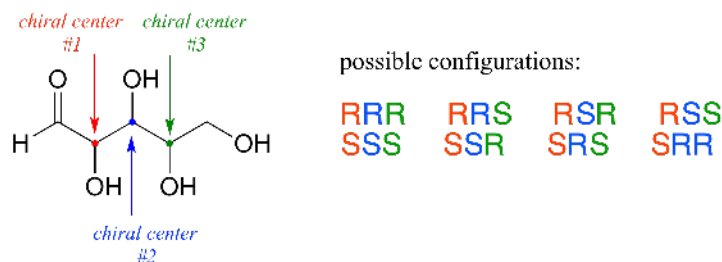
(Note: these shortcuts do not take into account the possibility of additional stereoisomers due to alkene groups: we will come to that later)

Here's another way of looking at the four stereoisomers, where one chiral center is associated with red and the other blue. Pairs of enantiomers are stacked together.

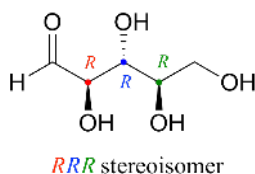


We know, using the shortcut above, that the enantiomer of *RR* must be *SS* - both chiral centers are different. We also know that *RS* and *SR* are diastereomers of *RR*, because in each case one - but not both - chiral centers are different.

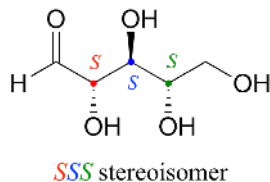
Now, let's extend our analysis to a sugar molecule with three chiral centers. Going through all the possible combinations, we come up with eight total stereoisomers - four pairs of enantiomers.



Let's draw the *RRR* stereoisomer. Being careful to draw the wedge bonds correctly so that they match the *RRR* configurations, we get:

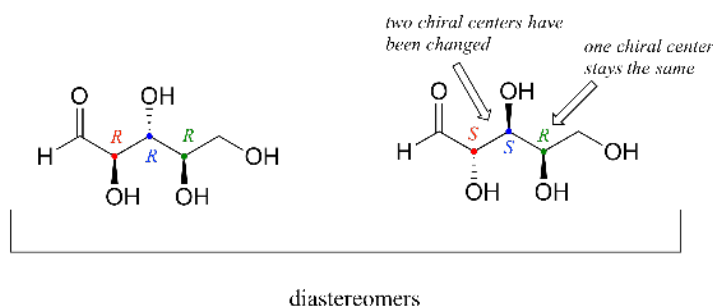


Now, using the above drawing as our model, drawing any other stereoisomer is easy. If we want to draw the enantiomer of *RRR*, we don't need to try to visualize the mirror image, we just start with the *RRR* structure and invert the configuration at *every* chiral center to get *SSS*.

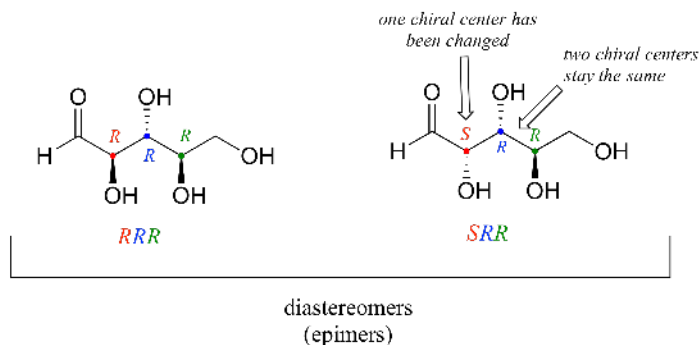


Try making models of *RRR* and *SSS* and confirm that they are in fact nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other.

There are six diastereomers of *RRR*. To draw one of them, we just invert the configuration of at least one, but not all three, of the chiral centers. Let's invert the configuration at chiral center 1 and 2, but leave chiral center 3 unchanged. This gives us the *SSR* configuration.



One more definition at this point: diastereomers which differ at only a single chiral center are called **epimers**. For example, RRR and SRR are epimers:



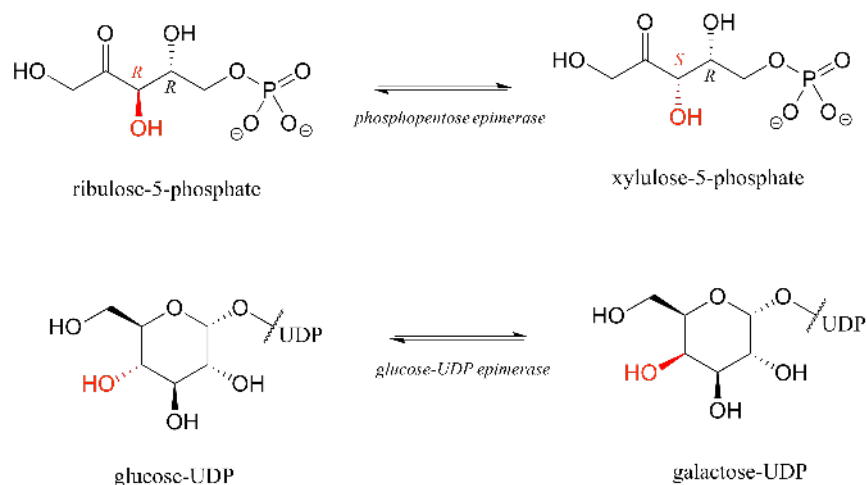
The RRR and SSR stereoisomers shown earlier are diastereomers but *not* epimers because they differ at *two* of the three chiral centers.

? Exercise 3.17

- Draw the structure of the *enantiomer* of the SRS stereoisomer of the sugar used in the previous example.
- List (using the XXX format, not drawing the structures) all of the epimers of SRS .
- List all of the stereoisomers that are diastereomers, but not epimers, of SRS .

Solutions to exercises

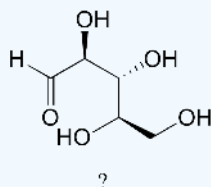
The epimer term is useful because in biochemical pathways, compounds with multiple chiral centers are isomerized at one specific center by enzymes known as **epimerases**. Two examples of epimerase-catalyzed reactions are below.



We know that enantiomers have identical physical properties and equal but opposite magnitude specific rotation. Diastereomers, in theory at least, have *different* physical properties – we stipulate ‘in theory’ because sometimes the physical properties of two or more diastereomers are so similar that it is very difficult to distinguish between them. In addition, the specific rotation values of diastereomers are unrelated – they could be the same sign or opposite signs, similar in magnitude or very dissimilar.

? Exercise 3.18

The sugar below is one of the stereoisomers that we have been discussing.



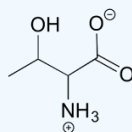
The only problem is, it is drawn with the carbon backbone in a different orientation from what we have seen. Determine the configuration at each chiral center to determine which stereoisomer it is.

Exercise 3.19

Draw the enantiomer of the xylulose-5-phosphate structure in the previous figure.

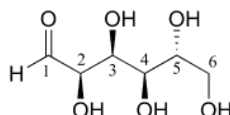
Exercise 3.20

The structure of the amino acid D-threonine, drawn without stereochemistry, is shown below. D-threonine has the (S) configuration at both of its chiral centers. Draw D-threonine, its enantiomer, and its two diastereomers.



Solutions to exercises

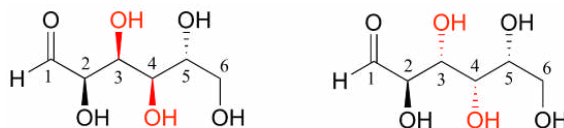
Here is some more practice in identifying isomeric relationships. D-glucose is the monosaccharide that serves as the entrance point for the glycolysis pathway and as a building block for the carbohydrate biopolymers starch and cellulose. The 'D' in D-glucose stands for *dextrarotatory* and is part of the specialized nomenclature system for sugars, which we will not concern ourselves with here. The open-chain structure of the sugar is shown below.



D-glucose

Because D-glucose has four chiral centers, it can exist in a total of $2^4 = 16$ different stereoisomeric forms: it has one enantiomer and 14 diastereomers.

Now, let's compare the structures of the two sugars D-glucose and D-gulose, and try to determine their relationship.



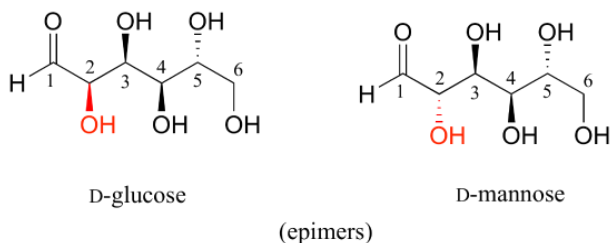
D-glucose

D-gulose

(diastereomers)

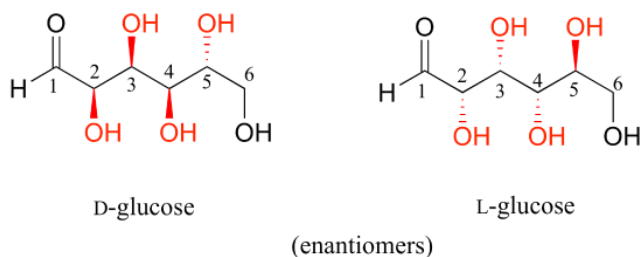
The two structures have the same molecular formula and the same connectivity, therefore they must be stereoisomers. They each have four chiral centers, and the configuration is different at two of these centers (at carbons #3 and #4). They are diastereomers.

Now, look at the structures of D-glucose and D-mannose.



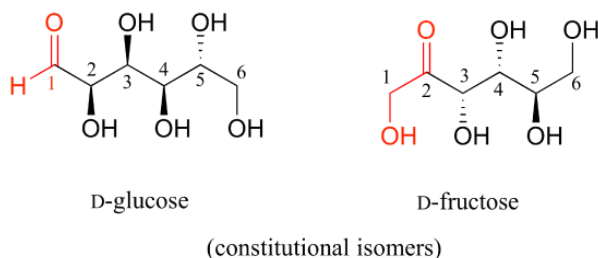
Here, everything is the same except for the configuration of the chiral center at carbon #2. The two sugars differ at only one of the four chiral centers, so again they are diastereomers, and more specifically they are epimers.

D-glucose and L-glucose are enantiomers, because they differ at all four chiral centers.

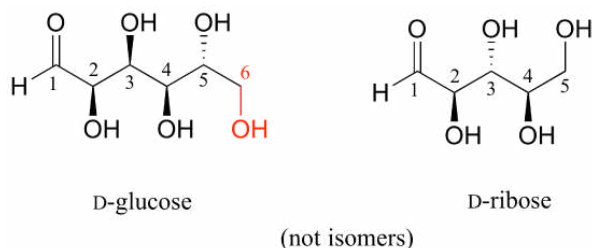


D-glucose is the enantiomer commonly found in nature.

D-glucose and D-fructose are not stereoisomers, because they have different bonding connectivity: glucose has an aldehyde group, while fructose has a ketone. The two sugars do, however, have the same molecular formula, so by definition they are constitutional isomers.

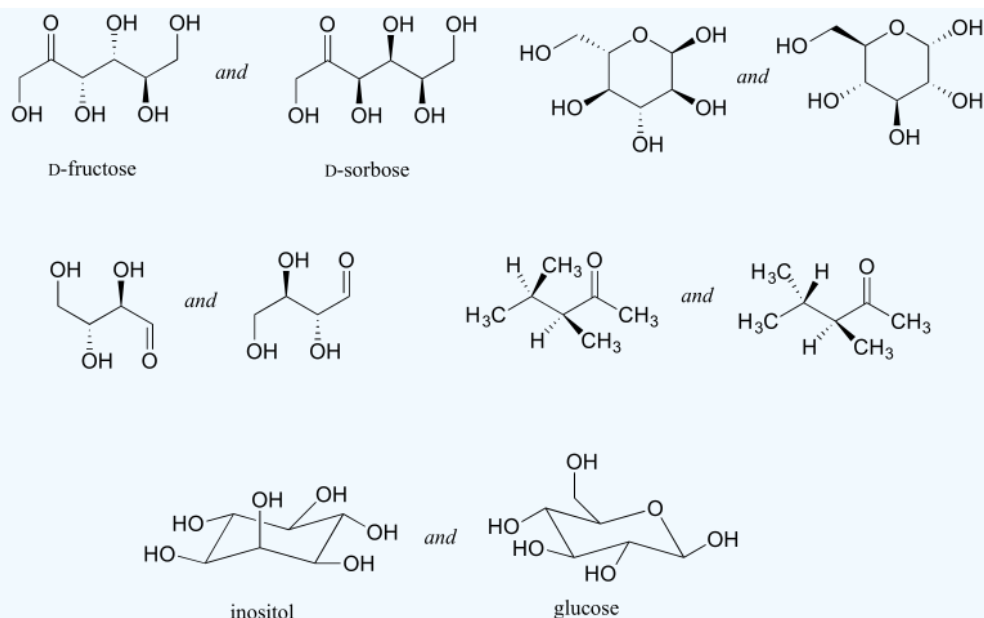


D-glucose and D-ribose are not isomers of any kind, because they have different molecular formulas.



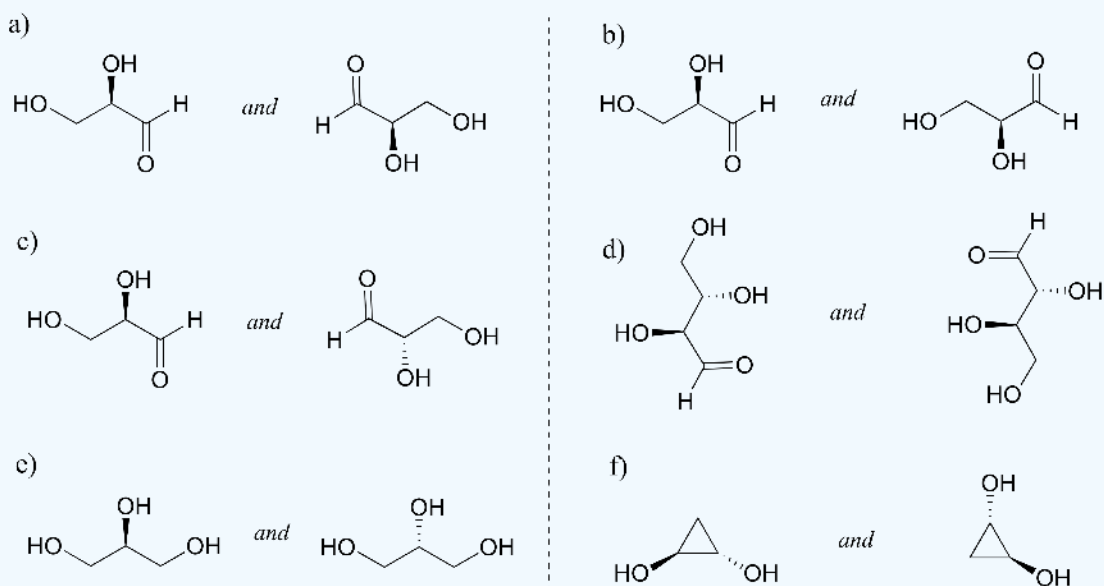
? Exercise 3.21

Identify the relationship between each pair of structures. Your choices are: not isomers, constitutional isomers, diastereomers but not epimers, epimers, enantiomers, or same molecule



Exercise 3.22

Identify the relationship between each pair of structures. *Hint* - figure out the configuration of each chiral center.



Solutions to exercises

[Khan Academy video tutorial on stereoisomeric relationships](#)

This page titled [4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [3.7: Compounds with multiple chiral centers](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Overview of Organic Reactivity

[5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity](#)

[5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism](#)

[5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics](#)

[5.3: Catalysis](#)

[5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions](#)

[5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Exercises\)](#)

[5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Summary\)](#)

This page titled [5: Overview of Organic Reactivity](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity

September 5, 1966, turned out to be a very good day for Hudson Freeze. An undergraduate microbiology major at Indiana University, he was a few weeks away from the first day of classes in his junior year, but on this September day he was far away from the oppressive heat and humidity of late summer in the midwest. Instead, he was working at the edge of Mushroom Spring in Yellowstone National Park, one of one of the many geothermal hot springs for which the park is so famous.



At the end of his sophomore year, Freeze had approached Dr. Thomas Brock, one of his microbiology professors, to ask about the possibility of working as a research assistant over the summer. Brock took him up on the offer, inviting him to come out to Yellowstone for a few weeks in late summer to help with some fieldwork.

For the past few years, Brock had been studying microbes that inhabited the hot springs: these 'extremophile' organisms were fascinating to him because they appeared to thrive in conditions that until quite recently had been thought to be too hot to support life. The currently accepted upper limit at which life was believed to be possible was 73 °C, but during his work in Yellowstone the previous summer Brock was convinced that he had observed microbial life – a pink colored, filamentous bacteria - in water as hot as 88 °C. Unfortunately, all of his attempts to culture these life forms in the lab had been unsuccessful. He had decided to focus his efforts this summer on Mushroom Spring, where the water was 73 °C, right at the supposed limit for life, and assigned Freeze the task of collecting microbial samples from the waters of the spring. On September 5, Freeze collected a promising-looking sample, which he took back to a makeshift lab in Brock's cabin to prepare for transport back to Indiana.

A few weeks later, working in his professor's lab in between classes and homework, Freeze was engaged in the challenge of figuring out how to get his microbes to grow outside their natural environment, so that he could isolated and eventually characterize them. The work was frustrating at first – attempting to get the bacterial to grow in a liquid medium, he never observed the characteristic turbidity that usually signals success. In some samples, however, he did observe the appearance of salt crystals on the bottom of the test tubes. He allowed these samples to incubate for a few more days, and noticed that more crystals had formed. Just to be thorough, he decided to look at some of the crystals under a microscope – and hit the jackpot. Clinging to the crystals themselves were the recognizable shapes of microbial cells.

In subsequent work with Thomas Brock, Freeze was able to improve his culturing techniques and characterize the new species of bacterium, which was later named *Thermus aquaticus*, or 'Taq' for short. He also was able to demonstrate that enzymes isolated from the bacterium remained intact and active even in boiling water.

Even though Yellowstone is a beautiful place to spend a few weeks in the summer doing field work, it turned out that making the trip to Wyoming was not really necessary – Thomas Brock later was able to isolate cultures of Taq from samples taken from the hot water system right there on the Indiana University campus, as well as from many other hot-water environments around the world.

Brock and Freeze went on to publish a paper in the [Journal of Bacteriology \(1969, 98, 289\)](#) describing their newly discovered species, and donated live cultures of Taq to the American Type Culture Collection, a biological repository in Washington D.C.

Years later, a scientist named Kary Mullis working at Cetus, a biotechnology firm in the San Francisco Bay area, purchased a culture of Taq - a direct descendent of the very culture that Hudson Freeze had taken from Mushroom Spring on September 5, 1966 - from the ATCC repository. Cetus paid \$35 for the sample. It turned out to be a pretty good investment.

Mullis and his colleagues at Cetus were intrigued by Freeze's report years earlier that enzymes isolated from Taq were stable at high temperatures, unlike enzymes isolated from *E. coli* and other common model organisms. They cultured their Taq sample, purified the DNA-copying enzyme DNA polymerase from the Taq cells, and using the heat-stable polymerase were able to come up with a remarkably efficient method for copying short stretches of DNA. Their '[polymerase chain reaction](#)', or PCR, went on to revolutionize the fields of molecular/cellular biology and biochemistry – read through the experimental section of any recent research paper in one of these fields and chances are you will see that the researchers used PCR. If you take a lab course in molecular biology, you will probably perform at least one PCR procedure. When your professor purchases the purified Taq polymerase enzyme and other reagents for your lab, part of the price will go towards paying royalty fees to the pharmaceutical giant Hoffmann-LaRoche: Kary Mullis and Cetus obtained a patent for their PCR process, and in 1992 sold patent rights to Hoffmann-LaRoche for \$300 million. Mullis was awarded the 1993 Nobel Prize in Chemistry for his work on PCR.

What makes the PCR technique so powerful is that it harnesses a biological catalyst - the DNA polymerase enzyme naturally produced by the Taq microbe - to vastly increase the rate of a very specific and very useful chemical reaction, under environmental conditions (high temperature) that until then had been fatal for other enzymes. Taq polymerase, the \$300 million molecule, is the most visible example (for now!) of how scientists might harness the power of biological catalysis to great advantage, but many researchers are hard at work, in Yellowstone and many other locations around the world, writing more chapters in the story that was begun by Hudson Freeze and Thomas Brock on a September day in 1966.

Up to this point, we have been focusing on the structure of organic molecules: essentially, how these molecule are put together. Now our focus shifts to the study of reactivity: what happens, in other words, when covalent bonds within a molecule break and new covalent bonds form, as molecule A is transformed into molecule B. The story of Taq and PCR is centered around a biochemical reaction - the polymerization of DNA starting with an existing DNA 'template'. We are about to begin our exploration of chemical reactivity: how a reaction is depicted on paper, whether it absorbs or releases energy, how fast it goes, and how a catalyst might be able to make it go much faster.

In your previous college general chemistry and high school chemistry courses (and perhaps in biology courses as well), you have no doubt seen many different examples of chemical reactions. Most likely, these reactions were depicted by chemical equations, showing the starting materials (reactants) and the finished products connected by a 'reaction arrow'. In most cases, the structures of reactants and products were not considered - they were defined only by molecular formula and perhaps by physical state (solid, liquid, gas, or solution). The reaction below, showing the decomposition of dinitrogen pentoxide (N_2O_5) to nitrogen dioxide and oxygen, is a typical example of the 'equation' treatment of chemical reactivity which you might have seen in your General Chemistry textbook.



This way of talking about chemical reactions is perfectly adequate in introductory chemistry classes, when fundamental chemical concepts like stoichiometry, thermodynamics, and kinetics are being explained for the first time. In organic chemistry, beginning with this chapter, we will go much further. We will certainly review the important fundamental concepts of thermodynamics and kinetics that you learned previously. But in our discussion of organic reactivity, we will bring our understanding of organic structure into the picture, and think about how reactions take place: which bonds break, which bonds form, why a particular bond breaks or forms, the order in which bond-breaking and bond-forming takes place, and the nature of any intermediate species that might form during the course of the reaction. We also will think about how catalysts - enzymes in particular - are able to increase the rate of a particular reaction. Taken together, a description of a chemical reaction at this level is called a reaction mechanism. Beginning here, and continuing throughout the rest of the text, our main job will be to understand the mechanisms of the most important types of reactions undergone by organic molecules in living organisms.

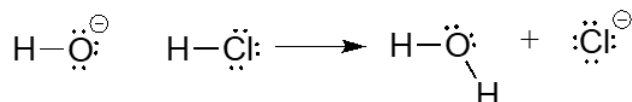
This page titled [5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.1: Prelude to Organic Reactivity** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism

An acid-base (proton transfer) reaction

We'll begin with a relatively simple type of reaction that you are no doubt familiar with from previous chemistry classes: an acid-base reaction. Note that in chapter 7, we will come back to consider acid-base reactivity in much greater detail. Here is the acid-base reaction between hydroxide ion and hydrochloric acid:



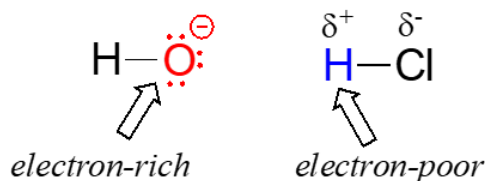
Note

A reaction such as the one above would of course include a spectator cation, such as sodium (**Na⁺**) or potassium (**K⁺**). In most of the reaction figures that we'll see throughout this book, the spectator ion is not shown in the interest of simplicity.

A proton is transferred from **HCl**, the acid, to hydroxide ion, the base. The product is water (the conjugate acid of hydroxide ion) and chloride ion (the conjugate base of **HCl**).

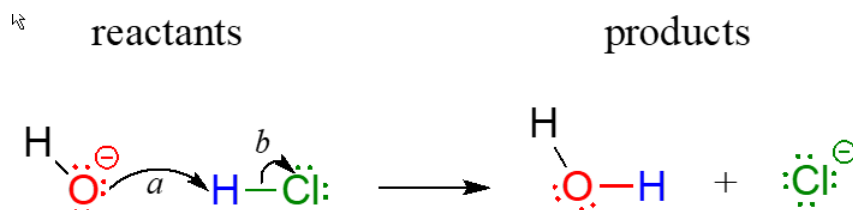
Despite its simplicity (and despite the fact that the reactants and products are inorganic rather than organic), this reaction allows us to consider for the first time many of the fundamental ideas of organic chemistry that we will be exploring in various contexts throughout this text.

One very important key to understanding just about any reaction mechanism is the concept of electron density, and how it is connected to the electron movement (bond-breaking and bond-forming) that occurs in a reaction. The hydroxide ion – specifically, the oxygen atom bearing the negative formal charge – has high electron density: it is electron-rich.



The hydrogen atom in **HCl**, on the other hand, has low electron density: it is electron-poor, because chlorine is more electronegative than hydrogen. As you might expect, an atom that is electron-rich is likely to be attracted to an atom that is electron-poor. As hydroxide and **HCl** move closer to each other, a new bond forms between oxygen and hydrogen, and the hydrogen-chlorine bond breaks. The end result is a water molecule and a chloride anion.

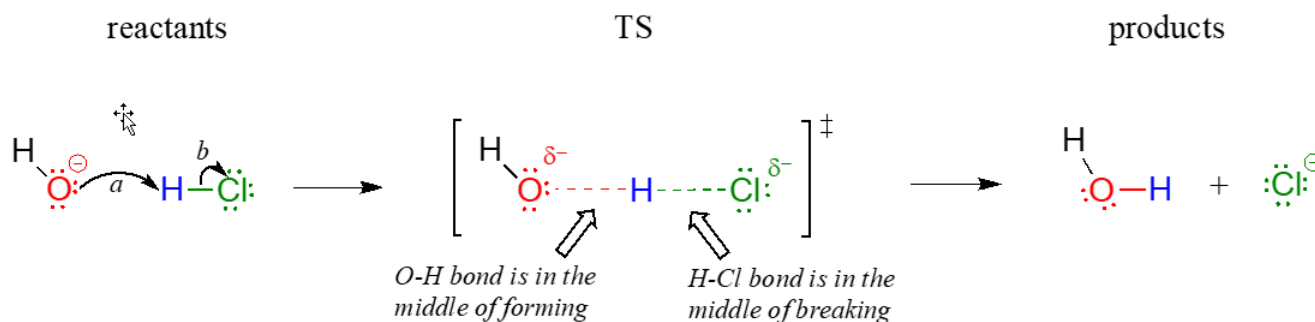
In organic chemistry terms, a reaction mechanism is a formalized description of how a reaction takes place - how we get, in other words, from reactants to products. Previously (section 2.3) , we saw how curved arrows were used to depict the 'imaginary' movement of two electrons when illustrating the conversion between two resonance contributors of the same molecule or ion (remember from that discussion that the conversion between two resonance contributors is not a reaction - it is merely an illustration of two different ways to draw the same molecule). The same curved arrow convention is used in mechanism drawings to show the electron movement that takes place in chemical reactions, where bonds are actually broken and formed. The mechanism for the **HCl + OH⁻** reaction, for example, can be depicted by drawing two curved arrows.



Arrow (a) in the mechanistic drawing originates at one of the lone pairs on the hydroxide oxygen and points to the 'H' symbol in hydrochloric acid, illustrating the 'attack' of the oxygen lone pair and subsequent formation of a new hydrogen-oxygen bond. Arrow (b) originates at the middle of hydrogen-chlorine bond and points to the 'Cl' symbol, indicating that this bond is breaking: the two electrons that make the bond are 'leaving' and becoming a lone pair on chloride ion. Always keep in mind that these curved arrows by definition depict the movement of two electrons. (When we study radical reactions in chapter 17, we will see how to depict the movement of a single electron.)

When two (or more) curved arrows are drawn in the same figure of a mechanism, the intended meaning is that the electron movements being shown are occurring simultaneously. For example, in the figure above, the electron movement illustrated by arrow (a) (O—H bond formation) is occurring at the same time as the H—Cl bond breaking illustrated by arrow (b).

The transition state (TS) of a chemical step is a point at which bonds are in the process of breaking and/or forming. (More specifically, we will see below when discussing energy diagrams that the transition state is the point of highest energy in the chemical step). Transition states are illustrated by drawing the forming/breaking bonds as dotted lines, and are enclosed by brackets with the 'double-dagger' symbol. For example, the transition state in the acid-base reaction between hydroxide and HCl can be illustrated as:



Notice in the drawing above that both the oxygen and the chlorine bear partial negative charges at the transition state: the formal charge on oxygen changes from -1 to 0 during the course of the reaction step, while the formal charge on chlorine changes from 0 to -1.

While it can sometimes be instructive to include a transition state drawing in an organic mechanism diagram, they are not 'obligatory' elements of such a diagram. When asked to draw a reaction mechanism in the exercises and problems in this book, you need not include TS drawings in your answer unless specifically directed to do so.

? Exercise 6.2.1

Draw electron movement arrows to illustrate mechanism of the acid-base reaction between acetic acid, $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H}$, and ammonia, NH_3 . Draw out the Lewis structures of reactants and products, including all lone pairs and formal charges. Include a transition state drawing in your mechanism.

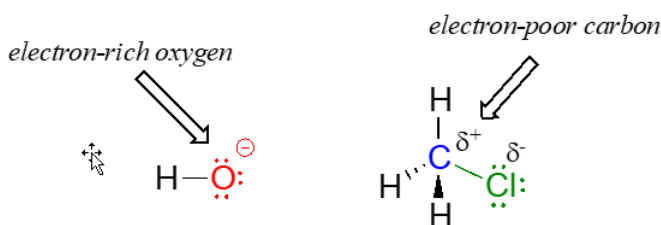
? Exercise 6.2.2

Draw electron movement arrows to illustrate the mechanism of the reverse of the reaction in Exercise 6.2.1 : the acid-base reaction between acetate ion (CH_3CO_2^- , acting as a base) and ammonium (NH_4^+), acting as an acid). Again, draw out the Lewis structures of reactants and products, including all lone pairs and formal charges.

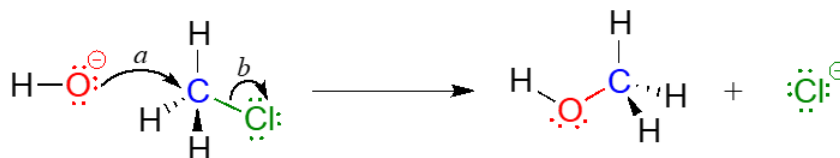
A one-step nucleophilic substitution reaction

The reaction between hydroxide and HCl is a simple example of a Brønsted acid-base (proton transfer) reaction. We now continue our introduction to the essential ideas of organic reactivity with a different type of reaction in which bonds to a carbon atom are rearranged. Consider what might happen if a hydroxide ion encountered a chloromethane molecule. The hydroxide is an electron-rich species, and thus might be expected to act as a base and 'attack' a hydrogen as it did in the previous example with hydrochloric

acid. In this case, though, the three hydrogens on chloromethane are not electron-poor, as they are bound not to chlorine but to carbon, which is not very electronegative. However, there is a relatively electron-poor atom in chloromethane: the carbon itself.



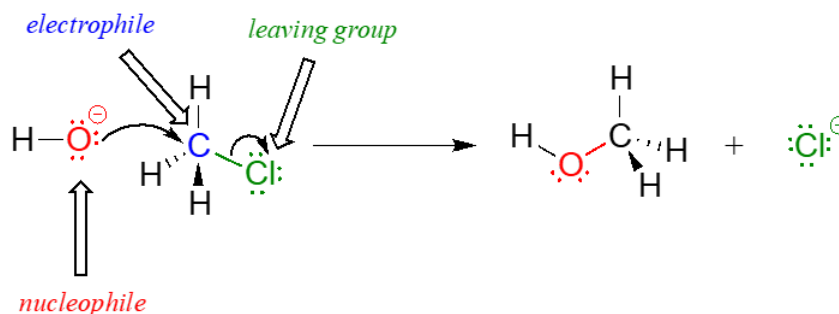
Due to the relative electronegativity of chlorine, the carbon-chlorine bond is polar. It stands to reason that a lone pair of electrons on the electron-rich hydroxide oxygen will be attracted to the electron-poor carbon nucleus.



In the mechanism drawing above, curved arrow (a) shows the lone pair electrons on the hydroxide oxygen moving to fill up an sp^3 orbital on chloromethane, forming a new carbon-oxygen σ bond. However, in order for this new bond to form, one of the bonds already on the carbon must simultaneously break - otherwise, there will be five bonds to carbon and the octet rule will be violated (remember that the 'octet rule' tells us that elements in the second row of the periodic table can have a maximum of eight valence electrons). Curved arrow (b) illustrates how the two electrons in the carbon-chlorine bond break out of their σ bond and become a lone pair on the chloride ion product. In other words, arrow (b) illustrates the breaking of the carbon-chlorine bond. (We will see a transition state drawing for this reaction in chapter 8, when we study this type of reaction mechanism in much greater detail).

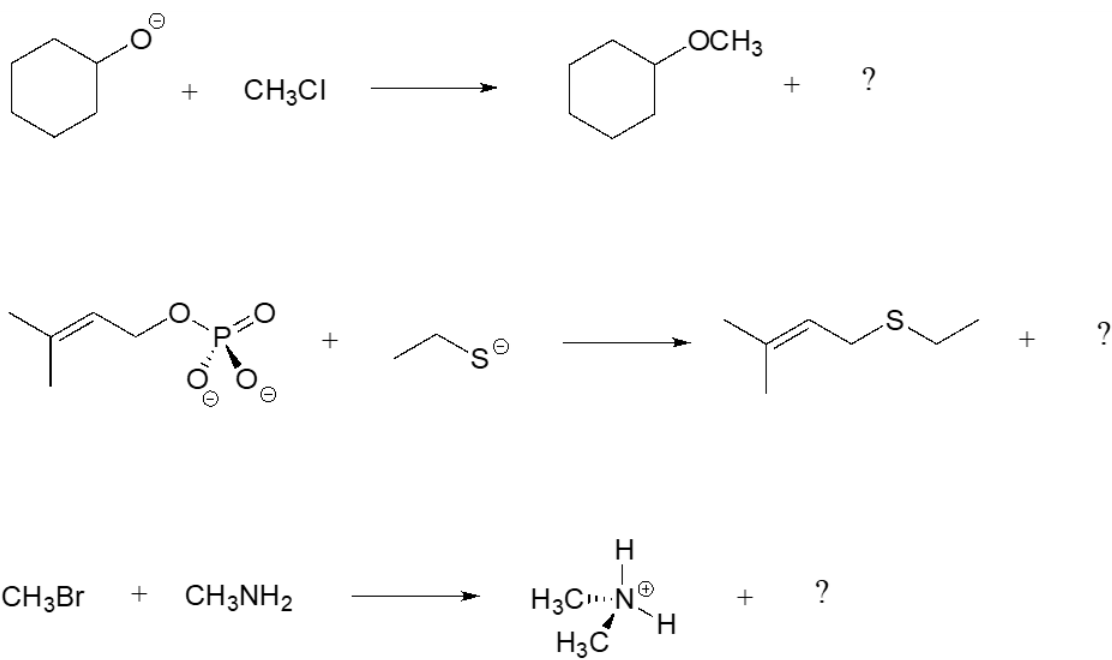
The reaction mechanism illustrated above called a nucleophilic substitution. The 'substitution' term is easy to understand: just recognize how hydroxide substitutes for chlorine as the fourth bond to the central carbon. The term 'nucleophilic' means 'nucleus-loving' and refers to the electron-rich species, the hydroxide oxygen. This oxygen is a nucleophile: it is electron-rich and attracted to the electron-poor nucleus of the carbon atom, and 'attacks' with a lone pair to form a new covalent bond.

There are two more terms that come into play here, both of which you will see again and again as you continue to study organic reactions. Because the carbon atom in methyl chloride is electron-poor, it is attracted to anything that is electron rich - anything nucleophilic, in other words. Thus, the carbon is referred to in this context as an electrophile. The chlorine, because it leaves with two electrons to become a chloride ion, is termed a leaving group.



? Exercise 6.2.3

In each of the nucleophilic substitution reactions below, identify the nucleophile, electrophile, and leaving group, and fill in the missing product.



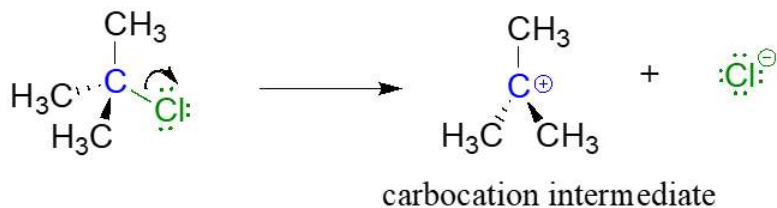
A Two-step Nucleophilic Substitution Mechanism

Reaction mechanisms describe not only the electron movement that occurs in a chemical reaction, but also the order in which bond-breaking and bond-forming events occur. Some nucleophilic substitution reactions, for example, can occur by a two-step mechanism that is different from the one-step mechanism we just saw between hydroxide ion and chloromethane. Look, for example, at the substitution reaction between acetate ion and 2-chloro-2-methyl propane (common name tert-butyl chloride).

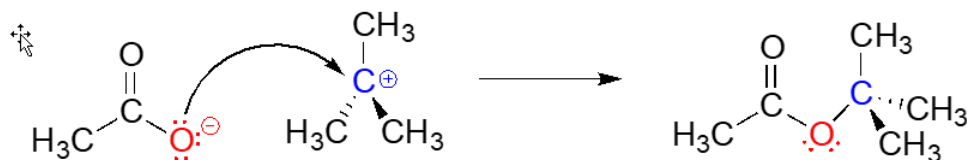


Unlike the chloromethane plus hydroxide reaction, in which the substitution process took place in a single, concerted step, it turns out that this mechanism involves two separate steps. The leaving group, chloride anion, leaves first, *before* the acetate nucleophile attacks.

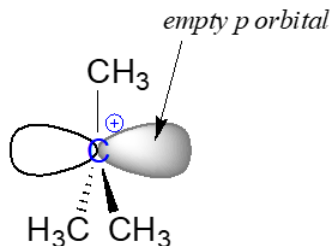
Step 1: Loss of leaving group (slow)



Step 2: Nucleophilic Attack (fast)



Because the central carbon (colored blue in the figure above) has lost its share of the two electrons in what was the carbon-chlorine bond, it is now positively charged. Recall from section 2.1 that we can picture a carbocation as a planar, sp^2 -hybridized carbon center with three bonds, an empty p orbital, and a full positive charge.



The carbocation is highly reactive, and does not exist for very long before participating in a subsequent bond-forming event. In the language of organic mechanisms, it is referred to as a **reaction intermediate**.

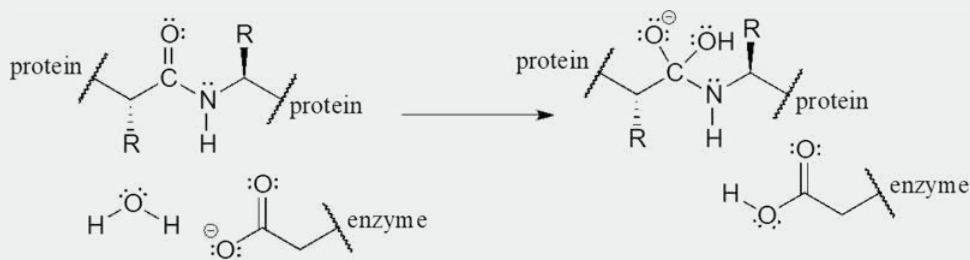
With its empty p orbital, the carbocation intermediate is clearly electron-poor, and thus is a powerful electrophile. The negatively charged acetate ion is electron dense and a nucleophile, and as such is strongly attracted to the carbocation electrophile. Attack by the nucleophile results in a new carbon-oxygen σ bond and formation of the substitution product.

We will have much more to say about nucleophilic substitutions, nucleophiles, electrophiles, and leaving groups in chapter 8. The take home message at this point, however, is simply that two reactions that look quite similar in terms of the reactants and products can occur by different mechanisms.

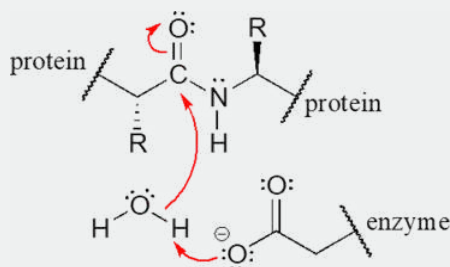
Curved Arrows

You can probably appreciate by now how essential it is to understand and be able to work with curved arrows - it is something that will use constantly during the remainder of your study of organic reactivity.

For example, although you are not yet familiar with the relevant reaction mechanism (it is the HIV protease reaction, covered in chapter 11), given reactant and intermediate structures:



with practice you should at this point be able to recognize the bond-forming and bond-breaking electron movement that is taking place, and draw the appropriate curved arrows:



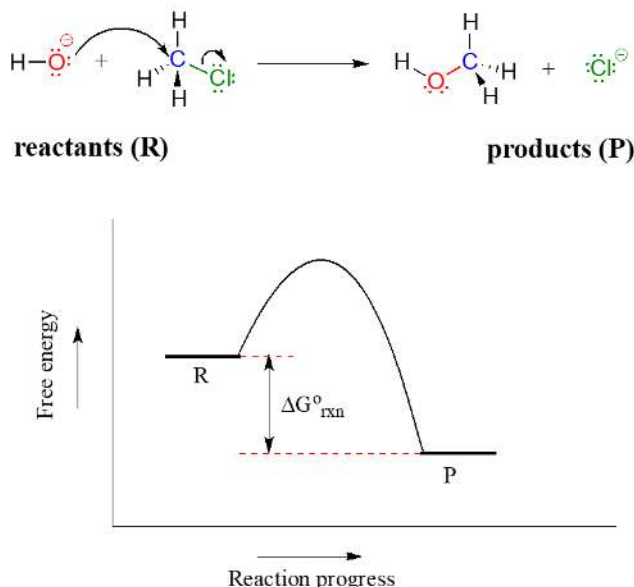
An additional word of caution: many beginning organic students make the mistake of using curved arrows to depict the motion of atoms. This is incorrect! The curved arrows in an organic mechanism always refer to the motion of electrons.

This page titled [5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [6.2: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

You may recall from general chemistry that it is often convenient to illustrate the energetics of a chemical reaction with a reaction coordinate diagram. In a reaction coordinate diagram, the vertical axis represents the overall potential energy of the reactants, while the horizontal axis is the 'reaction coordinate', tracing from left to right the progress of the reaction from starting reactants R to final products P. (Many students find it helpful to envision the horizontal axis in an reaction coordinate diagram as being analogous to the progress bar at the bottom of a youtube video). The diagram for a typical one-step nucleophilic substitution reaction such as that between hydroxide and methyl chloride might look like this:



Despite its apparent simplicity, this diagram conveys some very important ideas about the thermodynamics and kinetics of the reaction. Recall that when we talk about the thermodynamics of a reaction, we are concerned primarily with the difference in energy between reactants (R) and products (P): whether the reaction as a whole is uphill or downhill. When we talk about kinetics, on the other hand, we are concerned with the rate of the reaction: how fast it goes from reactants to products, regardless of whether that transformation is energetically uphill or downhill.

Thermodynamics

First, a quick review of some key thermodynamics terms. Recall that the standard Gibbs free-energy change of a reaction (ΔG°) is the difference in energy between reactants and products at standard conditions. Gibbs free-energy change is a combination of enthalpy change (ΔH°) and entropy change (ΔS°):

$$\Delta G = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ \quad (5.2.1)$$

where

- T is the temperature in Kelvin (recall that the Kelvin temperature is simply the Celsius temperature plus 273.15).
- Enthalpy change (ΔH°) is the heat released or absorbed by the reaction.
- Entropy change (ΔS°) is the change in disorder from reactants to products. In a reaction in which one molecule cleaves into two smaller molecules, for example, disorder increases, so ΔS° is positive.

The equilibrium constant (K_{eq}) for a reaction is an expression of the relative concentrations of reactants and products after the reaction has reached equilibrium. The equilibrium constant is defined as:

this means that w molecules of compound A
react with x molecules of compound B)



$$K_{eq} = \frac{[products]}{[reactants]} = \frac{[C]^y [D]^z}{[A]^w [B]^x}$$

Now, let's review what the above energy diagram tells us about the thermodynamics of the reaction. Note that the energy level of the products is lower than that of the reactants. This tells us that the Gibbs free-energy change for the reaction is negative, and the step is exergonic, or energy releasing. We can also say the reaction is 'thermodynamically favorable', or, more informally, 'downhill'.

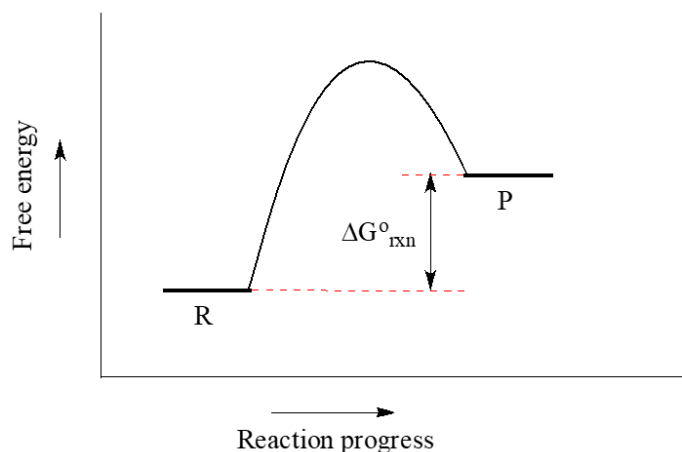
Recall from General Chemistry that the standard Gibbs free energy change for a reaction can be related to the reaction's equilibrium constant (K_{eq}) by the equation:

$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K_{eq} \quad (5.2.2)$$

where R is the gas constant (8.314 J/mol×K) and T is the temperature in Kelvin (K).

If you do the math, you see that a negative value for ΔG_{rxn}° (an exergonic reaction) corresponds to K_{eq} being greater than 1, an equilibrium constant which favors product formation.

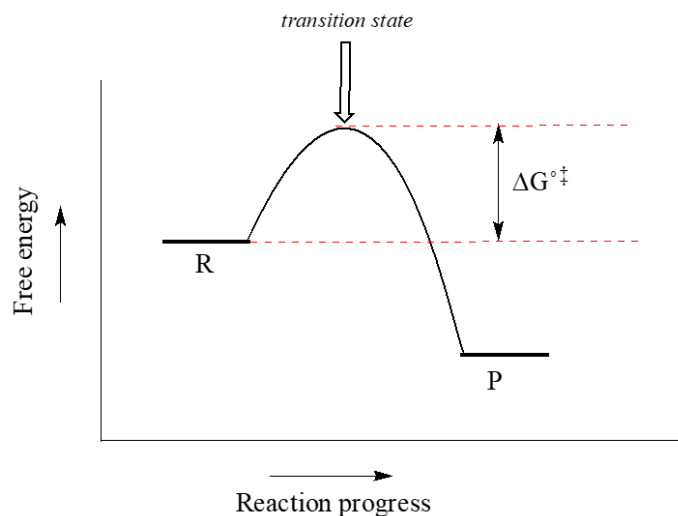
Conversely, an endergonic reaction is one in which the products are higher in energy than the reactants, and energy is absorbed. An endergonic reaction has a positive value of ΔG_{rxn}° , and a K_{eq} between 0 and 1.



Acid-base reactions provide convenient examples of thermodynamically favorable and unfavorable reactions. The reaction of a strong acid like **HCl** with a strong base like hydroxide ion, for example, is highly favorable, and has an equilibrium constant much greater than one. The reaction of a weak acid such as acetic acid with a weak base such as water, on the other hand, is unfavorable and has an equilibrium constant that is a very small (much less than 1) positive number: we can visualize this in a reaction coordinate diagram as an 'uphill' reaction, in which ΔG_{rxn}° is positive.

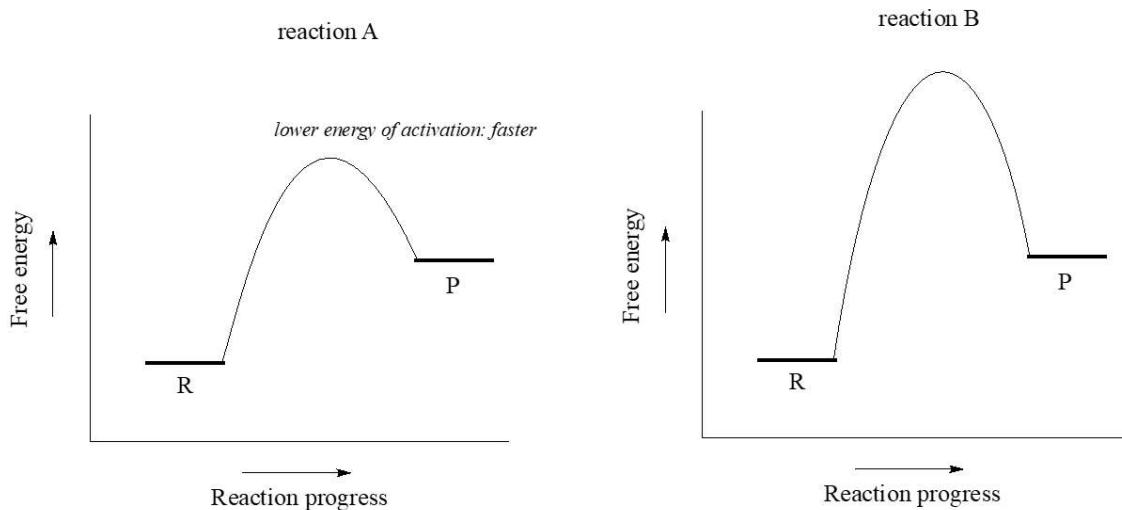
When talking about exergonic, or 'downhill' reactions, chemists sometimes use the term 'driving force' to describe the chemical factor or factors that drive the reaction from higher energy reactant to lower energy product. Using the 'downhill' analogy again, when water flows downhill, the driving force is gravity. In an exergonic chemical reaction, the driving force generally is based on a combination of two factors: a) the stability of positive and negative charges in the product relative to those in the reactant, and b) the total bond energy in the product relative to the reactant. That may not make a lot of sense right now, but keep it in the back of your mind and we will come back to the idea of driving force when we study different reaction types in greater detail.

Now, let's move to kinetics. Look again at the diagram for an exergonic reaction: although it is 'downhill' overall, it isn't a straight downhill run.



First, an 'energy barrier' must be overcome to get to the product side. The height of this energy barrier is called the standard free energy of activation ($\Delta G^\ddagger$). The activation energy, in combination with the temperature at which the reaction is being run, determines the rate of a reaction: the higher the activation energy, the slower the reaction. At the very top of the energy barrier, the reaction is at its transition state (TS), which you should recall is defined as the highest energy structure in the transition from reactant to product.

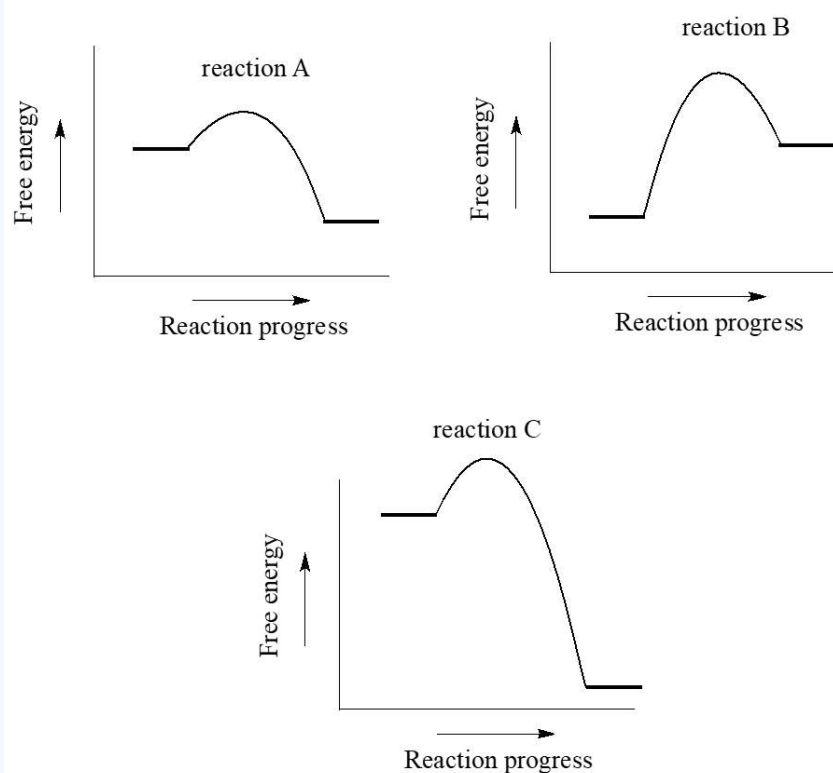
Consider the hypothetical reaction coordinate diagrams below.



Both reaction A and reaction B are slightly endergonic, or uphill: $\Delta G^\circ_{\text{rxn}}$ for both is positive, meaning that K_{eq} for both is between 0 and 1. However, the energy of activation is higher for reaction B. From this observation, we know that reaction A will proceed faster than reaction B in both forward and reverse directions (temperature and other conditions being equal), so reaction A will reach equilibrium in less time.

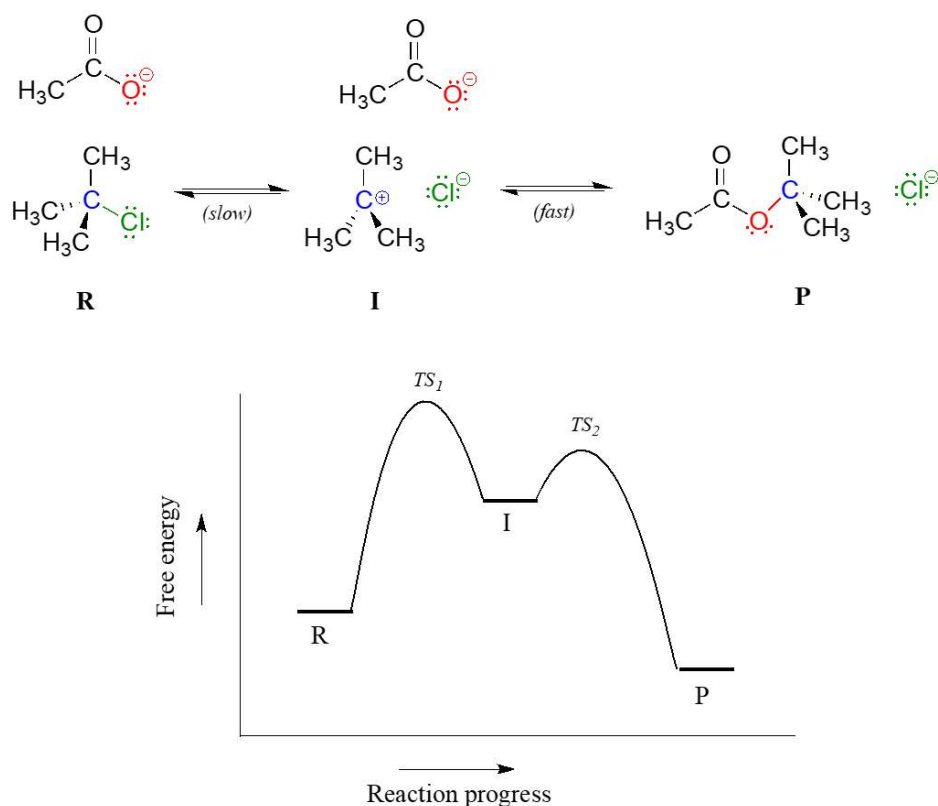
? Exercise 6.3.1

Consider the hypothetical reaction coordinate diagrams below, and assume that they are on the same scale.



- Which of the diagrams describe(s) a reaction with $K_{eq} < 1$?
- Which of the diagrams describes the fastest reaction?
- Which of the diagrams describes the reaction with the highest value of K_{eq} ?
- Which of the diagrams describes the reaction with the largest ΔG_{rxn}° for the reverse reaction?
- Copy the diagram for your answer to part (d), and add a label which graphically illustrates the value of ΔG_{rxn}° for the reaction in the reverse direction.

We turn our attention next to a two-step reaction mechanism, such as the nucleophilic substitution reaction between acetate and tert-butyl chloride. The reaction coordinate diagram for this reaction looks somewhat different from what we have seen until now:



Because there are two steps involved, there are also two transition states and two activation energies to consider, as well as a carbocation intermediate (denoted by the letter I). The first, bond-breaking step from R to I, passing over transition state TS_1 , can be depicted as a highly endergonic (uphill) reaction, because the carbocation-chloride ion pair is significantly higher in energy than the reactants. The second step, attack on the carbocation electrophile by the acetate nucleophile and formation of the new carbon-oxygen bond, is a highly exergonic step that passes over a second, lower energy transition state TS_2 . The intermediate (I) is thus depicted as an energy 'valley' (a local energy minimum) situated between the two energy peaks TS_1 and TS_2 .

Notice that the activation energy for the first step is higher than the activation energy for the second, meaning that the first step is slower. This should make intuitive sense, because the first step involves bond-breaking, separation of charge, and formation of a carbocation, which is high in energy due to lacking a complete octet. Conversely, the second step involves bond-forming and neutralization of charge. In a multi-step reaction, the slowest step - the step with the highest energy of activation - is referred to as the rate-determining step (rds). The rds can be thought of as the 'bottleneck' of the reaction: a factor which affects the rds will affect the overall rate of the reaction. Conversely, a factor which affects a much faster step will not significantly affect the rate of the overall reaction.

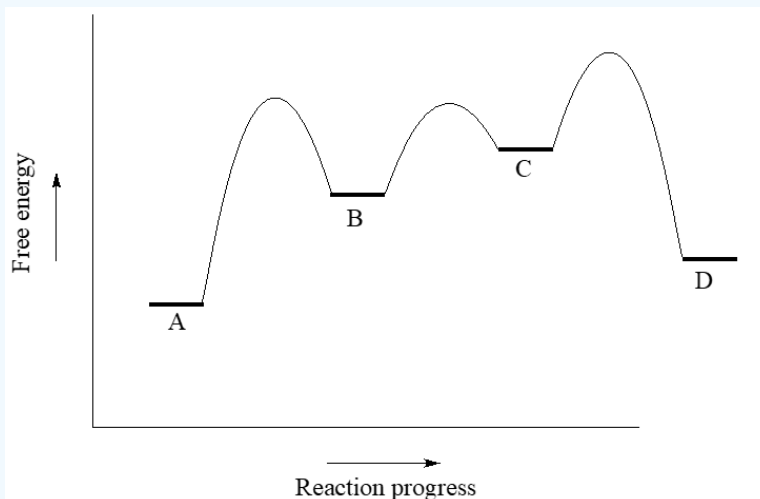
? Exercise 6.3.2

Imagine that you are trying to extinguish a burning campfire using buckets of water filled from a faucet some distance from the fire. It takes 20 seconds to fill a bucket at the faucet, and two seconds to carry the bucket to the fire and dump it on the flames. You have plenty of people to carry the buckets, but only one faucet so you can only fill one bucket at a time.

- If you double the speed at which you carry the buckets by running instead of walking, what effect will this have on how fast you get water to the fire?
- If, instead, you realize you can double the speed at which you fill up the buckets by using a second faucet, what effect will this have on how fast you get water to the fire?
- What is the rate-determining step for the process?

? Exercise 6.3.3

Use the reaction coordinate diagram below to answer the questions.



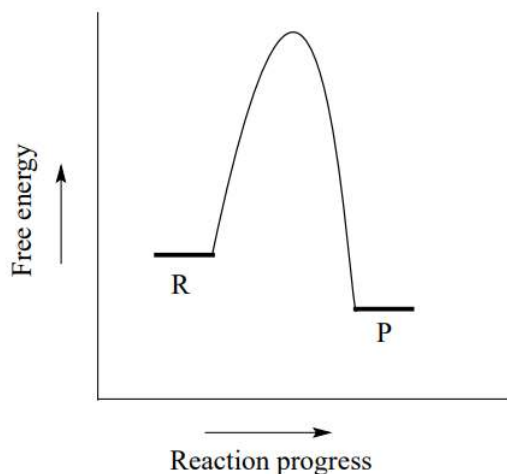
- Is the overall reaction endergonic or exergonic in the forward (A to D) direction?
- How many steps does the reaction mechanism have?
- How many intermediates does the reaction mechanism have?
- Redraw the diagram and add a label showing the activation energy for the rate-determining step of the forward reaction.
- Add a label showing $\Delta G_{\text{rxn}}^\circ$ for the reverse reaction (D to A).
- What is the fastest reaction step, considering both the forward and reverse directions?

This page titled [5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [6.3: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

5.3: Catalysis

Consider a hypothetical reaction $R \rightarrow P$ described by the diagram below.



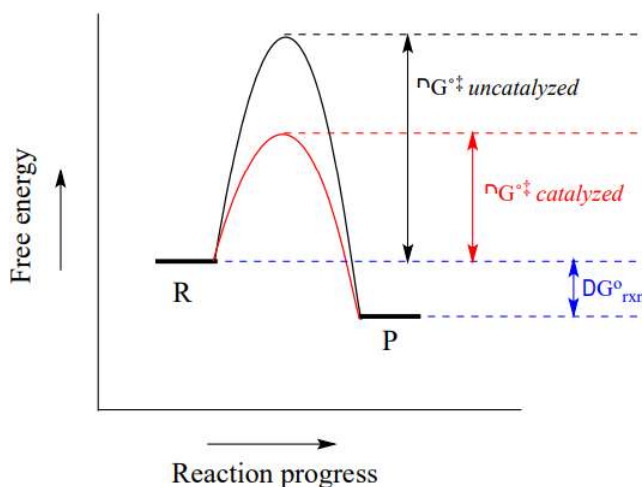
We notice two things about this reaction: it is exergonic, and it has a high activation energy. What this means is that although it is thermodynamically favorable, it is also slow: in other words, equilibrium favors product over reactants, but it will take a long time to reach equilibrium.

There are three ways that we could increase the rate of the reaction. First, we could add energy to the system by increasing the temperature, which gives the reacting molecules more energy to pass over the transition state. Increasing the temperature will increase the value of the rate constant k in the rate expression:

$$\text{rate} = k[R] \quad (5.3.1)$$

In the laboratory, many organic reactions are run at high temperatures for this very purpose. We could also increase the concentration of the reaction R , which would increase the rate of the reaction without increasing the value of k .

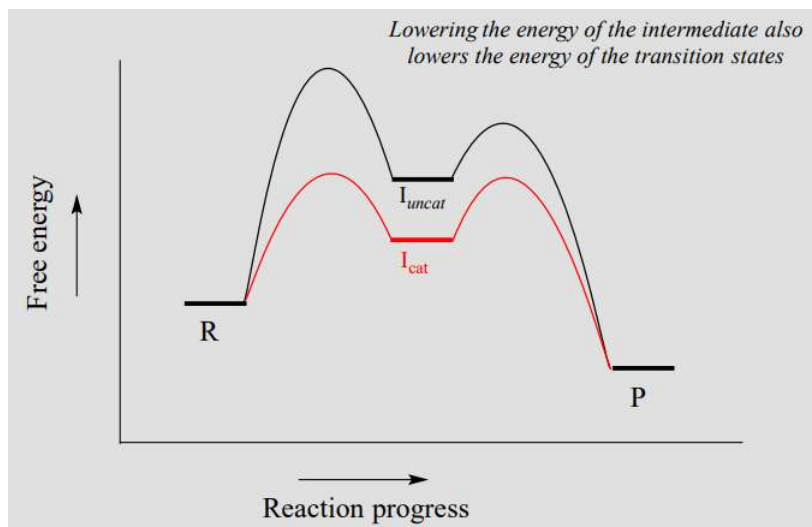
When talking about the biochemical reactions happening in a living cell, however, increasing the reaction temperature or reactant concentration is not a reasonable option. As an alternative, we could provide a new route from point R to point P in which the activation energy is lower. The role of a catalyst is to accelerate a reaction by stabilizing the transition state, and thus lowering the activation energy.



Catalysts, while they participate in the mechanism, are not consumed, so one catalyst molecule can catalyze multiple reaction cycles. Notice also that while the catalyst lowers the energy of the transition state (and thus the activation energy), it has no effect

on ΔG_{rxn} . A catalyst increases the rate of a reaction, but does not get consumed in the reaction and does not alter the equilibrium constant. In other words, a catalyst affects the kinetics of a reaction, but not the thermodynamics. Catalysts play a hugely important role in biochemical reactions.

Most organic reactions involve more than a single mechanistic step. Below is a reaction coordinate diagram illustrating rate acceleration of a two-step reaction by a catalyst:



Notice that the catalyst lowers the energy of the intermediate species. A concept known as the Hammond Postulate (the details of which are beyond our scope here) tells us that when a catalyst lowers the energy of an intermediate, it also lowers the energy of the adjacent transition states. Note in this diagram above that the energy barrier for the rate-determining first step is much lower in the catalyzed reaction - thus, the overall reaction is faster. When studying how an enzyme catalyzes a biochemical reaction, chemists often are actually looking at how the enzyme interacts with - and stabilizes - an intermediate species following a rate-determining step. The Hammond postulate tells us that an understanding of enzyme-intermediate interactions will also apply to enzyme-transition state interactions.

Acids and bases are commonly used as catalysts in organic chemistry, and chemists have come up with a huge arsenal of catalysts, many of them metals, to speed up the rates of useful laboratory reactions. Almost all biochemical reactions are catalyzed by enzymes, which are protein catalysts. In the introduction to this chapter, we heard the story of the discovery of a heat-stable DNA polymerizing enzyme which turned out to be very useful to the scientific world.

How do enzymes accomplish their role as biochemical catalysts? Recall from section 1.3 that enzymes have an active site pocket in which substrates (reactant molecules) are bound. It is inside these active site pockets that most biochemical reactions take place. Enzymes achieve catalysis in the active site by some combination of the following:

1. By positioning two reacting molecules close to each other in the active site, in precisely the orientation necessary for them to react. Compare this to an uncatalyzed reaction in which completion depends on the two reactant molecules happening to collide, by chance, in the correct orientation.
2. By binding substrates in such a way that they assume the proper conformation necessary for a reaction to occur.
3. By increasing the reactivity of the substrates: making acidic protons more acidic, nucleophiles more nucleophilic, electrophiles more electrophilic, and leaving groups better at leaving. Very often, these feats are accomplished with acidic and/or basic amino acid side chains lining the active site pocket. As we go on to study many different types of biochemical reactions, we get a better of how this works.
4. By stabilizing the transition states of the slower, rate-determining steps of the reaction. If a transition state has a negative charge, for example, the enzyme might provide a positively charged amino acid side chain, or a bound metal cation such as Zn^{+2} , as a stabilizing factor. A lower-energy transition state, of course, means a lower activation energy and a faster reaction step.

5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions

The focus of this book is on organic chemistry in a biological context. At various points in our investigation of organic reactivity, however, we will also be considering some non-biological, laboratory counterparts of reactions that occur in living cells. The reason for this is two-fold: first of all, it is often instructive to compare and contrast similar reactions taking place in very different environments, and sometimes the similarities are quite striking. Secondly, even those who intend to pursue a career in the life or health sciences can benefit from some exposure to the kind of challenges that professional organic or medicinal chemists work on: if you are working as a biologist for a pharmaceutical company for example, you will be better able to appreciate the contributions of your chemist colleagues if you are able to make the intellectual connection between the reactions they are running in flasks and the those that are taking place in the cells you are studying.

Below we briefly outline the differences between laboratory and biological reactions:

- **Catalysts:** The vast majority of biological organic reactions are catalyzed by enzymes. While chemists synthesizing molecules in the laboratory sometimes make use of enzyme-catalyzed reactions, it is much more common to use non-biological catalysts (often containing transition metals), acids or bases as catalysts, or no catalyst at all.
- **Solvent:** Biological organic reactions occur in the aqueous environment of the cell. In the laboratory, organic reactions can be run in a wide variety of solvents, ranging from the very nonpolar (such as hexane) to the very polar, such as methanol, water, or even ionic liquids. Most commonly, though, laboratory reactions are run in relatively non-polar solvents such as diethyl ether or dichloromethane.
- **Reactant mixture:** The aqueous environment of a cell is an extremely complex mixture of thousands of different biomolecules in solution at low concentrations (usually nanomolar to millimolar), whereas the components of a laboratory reaction have usually been purified, and are present in much higher concentrations.
- **Temperature:** Biological reactions take place within a narrow temperature range specific to the organism: a little too cold and the enzymes catalyzing the reactions are 'frozen', a little too hot and the enzymes will come unfolded, or 'denature'. Laboratory reactions can be run at a variety of temperatures, sometimes at room temperature, sometimes at the boiling point of the solvent, and sometimes at very low temperatures (such as when a reaction flask is immersed in a dry ice-acetone bath).
- **pH:** Biological reactions take place in aqueous solution buffered to a specific pH: about pH 7 for most living things. Accordingly, highly acidic or basic species are unlikely to be reactants or intermediates in a biological reaction mechanism. Laboratory reactions are often carried out in the presence of strong acids or bases.

This page titled [5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **6.5: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

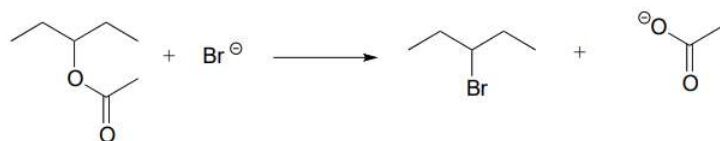
5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Exercises)

P6.1: For each of the nucleophilic substitution reactions below, identify the atoms which are acting as nucleophile, electrophile, and leaving group, and draw a curved-arrow diagram showing a one-step mechanism.

a.



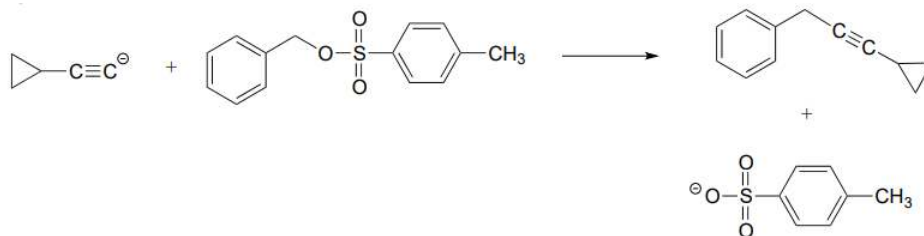
b.



c.

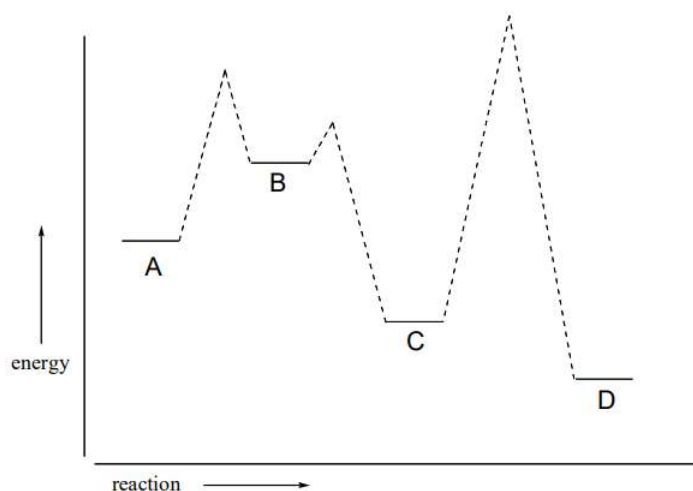


d.

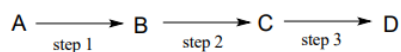


P6.2: Below is a reaction coordinate diagram for a hypothetical reaction.

- What can you say about the value of K_{eq} for the overall A to D transformation?
- What is the rate determining step for the overall A to D transformation?
- Which step is faster, A to B or B to C?
- Which transformation is more thermodynamically favorable, A to B or C to D?

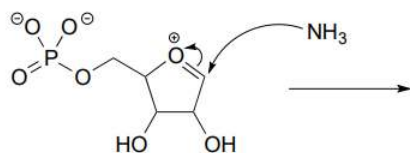


- Below is a diagram of a hypothetical reaction. Step 2 is the rate-determining step, C is the least stable species, B is higher energy than D, and the overall reaction has an equilibrium constant $K_{eq} = 0.33$. Draw a diagram that corresponds to all of this information.

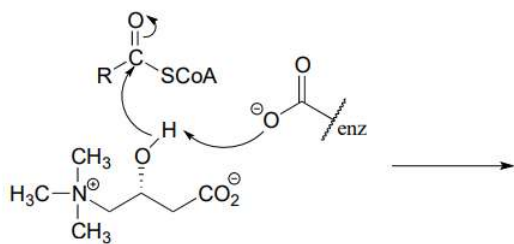


P6.3: Illustrated below are individual steps in some biochemical reaction mechanisms that we will be studying later. For each step, draw the products or intermediate species that would form according to the electron-movement arrows given. Be sure to include all formal charges. You do not need to show stereochemistry.

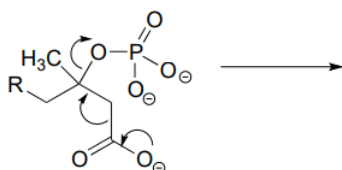
a.



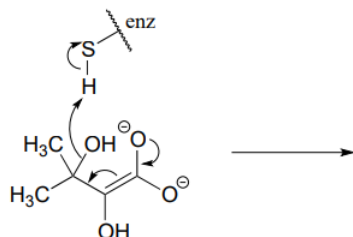
b.



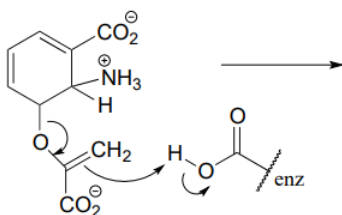
c.



d.

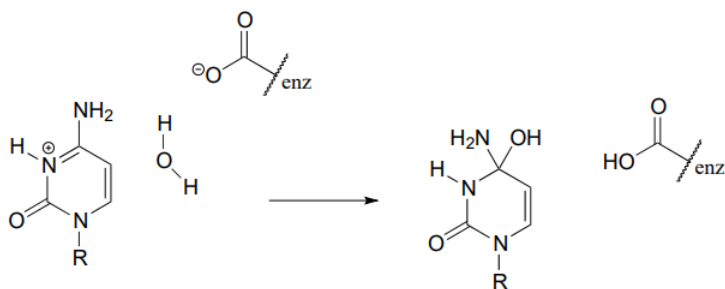


e.

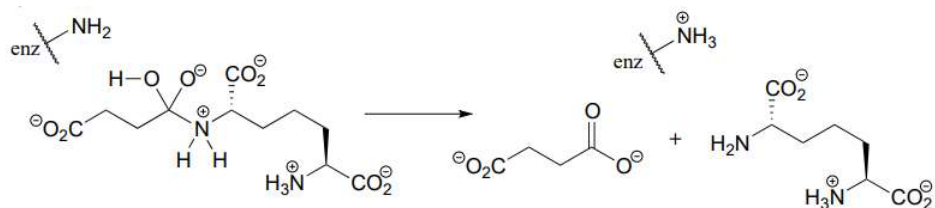


P6.4: Shown below are individual steps in some biochemical reaction mechanisms that we will be studying later. For each, draw curved arrows showing the electron movement taking place.

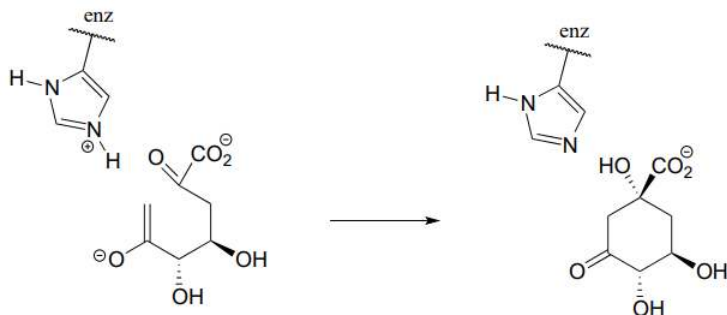
a.



b.



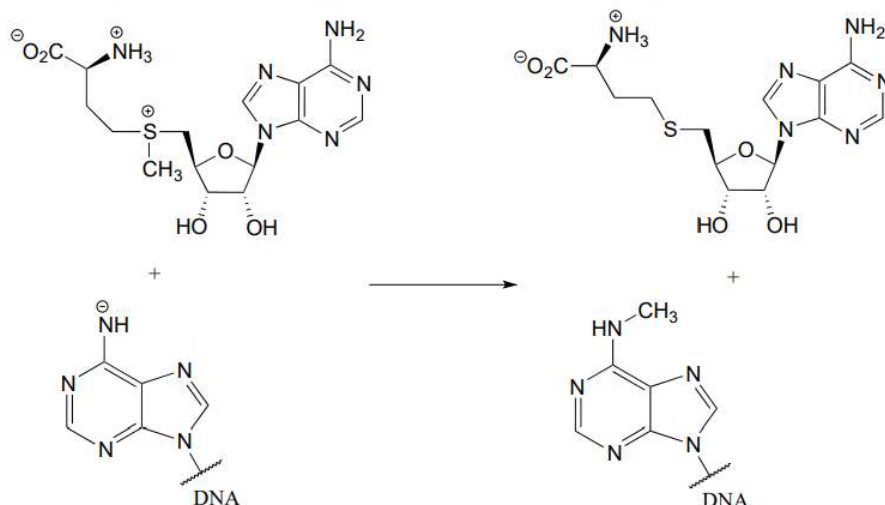
c.



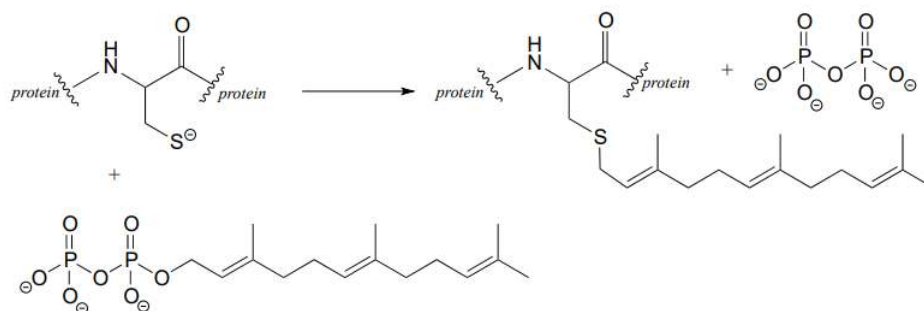
P6.5:

a. In the biochemical nucleophilic substitution reactions illustrated below, identify the atoms which are acting as nucleophile, electrophile, and leaving group.

Reaction 1:



Reaction 2:



- b. Using appropriate 'R' abbreviations for regions of the molecules that are not directly involved in bond-breaking or bond-forming events above, draw curved arrows showing the electron movement that takes place in each step. Assume that both are one-step mechanisms.

This page titled [5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Exercises\)](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [6.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Exercises\)](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Summary)

You should be confident in interpreting and using the curved arrow drawing convention for showing two-electron movement. Given a set of curved arrows describing a reaction step, you should be able to draw the product indicated by the arrows. Alternatively, given the starting structure and a product for a reaction step, you should be able to draw the curved arrows showing how bonds were broken and formed. You need not understand (yet) the chemistry behind these steps, you just need to be able to use the drawing formality.

- You should be able to recognize three reaction mechanism types: an acid-base reaction, a one-step nucleophilic substitution, and a two-step nucleophilic substitution.
- Given an example reaction, you should be able to identify a nucleophile, electrophile, and in many cases a leaving group.
- Given an example reaction mechanism, you should be able to recognize one or more reaction intermediates.
- Given a reaction coordinate diagram for a hypothetical reaction, you should be able to recognize whether the reaction is endergonic or exergonic, and whether the equilibrium constant is greater than or less than 1. You should be able to identify the point(s) on the diagram corresponding to transition state(s) and reaction intermediate(s). In a multi-step reaction diagram, you should be able to identify the rate determining step.
- Given a detailed reaction process showing starting reactant(s), intermediate(s), and product(s) with associated curved arrows, you should be able to sketch a reaction coordinate diagram that is consistent with the details of the reaction mechanism.
- You should be able to explain the role of a catalyst in a reaction.
- You should be able to list the major differences between a typical biological reaction and a typical laboratory reaction.

This page titled [5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Summary\)](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [6.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Summary\)](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms

- 6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions
- 6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals
- 6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions
- 6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes
- 6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes
- 6.5: Radical Chain Reactions
- 6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions
- 6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

6: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions



Introduction

Imagine that you are an 18th century British sailor about set out with Commodore George Anson to raid Spanish shipping fleets in the Pacific. You know full well that you are signing up for a long and arduous ordeal, with months of constant seasickness, bad food, cramped, unsanitary conditions, and brutal warfare. You are mentally ready for these hardships, but what you are not prepared for is to watch your own body rot away – to literally fall apart.

Below is a description of the suffering endured by many sailors of the time:

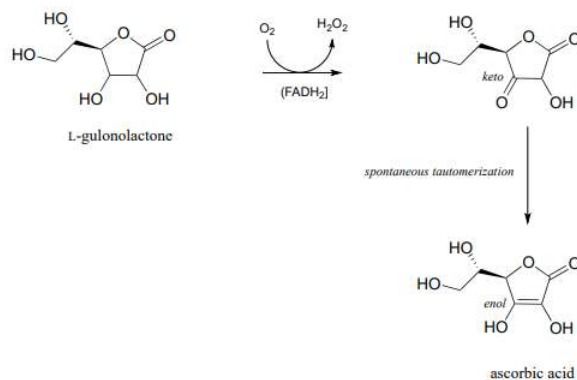
Some lost their very substance and their legs became swollen and puffed up while the sinews contracted and turned coal-black and, in some cases, all blotched with drops of purplish blood. Then the disease would creep up to the hips, thighs and shoulders, arms and neck. And all the sick had their mouths so tainted and their gums so decayed that the flesh peeled off down to the roots of their teeth, which almost all fell out. . .

There were devastating neurological as well as physiological effects. Scurvy had the ability to inhibit a person's normal restraints on emotion: they became intensely homesick and nostalgic, wept at the slightest disappointment, and screamed in agony upon smelling the scent of flower blossoms drifting across the water from a nearby shore.

The disease afflicting the sailors was scurvy, which we now know is caused by a deficiency of vitamin C in the diet. European sea voyagers in the 18th century and earlier subsisted mainly on a diet of salted meat, hard biscuits, pea soup, oatmeal, and beer. After the first couple of weeks at sea, fresh fruits and vegetables - and the nutrients they contained – were all consumed or spoiled. The salted meat and hardtack diet provided salt and calories, but little else of nutritional value.

Although it is rare now, scurvy has plagued sailors for centuries, with records of its occurrence on ships going back as far as the 15th century voyages of Magellan and Vasco de Gama, both of whom lost up to three quarters of their crew to the disease on long ocean crossings. Various cultures made the connection between scurvy and diet, and learned effective preventative measures: sailors with the 16th century French explorer Jacques Cartier, for example, were cured of their scurvy upon arriving in Canada and taking the advice of native people to eat the leaves and bark of pine trees. These were lessons, unfortunately, that often had to be relearned time and again, as the knowledge gained by one culture was not effectively recorded and passed along to others.

Vitamin C, or ascorbic acid as it is known to chemists, plays an essential helping role in a variety of essential biochemical reactions. Most living things are able to synthesize ascorbic acid – the exceptions include humans and other higher primates, several species of bats, and some rodents such as guinea pigs and capybaras. Humans lack the last enzyme in the ascorbic acid biosynthetic pathway, L-gulonolactone oxidase. (EC 1.1.3.8) (You were invited to propose the mechanism for this redox reaction in problem 15.10).



Because we cannot make our own ascorbic acid, we need to get it in our diet. It is abundant in many plant-based foods, citrus fruits in particular. The traditional diet of the Inuit people of the arctic region contains virtually no plant products, but vitamin C is obtained from foods such as kelp, caribou livers, and whale skin. For a time in the 18th century, the observation that citrus fruits quickly cured scurvy led to the practice of including in a ship's stores a paste prepared from boiled lemon juice. Unfortunately, ascorbic acid did not survive the boiling process, rendering the paste ineffective against scurvy. Captain James Cook, the legendary explorer and the first European to make it to the east coast of Australia and the Hawaiian islands, brought along sauerkraut (fermented cabbage), a somewhat more effective vitamin C supplement. According to his own account, Cook's sailors at first refused to eat the pungent preparation, so the captain engaged in a little psychological trickery: he declared that it would only be served to officers. The enlisted sailors quickly took offense, and demanded their own sauerkraut ration. Later, the British navy famously adopted the practice of adding lemon or lime juice to their ships' rum rations, leading to the birth of the slang term 'Limey' used by European and American sailors to refer to their British counterparts.

The biochemical role of ascorbic acid is to facilitate the transfer of single electrons in a variety of redox reactions - note here the emphasis on single electrons, as opposed to the redox reactions we studied in chapter 15 in which electrons were transferred in pairs. The subject of this chapter is single-electron chemistry, and the free radical intermediates that are involved in single electron reaction steps.

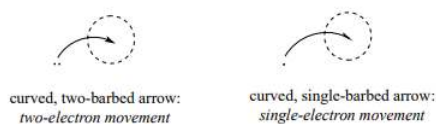
Later in this chapter we will learn the chemical details of why ascorbic acid deficiency causes scurvy, how the act of breathing makes you get old, how polystyrene packing foam is made, and other interesting applications of single-electron chemistry. But first we need to cover some basic ideas about single electron chemical steps, and the free radical intermediates that result from them.

This page titled [6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

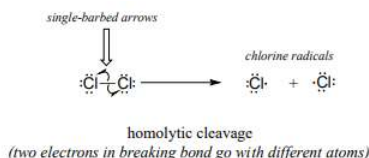
- **16.1: Prelude to Radical Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals

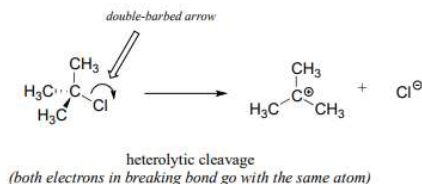
Beginning with acid-base reactions in chapter x and continuing through the chapters on nucleophilic substitution, carbonyl addition, acyl substitution, α -carbon chemistry, and electrophilic reactions, we have been studying reaction mechanisms in which both electrons in a covalent bond or lone pair move in the same direction. In this chapter, we learn about reactions in which the key steps involve the movement of single electrons. Single electron movement is depicted by single-barbed 'fish-hook' arrows (as opposed to the familiar double-barbed arrows that we have been using throughout the book to show two-electron movement).



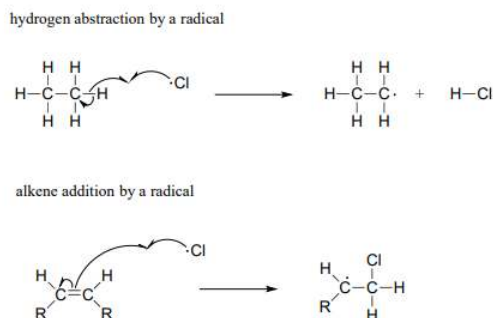
Single-electron mechanisms involve the formation and subsequent reaction of free radical species, highly unstable intermediates that contain an unpaired electron. Free radicals are often formed from homolytic cleavage, an event in which the two electrons in a breaking covalent bond move in opposite directions. The bond in molecular chlorine, for example, is subject to homolytic cleavage when chlorine is subjected to heat or light. The result is two chlorine radicals. Note that each radical has a formal charge of zero.



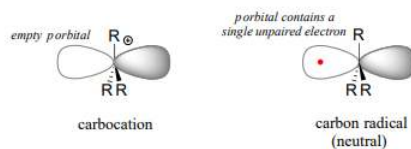
In contrast, essentially all of the reactions we have studied up to now involve bond-breaking events in which both electrons move in the same direction: this is called heterolytic cleavage.



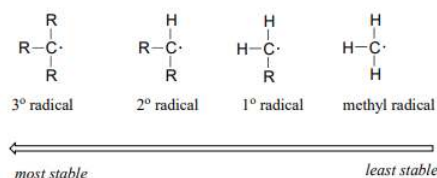
Two other homolytic cleavage reactions that we will see in this chapter can be described as 'radical hydrogen atom abstraction' and 'radical alkene addition':



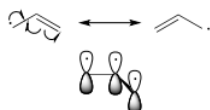
Single-electron reaction mechanisms involve the formation of radical species, and in organic reactions these are often carbon radicals. A carbon radical is sp^2 hybridized, with three σ bonds arranged in trigonal planar geometry and the single unpaired electron occupying an unhybridized p orbital. Contrast this picture with a carbocation reactive intermediate, which is also sp^2 hybridized with trigonal planar geometry but with an empty p orbital.



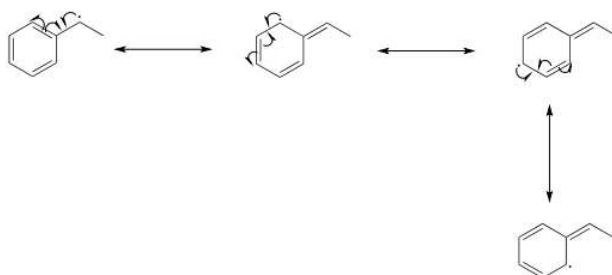
When we studied electrophilic reactions in chapter 14, a major concern when evaluating possible mechanisms was the stability of any carbocation intermediate(s). Likewise, the stability of proposed radical intermediates is of great importance when evaluating the likelihood of possible single-electron mechanisms. Fortunately, the trend in the stability of carbon radicals parallels that of carbocations (section 8.5): tertiary radicals, for example, are more stable than secondary radicals, followed by primary and methyl radicals. This should make intuitive sense, because radicals, like carbocations, are electron deficient, and thus are stabilized by the electron-donating effects of nearby alkyl groups.



Benzylic and allylic radicals are more stable than alkyl radicals due to resonance effects - an unpaired electron (just like a positive or negative charge) can be delocalized over a system of conjugated π bonds. An allylic radical, for example, can be pictured as a system of three parallel p orbitals sharing three electrons.

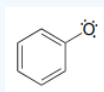


The drawing below shows how a benzylic radical is delocalized to three additional carbons around the aromatic ring:

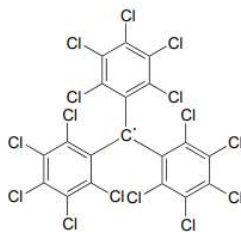


? Exercise 16.2.1

Just as phenolate ions are less reactive (less basic) than alkoxide ions, phenolic radicals are less reactive than alkoxide radicals. Draw one resonance contributor of a phenolic radical showing how the radical electron is delocalized to a ring carbon. Include electron-movement arrows.



While radical species are almost always very reactive and short-lived, in some extreme cases they can be unreactive. One example of an inert organic radical structure is shown below.



The already extensive benzylic resonance stabilization is further enhanced by the fact that the large electron clouds on the chlorine atoms shield the radical center from external reagents. The radical is, in some sense, inside a protective 'cage'.

? Exercise 16.2.2

Draw a resonance contributor of the structure above in which the unpaired electron is formally located on a chlorine atom (include electron movement arrows)

This page titled [6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **16.2: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions



Introduction

Linnda Caporael probably should have paid a little more attention to the graduation requirements in her college catalog. Going through the graduation checklist during her senior year, she discovered to her dismay that she still needed to fulfill a social science requirement, so she promptly enrolled in an American History course. It was a decision that would in time lead to her authoring a paper in a prestigious scientific journal, being featured in a front page story in the New York Times, and changing our understanding of one of the most intriguing - and disturbing - episodes in American history.

Professor Caporael (Linnda went on to become a professor of Behavioral Psychology at Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute) recounted her story in an episode of the PBS documentary series [Secrets of the Dead](#). Early in the semester, she learned that as part of her history course she would be required to complete a research paper on a topic of her own choosing. She had recently seen a performance of *The Crucible*, Arthur Miller's classic play about the Salem witch trials, and decided to do her research on Anne Putnam, one of the young Salem girls who accused several village women of bewitching them. The symptoms of 'bewitchment' that afflicted the girls were truly frightening: thrashing and convulsions, visions of snakes and ferocious beasts, a sudden inability to speak, and a feeling that ants were crawling under their skin.

These children were bitten and pinched by invisible agents: their arms, necks and backs turned this way and that way, and returned back again, so as it was, impossible for them to do of themselves, and beyond the power of any epileptick fits, or natural disease to effect. Sometimes they were taken dumb, their mouth flopped, their throats choaked, their limbs wracked and tormented. . .

(From "A Modest Enquiry Into the Nature of Witchcraft" (1702) by Reverend John Hale. <http://historyofmassachusetts.org/betty-parris-first-afflicted-girl-of-the-salem-witch-trials/>)

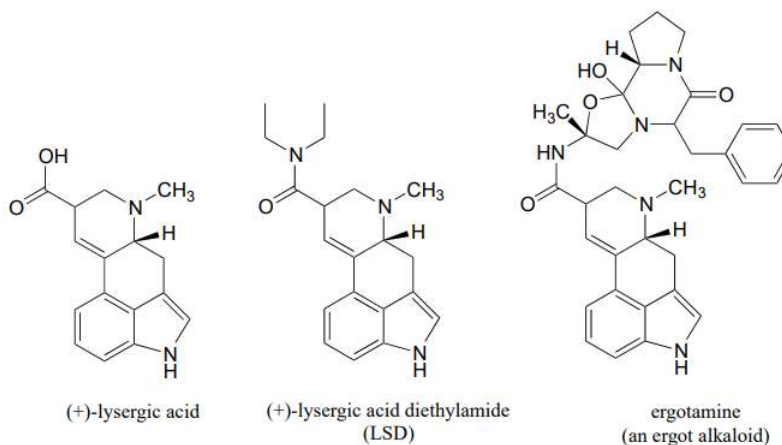
As Linnda continued to read accounts of the 'fits' afflicting the Salem girls, she was suddenly struck by the similarities to another, more recent episode that she had read about. In the summer of 1951, in the French village of Pont Saint Esprit, a number of local people were simultaneously seized by hallucinations, convulsions, and other symptoms very much like those described during the Salem witch trials hundreds of years earlier. Leon Armunier, a former postman in Pont Saint Esprit, described his experience to the BBC:

It was terrible. I had the sensation of shrinking and shrinking, and the fire and the serpents coiling around my arms . . . Some of my friends tried to get out of the window. They were thrashing wildly. . . screaming, and the sound of the metal beds and

the jumping up and down... the noise was terrible. I'd prefer to die rather than go through that again.

There have been several explanations offered for what caused the Pont Saint Esprit outbreak (including that the CIA was experimenting with mass LSD poisoning as a form of chemical warfare), but the most widely accepted theory is that the hallucinations were caused by eating bread made from contaminated grain.

Claviceps purpurea, a fungus known to grow in rye and other grains, produces a class of hallucinogenic compounds called 'ergot alkaloids' which are derived from lysergic acid (the hallucinogenic drug LSD is a synthetic derivative of lysergic acid). *Claviceps* thrives in damp grain, and special care must be taken to avoid contamination when storing grain grown during warm, rainy summers.



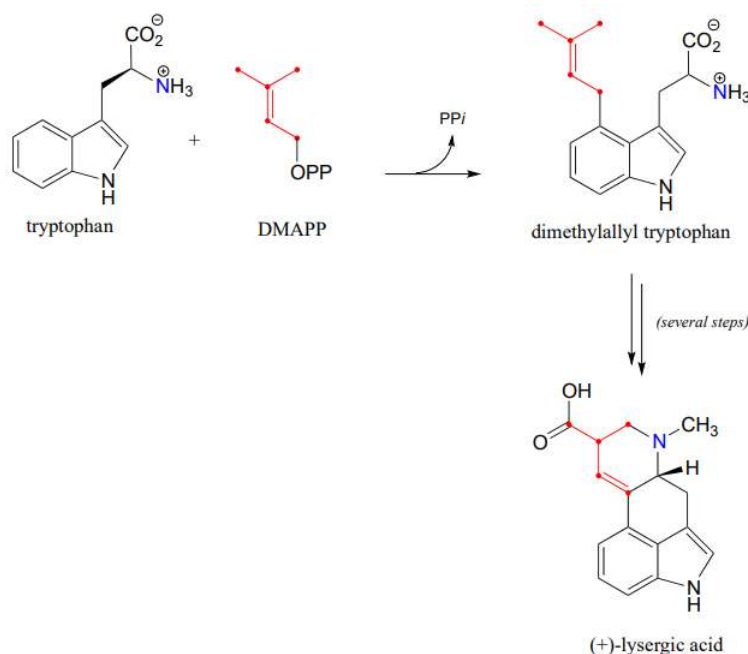
Digging deeper into the records of the Salem witchcraft episode, Linnda Caporael learned that the summer of 1691 was unusually damp. The first cases of 'bewitchment' in Salem village occurred in the winter of 1691-1692, when the villagers would have been consuming grain stored from the previous summer. Rye, the kind of grain most vulnerable to *Claviceps* contamination, was the staple crop in Salem at the time. Furthermore, nearly all of the affected girls lived on farms on the swampy western edge of the town, where *Claviceps* contamination would have been most likely to occur.

This was all circumstantial evidence, to be sure, but it was enough to convince Linnda that ergot poisoning was much more plausible as a root cause of the behavior of the afflicted girls than simply mass hysteria, which had long been the accepted theory. She summarized her findings in a paper that was later published in the journal *Science*, with the colorful title "Ergotism: The Satan Loosed in Salem?" (*Science* 1976, 192, 21). Her theory is still not universally accepted, but scientists and historians are for the most part in agreement that ergot poisoning was the cause of other outbreaks of convulsions and hallucinations, often called 'Saint Anthony's Fire', that have occurred throughout European history. It is possible that ergot poisoning may have played a role in literature as well: professor Caporael, in an interview with PBS, recounts how she was recently contacted by an historian with an intriguing idea. Is it possible that Caliban, the wild, half-human character in Shakespeare's *The Tempest* who is tormented by hallucinations inflicted upon him by the wizard Prospero, could be a literary manifestation of ergot poisoning episodes that occurred in England during Shakespeare's time?

*For every trifle are they set upon me;
Sometime like apes that mow and chatter at me
And after bite me, then like hedgehogs which
Lie tumbling in my barefoot way and mount
Their pricks at my footfall; sometime am I
All wound with adders who with cloven tongues
Do hiss me into madness.*

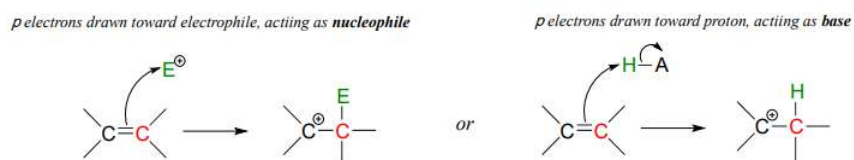
(William Shakespeare's *The Tempest*, Act II scene ii)

In this chapter, we will learn about a class of organic reaction that is central to the biosynthesis of ergot alkaloids in *Claviceps*. The key first step in the biosynthetic pathway is a reaction unlike any we have yet seen:



As you can see, the first step is condensation between the amino acid tryptophan and dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP), the building block molecule for isoprenoids (section 1.3A). What you should also notice in the reaction figure above is that a new carbon-carbon bond is formed, and yet the chemistry involved is clearly very different from the carbon-carbon bonding forming aldol additions and Claisen condensations we learned about in the previous two chapters: there is no carbonyl to be found anywhere near the site of reaction, and one of the bond-forming carbons is part of an aromatic ring.

We will see later in this chapter that this reaction mechanism is classified as an 'electrophilic aromatic substitution', and is one of a broader family of organic reaction mechanisms that includes electrophilic additions, substitutions, and isomerizations. 'Electrophilic' is the key term here: in organic chemistry, an 'electrophilic' reaction mechanism is one in which the p-bonded electrons in a carbon-carbon double (or sometimes triple) bond are drawn towards an electron-poor species, often an acidic proton or carbocation. In essence, the p bond is acting as a nucleophile or base.



Notice above that, once the p bond breaks and a new σ bond forms, the second carbon that was part of the original p bond becomes a carbocation. Carbocation intermediates play a critical role in this chapter, because a carbocation is a highly reactive species and will quickly attract a pair of electrons. The stability of the carbocation intermediate (recall that we learned about carbocation stability in section 8.5), and the manner in which it accepts a pair of electrons, plays a key role in determining the outcome of the reaction.

This page titled [6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

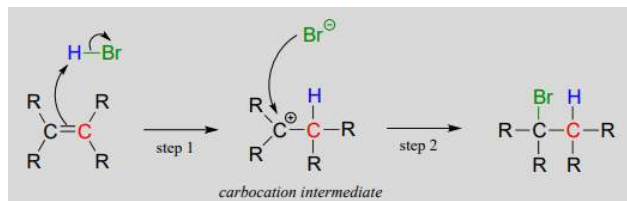
- **14.1: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

Addition of HBr to alkenes

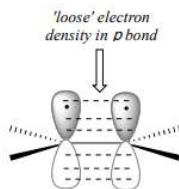
The simplest type of electrophilic reaction to visualize is the addition of a haloacid such as HBr to an isolated alkene. It is not a biological reaction, but nonetheless can serve as a convenient model to introduce some of the most important ideas about electrophilic reactions.

Electrophilic addition of HBr to an alkene:



Step 1 is an acid-base reaction: the π electrons of the alkene act as a base and extract the acidic proton of HBr . This leaves one of the carbons with a new bond to hydrogen, and the other with an incomplete octet and a positive formal charge. In step 2, the nucleophilic bromide anion attacks the electrophilic carbocation to form a new carbon-bromine bond. Overall, the HBr molecule - in the form of a proton and a bromide anion - has been added to the double bond.

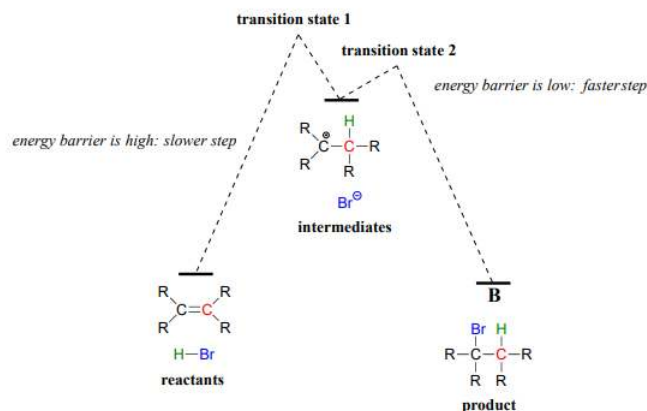
To understand how π -bonded electrons in an alkene could be basic, let's first review the bonding picture for alkenes. Recall (section 2.1) that the both of the carbons in an alkene group are sp^2 hybridized, meaning that each carbon has three sp^2 hybrid orbitals extending out in the same plane at 180° angles (trigonal planar geometry), and a single, unhybridized p orbital oriented perpendicular to that plane - one lobe above the plane, one lobe below.



The unhybridized p orbitals on the two alkene carbons overlap, in a side-by-side fashion, to form the π bond, which extends above and below the plane formed by the σ bonds. Two electrons shared in this π bond are farther away from the carbon nuclei than the electrons in the carbon-carbon σ bond, and thus are more accessible to the acidic proton. In addition, recall that molecular orbital (MO) theory tells us that p orbitals are higher in energy than s orbitals (section 2.2). As a consequence, it is easier to break the π bond of an alkene than it is to break the σ bond: the π bond is more reactive.

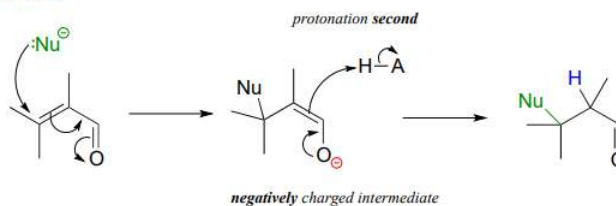
As the HBr molecule approaches the alkene, a new σ bond is formed between one of the alkene carbons and the electron-poor proton from HBr . The carbon, which was sp^2 hybridized when it was part of the alkene, is now sp^3 hybridized. The other alkene carbon is still sp^2 hybridized, but it now bears a positive formal charge because it has only three bonds, and its p orbital is empty. But it won't stay empty for long: a carbocation is a very reactive, unstable intermediate. The bromide ion will rapidly act as a nucleophile, filling the orbital with a pair of electrons, and now with four σ bonds the carbon is sp^3 -hybridized.

The first step in the electrophilic addition reaction is much slower than the second step, because the intermediate carbocation species is higher in energy than either the reactants or the products, and as a result the energy barrier for the first step is also higher than for the second step. The slower first step is the rate-determining step: a change in the rate of the slow step will effect the rate of the overall reaction, while a change in the rate of the fast step will not.

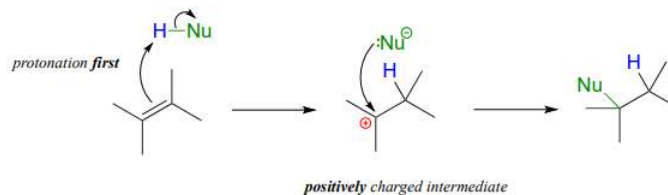


It is important to recognize the inherent difference between an electrophilic addition to an alkene and a conjugate addition to an alkene in the α,β position, the latter of which we studied earlier in section 13.4. In both reactions, a proton and a nucleophile add to the double bond of an alkene. In a conjugate addition, the nucleophilic attack takes place first, resulting in a negatively charged intermediate (an enolate). Protonation is the second step. Also, of course, the alkene must be conjugated to a carbonyl or imine.

conjugate addition:



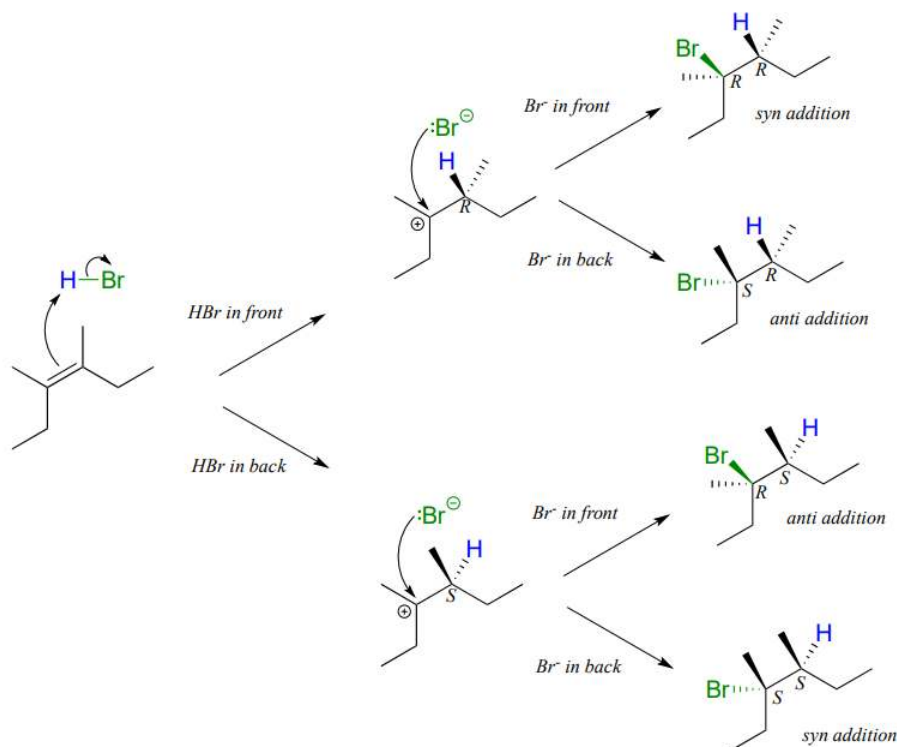
electrophilic addition:



In an electrophilic addition, proton abstraction occurs first, generating a positively-charged intermediate. Nucleophilic attack is the second step. No conjugated carbonyl or imine group is required: in fact a nearby carbonyl group would actually slow down a hypothetical electrophilic addition reaction down because a carbonyl is an electron withdrawing, carbocation-destabilized group.

The stereochemistry of electrophilic addition

Depending on the structure of the starting alkene, electrophilic addition has the potential to create two new chiral centers. Addition of HBr to an alkene is not stereoselective: the reaction results in racemization at both of the alkene carbons. Consider the addition of HBr to cis-3,4-dimethyl-3-hexene. The initial proton abstraction step creates a new chiral center, and because the acidic proton could be added to either side of the planar alkene carbon with equal probability, the center could have either *S* or *R* configuration.



Likewise, in the second step the nucleophilic bromide ion could attack from either side of the planar carbocation, leading to an equal mixture of *S* and *R* configuration at that carbon as well. Therefore, we expect the product mixture to consist of equal amounts of four different stereoisomers.

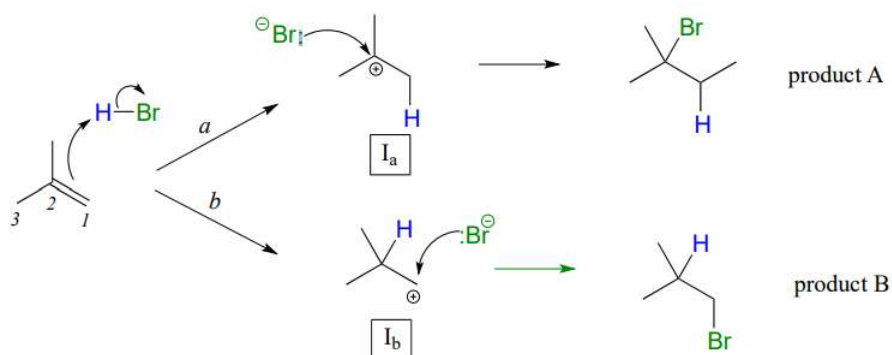
? Exercise 14.2.1

Predict the product(s) of electrophilic addition of **HBr** to the following alkenes. Draw all possible stereoisomers that could form, and take care not to draw identical structures twice.

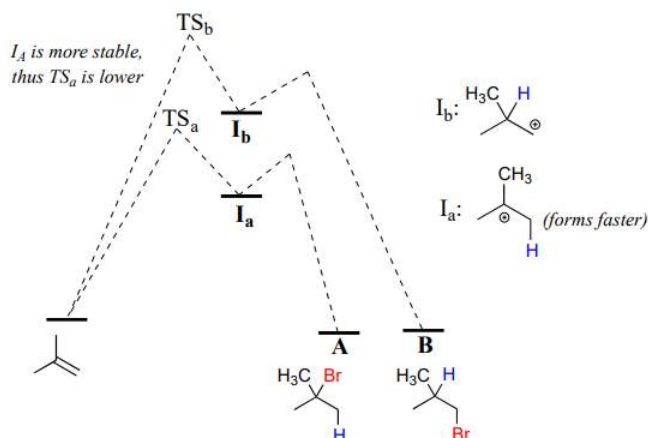
- trans-2-butene
- cis-3-hexene
- cyclopentene

The regiochemistry of electrophilic addition

In many cases of electrophilic addition to an alkene, regiochemistry comes into play: the reaction can result in the formation of two different constitutional isomers. Consider the electrophilic addition of **HBr** to 2-methylpropene:



Note that carbon #1 and carbon #2 in the starting alkene are not the same - carbon #2 is bonded to two methyl groups, and carbon #1 to two hydrogen atoms. The initial protonation step could therefore go two different ways, resulting in two different carbocation intermediates. Notice how pathway 'a' gives a tertiary carbocation intermediate (I_a), while pathway 'b' gives a primary carbocation intermediate (I_b). We know from section 8.5 that the tertiary carbocation I_a is lower in energy. Consequently, the transition state $TS(a)$ leading to I_a is lower in energy than $TS(b)$, meaning that I_a forms faster than I_b .



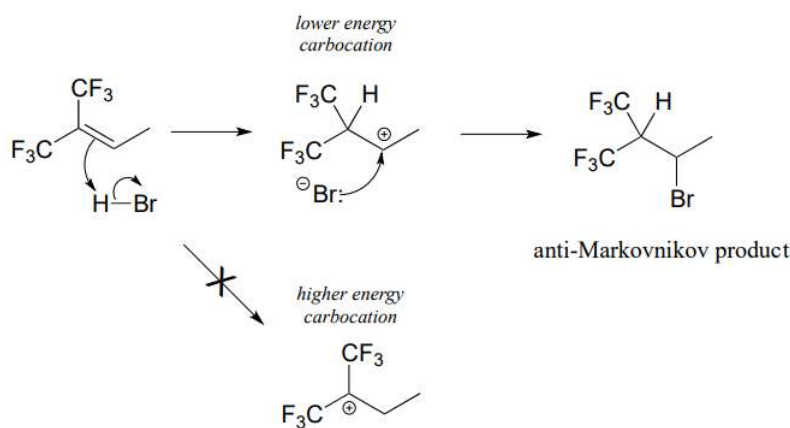
Because the protonation step is the rate determining step for the reaction, tertiary alkyl bromide A will form faster than the primary alkyl bromide B, and thus A will be the predominant product of the reaction. The electrophilic addition of HBr to 2-methylpropene is regioselective: more than one constitutional isomer can potentially form, but one isomer is favored over the other. It is generally observed that in electrophilic addition of haloacids to alkenes, the more substituted carbon is the one that ends up bonded to the heteroatom of the acid, while the less substituted carbon is protonated. This 'rule of thumb' is known as **Markovnikov's rule**, after the Russian chemist Vladimir Markovnikov who proposed it in 1869.

While it is useful in many cases, Markovnikov's rule does not apply to all electrophilic addition reactions. It is better to use a more general principle:

📌 The regioselectivity of electrophilic addition

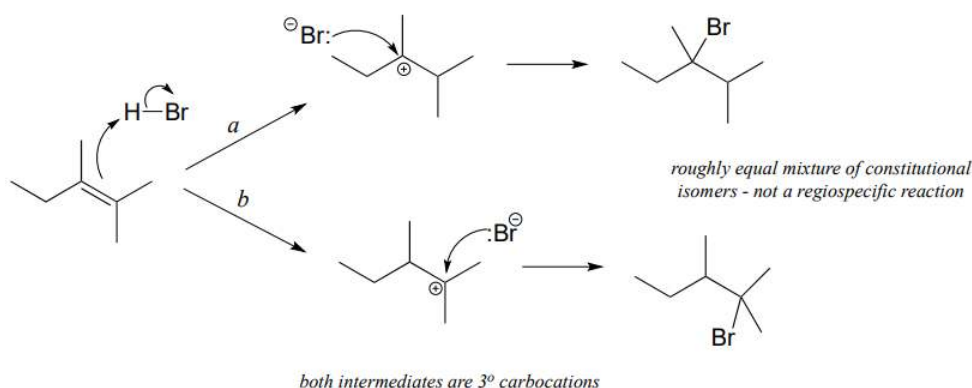
When an asymmetrical alkene undergoes electrophilic addition, the product that predominates is the one that results from the more stable of the two possible carbocation intermediates.

How is this different from Markovnikov's original rule? Consider the following hypothetical reaction, in which the starting alkene incorporates two trifluoromethyl substituents:



Now when **HBr** is added, it is the less substituted carbocation that forms faster in the rate-determining protonation step, because in this intermediate the carbon bearing the positive charge is located further away from the electron-withdrawing, cation-destabilizing fluorines. As a result, the predominant product is the secondary rather than the tertiary bromoalkane. This is referred to as an anti-Markovnikov addition product, because it 'breaks' Markovnikov's rule.

If the two possible carbocation intermediates in an electrophilic addition reaction are of similar stability, the product will be a mixture of constitutional isomers.



Electrophilic addition of water and alcohol

The (non-biochemical) addition of water to an alkene is very similar mechanistically to the addition of a haloacid such as **HBr** or **HCl**, and the same stereochemical and regiochemical principles apply. A catalytic amount of a strong acid such as phosphoric or sulfuric acid is required, so that the acidic species in solution is actually H_3O^+ . Note that H_3O^+ is regenerated in the course of the reaction.



Figure 14.2.10

If an alkene is treated with methanol and a catalytic amount of strong acid, the result is an ether:



Figure 14.2.11

? Exercise 14.2.2

Draw a mechanism for the ether-forming reaction above.

Addition to conjugated alkenes

Electrophilic addition to conjugated alkenes presents additional regiochemical possibilities, due to resonance delocalization of the allylic carbocation intermediate. Addition of one molar equivalent of **HBr** to 1,3-butadiene, for example, leads to a mixture of three

products, two of which are a pair of enantiomers due to the creation of a chiral center at carbon #2.



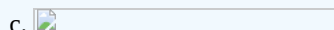
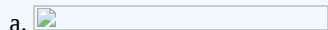
Figure 14.2.12

? Exercise 14.2.3

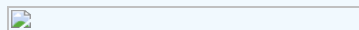
Explain why 4-bromo-1-butene is not a significant product of the reaction above.

? Exercise 14.2.4

Predict the major product(s) of the following reactions. Draw all possible stereoisomers, and take care not to draw the same structure twice.



d. **Hint** - are the double bonds in an aromatic ring likely to undergo electrophilic addition?



Biochemical electrophilic addition reactions

Myrcene is an isoprenoid compound synthesized by many different kinds of plants and used in the preparation of perfumes. Recently an enzymatic pathway for the degradation of myrcene has been identified in bacteria (*J. Biol. Chem* 2010, 285, 30436). The first step of this pathway is electrophilic addition of water to a conjugated alkene system.



Figure 14.2.13

? Exercise 14.2.5

Draw a mechanism for the above reaction, showing two resonance contributors of the carbocation intermediate. How would you characterize the intermediate?

Although the hydration of myrcene above looks very familiar, many enzyme-catalyzed electrophilic addition reactions differ from what we have seen so far, in that the electron-poor species attacked by the p-bonded electrons in the initial step is a carbocation rather than an acidic proton:



Figure 14.2.14

α -terpineol, a major component in the sap of pine trees, is formed in an electrophilic addition reaction. The first thing that happens (which we will refer to below as 'step a', in order to keep the step numbering consistent with the addition mechanisms we have seen so far) is departure of a pyrophosphate leaving group, forming an allylic carbocation electrophile.



Figure 14.2.15

The actual electrophilic addition stage of the reaction begins with step 1, as the π electrons of an alkene are drawn toward one of the two carbons that share the positive charge, effectively closing a six-membered ring. A water molecule then attacks the second carbocation intermediate (step 2), which completes the addition process.

Notice something important about the regiochemical course of the reaction: step 1 results in the formation of a six-membered ring and a tertiary carbocation. As we have stressed before, biochemical reactions tend to follow energetically favorable mechanistic pathways.

? Exercise 14.2.6

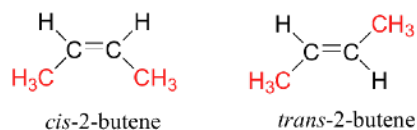
An alternate regiochemical course to step 1 shown above could result in a seven-membered ring and a secondary carbocation, a much less energetically favorable intermediate in terms of both carbocation stability and ring size. Draw a mechanism for this hypothetical alternate reaction, and show the product that would result after the addition of water in a hypothetical 'step 2'.

This page titled [6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **14.2: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

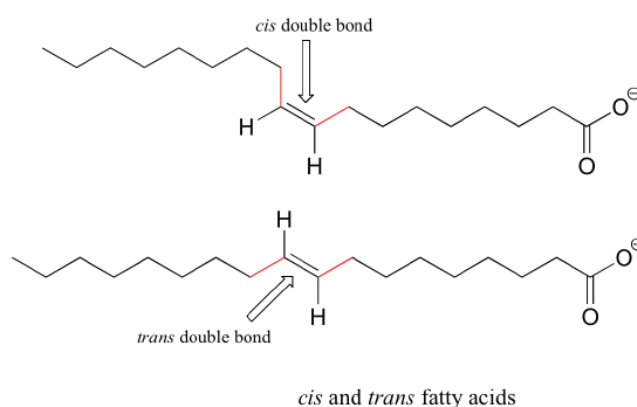
6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes

When we talk about stereochemistry, we are not always talking about chiral compounds and chiral centers. Consider *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene:

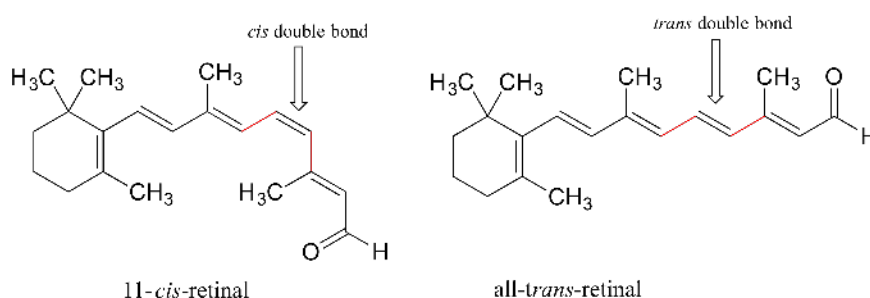


Each can be superimposed on its own mirror image, and neither is chiral (also, note the lack of a chiral center!) However, they both have the same molecular formula and the same bonding connectivity, so by definition they are stereoisomers of each other. Because they are not mirror images, they must be diastereomers. An alkene group which can exist in two stereoisomeric forms is referred to as **stereogenic**.

Alkene groups in natural unsaturated fatty acids are normally *cis*, but *trans*-fatty acids (which are thought to be associated with heart disease and other health problems) are found in some food products.



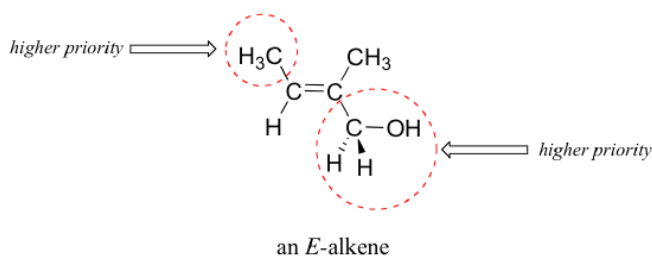
Retinal is a light-sensitive molecule, derived from vitamin A, that is found in the rod cells of the eye. When light enters the eye through the retina, one form of retinal is converted to a diastereomer when a *cis* double bond is converted to *trans* (we'll learn how this happens in chapter 13). This changes the shape of the molecule and the way that it binds to the vision protein rhodopsin, which in turn initiates a chain of events that leads to a signal being sent to the vision center of the brain.



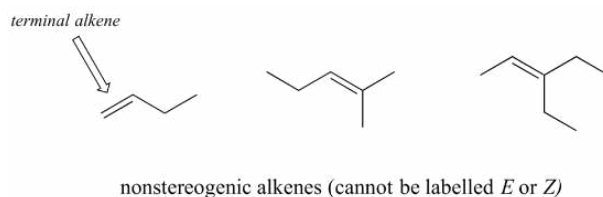
While the terms *cis* and *trans* are quite clear in the examples above, in some cases they can be ambiguous, and a more rigorous stereochemical designation is required. To unambiguously designate alkene stereochemistry, it is best to use the designators '*E*' and '*Z*' rather than *trans* and *cis*. To use this naming system, we first decide which is the higher priority group on each carbon of the double bond, using the same priority rules that we learned for the *R/S* system. If the higher-priority groups are on the same side of the double bond, it is a *Z*-alkene, and if they are on the opposite side it is an *E*-alkene. A memory device that many students find helpful is the phrase '*Z* = *zame zide*'.

Shown below is an example of an *E*-alkene: notice that, although the two methyl groups are on the same side relative to one another, the alkene has *E* stereochemistry according to the rules of the *E/Z* system because one of the methyl groups takes a higher

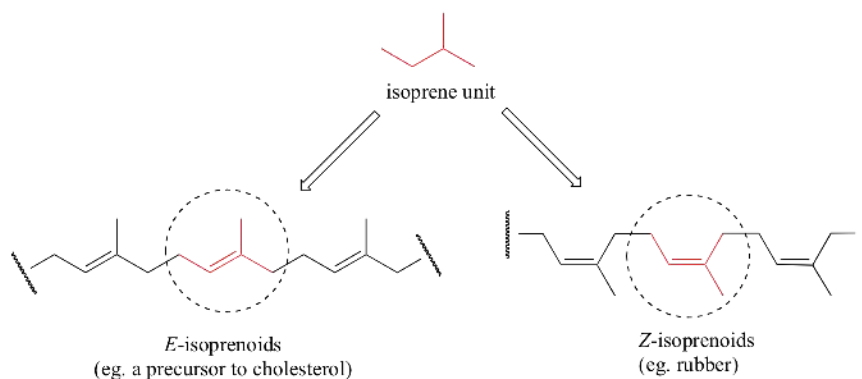
priority (relative to a hydrogen) and the other takes lower priority (relative to a primary alcohol). The *cis/trans* terms would be ambiguous for this compound.



Not all alkenes can be labeled *E* or *Z*: if one (or both) of the double-bonded carbons has identical substituents, the alkene is not stereogenic, and thus cannot be assigned an *E* or *Z* configuration. Terminal alkenes, in which one of the alkene carbons is bonded to two hydrogen atoms, are the most commonly seen type of nonstereogenic alkene.

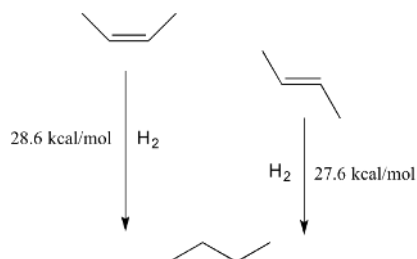


Natural rubber is a polymer composed of five-carbon isoprenoid building blocks linked with *Z* stereochemistry. The same isoprenoid building blocks can also be connected with *E* stereochemistry, leading to a polymer that is a precursor to cholesterol and many other natural isoprenoid compounds found in all forms of life.



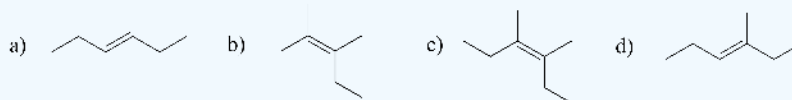
Alkenes located inside a five- or six-membered ring, such as in cyclohexene, are not generally labeled *E* or *Z*, simply because the closed geometry of the ring allows for only one stereochemical possibility. (*E*)-cyclohexene is not physically possible, so it is not necessary to include the (*Z*) designator for cyclohexene. Larger rings, however, can hypothetically have *E* or *Z* alkene groups: two actual examples are included in exercise 3.26 below.

As a general rule, alkenes with the bulkiest groups on opposite sides of the double bond are more stable, due to reduced steric strain. The *trans* (*E*) diastereomer of 2-butene, for example, is slightly lower in energy than the *cis* (*Z*) diastereomer, as seen by their relative heats of hydrogenation to butane (see section 2.2C for a reminder of the meaning of 'heat of hydrogenation').



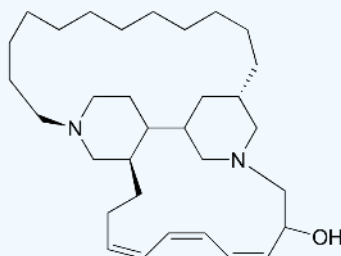
Exercise 3.25

Label the alkene groups below as *E*, *Z*, or *N* (for a nonstereogenic alkene).

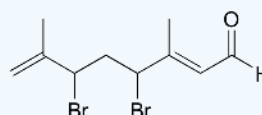


Exercise 3.26

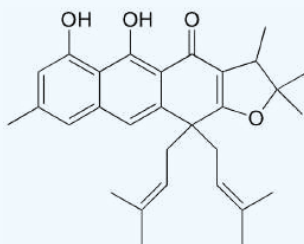
The compounds shown below were all isolated from natural sources and their structures reported in a 2007 issue of the *Journal of Natural Products*, an American Chemical Society publication. Label all alkene groups that are not inside 5- or 6-membered rings as *E*, *Z*, or *N* (for a nonstereogenic alkene).



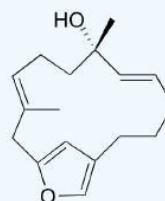
from marine sponge
J. Nat. Prod. **2007**, 70, 538



from algae
J. Nat. Prod. **2007**, 70, 596



from Nketto plant in Cameroon
J. Nat. Prod. **2007**, 70, 600



from tree bark in Thailand
J. Nat. Prod. **2007**, 70, 659

How many possible stereoisomers?

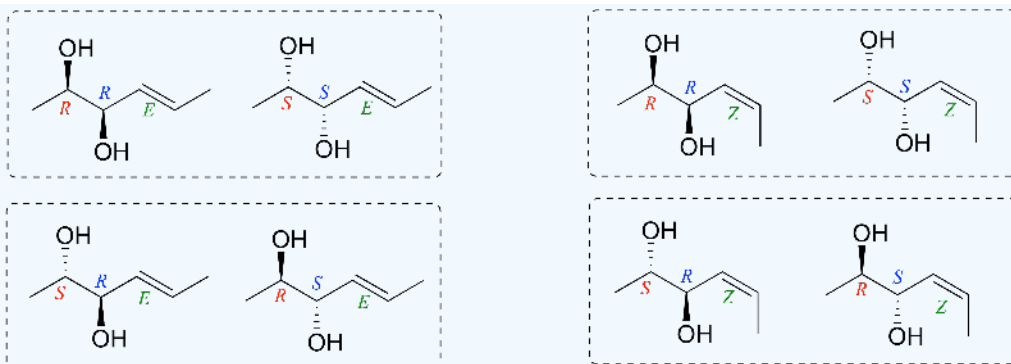
How do we know how many stereoisomers are possible for a given structure? There is actually a straightforward way to figure this out. All we need to do is count the number of chiral centers and stereogenic alkene groups, the use this following rule:

$$\text{number of stereoisomeric forms} = 2^n$$

... where n = the number of chiral centers **plus** the number of stereogenic alkene groups

(the rare exception to this rule is when a meso form is possible - in this case, the rule becomes 2^{n-1})

Consider for example a molecule with two chiral centers and one stereogenic alkene. By the rule stated above, we know right away that there must be eight possible stereoisomers. Drawing out all the possibilities, we see:



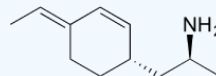
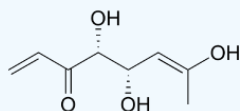
8 stereoisomers of a compound with two chiral centers plus one stereogenic alkene

We see that, for example, RRE has one enantiomer, the SSE compound. The six other stereoisomers are all diastereomers of RRE .

It needs to be stressed that the enantiomer of the RRE compound is the SSE compound, **not** the SSZ compound. Remember, the E/Z relationship is diastereomeric, not enantiomeric. Use models to convince yourself that the RRE and the SSE isomers are mirror images of each other, while RRE and SSZ compounds are not. In general, to get the enantiomer of a compound, we invert all chiral centers *but leave all stereogenic alkenes the same*.

? Exercise 3.27

Draw the enantiomer of each the compounds below, and assign configurations to all chiral centers and stereogenic alkenes. How many diastereomers are possible for each of the structures you drew?



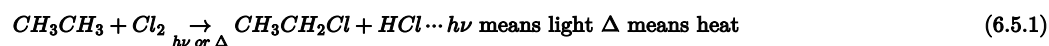
This page titled 6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 3.10: Stereochemistry of alkenes by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.5: Radical Chain Reactions

Because of their high reactivity, free radicals have the potential to be extremely powerful chemical tools - but as we will see in this chapter, they can also be extremely harmful in a biological/environmental context. Key to understanding many types of radical reactions is the idea of a **radical chain reaction**.

Radical chain reactions have three distinct phases: initiation, propagation, and termination. We'll use a well-known example, the halogenation of an alkane such as ethane, to illustrate. The overall reaction is:

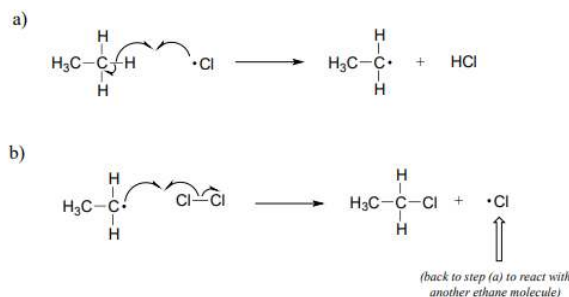


The initiation phase in a radical chain reaction involves the homolytic cleavage of a weak single bond in a non-radical compound, resulting in two radical species as products.

Often, heat or light provides the energy necessary to overcome an energy barrier for this type of event. The initiation step in alkane halogenation is homolysis of molecular chlorine (Cl_2) into two chlorine radicals. Keep in mind that that virtually all radical species, chlorine radicals included, are highly reactive.

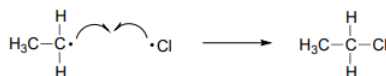


The **propagation** phase is the 'chain' part of chain reactions.



Once a reactive free radical (chlorine radical in our example) is generated in the initiation phase, it will react with relatively stable, non-radical compounds to form a new radical species. In ethane halogenation, a chlorine radical generated in the initiation step first reacts with ethane in a hydrogen abstraction step, generating **HCl** and an ethyl radical (part a above). Then, the ethyl radical reacts with another (non-radical) Cl_2 molecule, forming the chloroethane product and regenerating a chlorine radical (part b above). This process repeats itself again and again, as chlorine radicals formed in part (b) react with additional ethane molecules as in part (a).

The termination phase is a radical combination step, where two radical species happen to collide and react with each other to form a non-radical product and 'break the chain'. In our ethane chlorination example, one possible termination event is the reaction of a chlorine radical with an ethyl radical to form chloroethane.

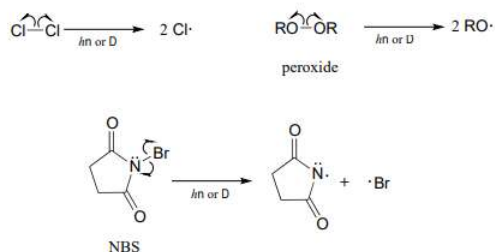


? Exercise 16.3.1

Draw two alternative chain termination steps in the ethane chlorination chain reaction. Which one leads to an undesired product?

Because radical species are so reactive and short-lived, their concentration in the reaction mixture at any given time is very low compared to the non-radical components such as ethane and Cl_2 . Thus, many cycles of the chain typically occur before a termination event takes place. In other words, a single initiation event leads to the formation of many product molecules.

Compounds which readily undergo homolytic cleavage to generate radicals are called radical initiators. As we have just seen, molecular chlorine and bromine will readily undergo homolytic cleavage to form radicals when subjected to heat or light. Other commonly used as radical initiators are peroxides and *N*-bromosuccinimide (NBS).

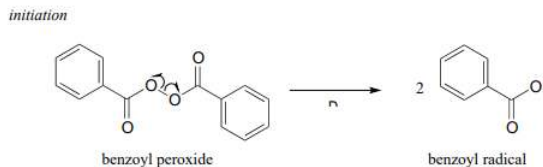


This page titled [6.5: Radical Chain Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

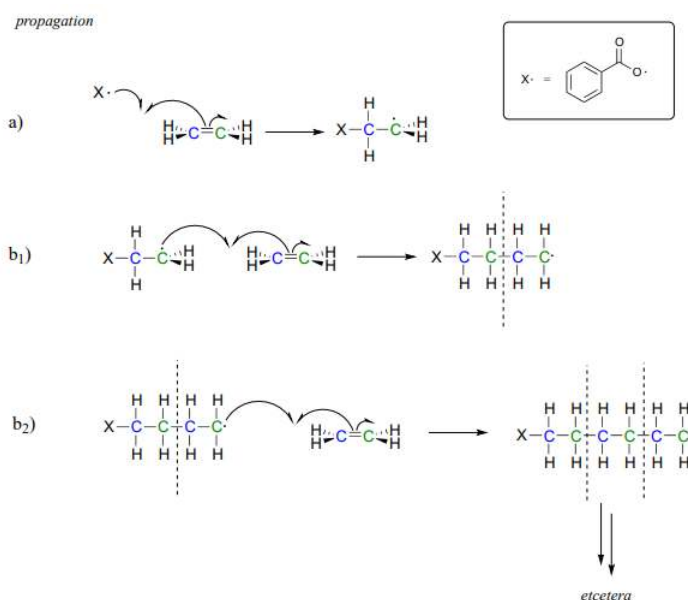
- [16.3: Radical Chain Reactions](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

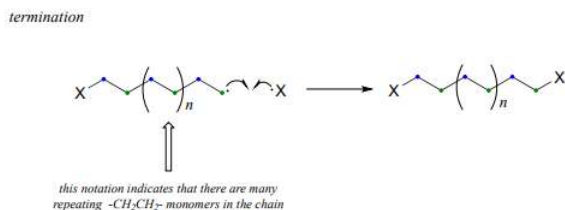
Many familiar household materials polymers made from radical chain reaction processes. Polyethylene (PET), the plastic material used to make soft drink bottles and many other kinds of packaging, is produced by the radical polymerization of ethylene (ethylene is a common name for what we call 'ethene' in IUPAC nomenclature). The process begins when a radical initiator such as benzoyl peroxide undergoes homolytic cleavage at high temperature:



In the propagation phase, the benzoyl radical ($X^\cdot$ in the figure below) adds to the double bond of ethylene, generating a new organic radical.

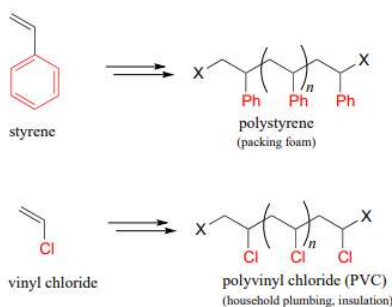


Successive ethylene molecules add to the growing polymer, until termination occurs when two radicals happen to collide.



The length of the polymer is governed by how long the propagation phase continues before termination, and can usually be controlled by adjusting reaction conditions.

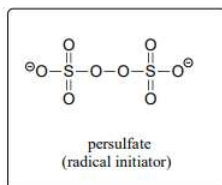
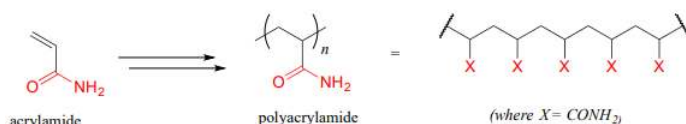
Other small substituted alkene monomers polymerize in a similar fashion to form familiar polymer materials. Two examples are given below.



? Exercise 16.4.1

Show a mechanism for the formation of a 2-unit long section of polystyrene, starting with the monomer and benzoyl peroxide initiator. Keep in mind the relative stability of different radical intermediates.

A common way to separate proteins in the biochemistry lab is through a technique called polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE). The polyacrylamide gel is formed through radical polymerization of acrylamide monomer, with the ammonium salt of persulfate used as the radical initiator.



In the end of chapter problems, you will be invited to propose a mechanism showing how a molecule called 'bis-acrylamide' serves as a 'crosslinker' between linear polyacrylamide chains to allow for formation of a net-like structure for the PAGE gel.

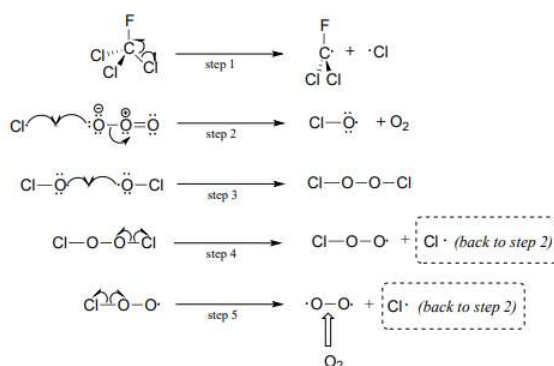
This page titled [6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **16.4: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

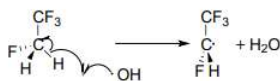
The high reactivity of free radicals and the multiplicative nature of radical chain reactions can be useful in the synthesis of materials such as polyethylene plastic - but these same factors can also result in dangerous consequences in a biological or ecological context. You are probably aware of the danger posed to the earth's protective stratospheric ozone layer by the use of chlorofluorocarbons (**CFCs**) as refrigerants and propellants in aerosol spray cans. Freon-11, or **CFCl₃**, is a typical **CFC** that was widely used until late in the 20th century. It can take months or years for a **CFC** molecule to drift up into the stratosphere from the surface of the earth, and of course the concentration of **CFCs** at this altitude is very low. Ozone, on the other hand, is continually being formed in the stratosphere. Why all the concern, then, about destruction of the ozone layer - how could such a small amount of **CFCs** possibly do significant damage? The problem lies in the fact that the process by which ozone is destroyed is a chain reaction, so that a single **CFC** molecule can initiate the destruction of many ozone molecules before a chain termination event occurs.

Although there are several different processes by which the ozone destruction process might occur, the most important is believed to be the chain reaction shown below.



First, a **CFC** molecule undergoes homolytic cleavage upon exposure to UV radiation, resulting in the formation of two radicals (step 1). The chlorine radical rapidly reacts with ozone (step 2) to form molecular oxygen and a chlorine monoxide radical. Step 3 appears to be a chain termination step, as two chlorine monoxide radicals combine. The Cl_2O_2 condensation product, however, is highly reactive and undergoes two successive homolytic cleavage events (steps 4 and 5) to form O_2 and two chlorine radicals, which propagates the chain.

To address the problem of ozone destruction, materials chemists have developed new hydrofluorocarbon refrigerant compounds. The newer compounds contain carbon-hydrogen bonds, which are weaker than the carbon-halogen bonds in **CFCs**, and thus are susceptible to homolytic cleavage caused by small amounts of hydroxide radical present in the lower atmosphere:



This degradation occurs before the refrigerant molecules have a chance to drift higher up to the stratosphere where the ozone plays its important protective role. The degradation products are quite unstable and quickly degrade further into relatively harmless by-products. The hydroxide radical is sometimes referred to as an atmospheric 'detergent' due to its ability to degrade escaped refrigerants and other volatile organic pollutants.

Hydrofluorocarbons do, however, act as greenhouse gases, and are thought to contribute to climate change.

This page titled 6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 16.5: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Reaction Mechanisms Continued

- [7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions](#)
- [7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#)
- [7.2: Nucleophiles](#)
- [7.3: Electrophiles](#)
- [7.4: Leaving Groups](#)
- [7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions](#)
- [7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview](#)
- [7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates](#)
- [7.8: Acetals and Ketals](#)
- [7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions](#)
- [7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives](#)
- [7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism](#)
- [7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides](#)

7: [Reaction Mechanisms Continued](#) is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

Dr. Tim Spector, Professor of Genetic Epidemiology at Kings College in London, knows a thing or two about twins. He should: as head of the Department of Twin Research at Kings College, Spector works with about 3500 pairs of identical twins, researching the influence of a person's genetic blueprint on everything from how likely they are to be obese, to whether or not they hold religious beliefs, to what kind of person they fall in love with. Anyone who is a twin, or has ever known a pair of identical twins, can attest to how remarkably similar they are to each other, even in the rare cases of adopted twins raised in separate homes. Dr. Spector, however, has over the course of his research become much more interested in how they are different.

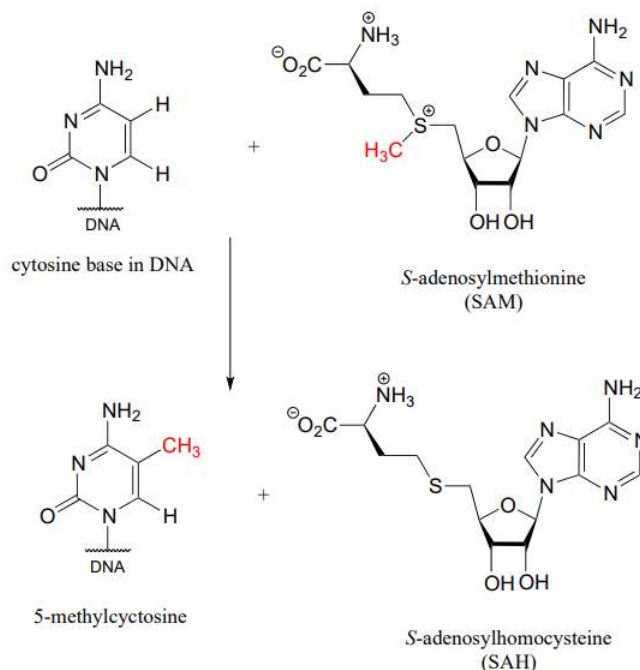


A recent article about Spector in the British newspaper *The Guardian* (June 1, 2013) begins with an introduction to two middle-aged twin sisters named Barbara and Christine, one of the pairs of twins in the Kings College study group. Although they were treated almost as a single person when growing up, with identical haircuts and clothes, the twins began to diverge in their teenage years as they gained the freedom to make their own choices. They began to dress quite differently, with Christine choosing much more conservative styles than Barbara. Christine describes herself as being self-conscious, while Barbara has always been more confident. Christine suffers from depression, but Barbara does not.

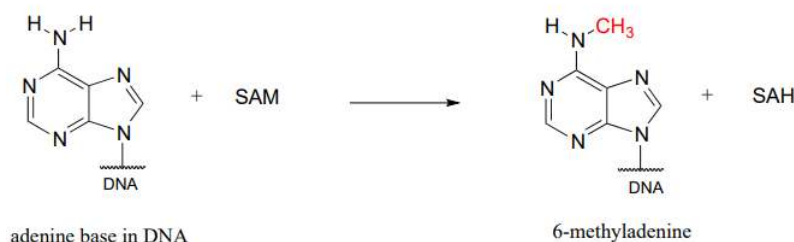
Given that they were born with the exact same DNA and were raised in the same home, where do these differences come from? In public debates about why people are the way they are, a catch phrase that often comes up is 'nature vs. nurture': people argue, in other words, about the relative influence of a person's genes vs. the influence of their environment. In Barbara and Christine's case, one would assume that the 'nature' is identical, and given that they grew up in the same house, the 'nurture' side of the equation should also be quite similar.

As it turns out, the 'nature' component may not be so identical after all. Based on his work with twins, Spector now thinks that subtle changes to Barbara's and Christine's DNA after conception - and indeed, throughout their lifetimes - may be a much more important determinant of their physical and psychological characteristics than was previously believed. As we age from infants to adulthood, some of our DNA bases are modified by methylation: in other words, a methyl (CH_3) group replaces a hydrogen. In humans and other mammals, this mainly happens to cytosine (C) bases, while in bacteria it is mainly adenosine (A) bases which are methylated. The biomolecule that serves as the methyl group donor in both cases is called S-adenosyl methionine, or 'SAM' for short.

Methylation of cytosine



Methylation of adenine



In mammals, gene methylation seems to occur in different patterns in different people - even in identical twins - in response to environmental factors. Methylation also seems to have the effect of amplifying or muting a gene's function, by altering how it interacts with regulatory proteins. The combined effect of many gene methylation events can be profound, as groups of interrelated genes are 'turned up' or 'turned down' in concert. Professor Spector thinks that the many differences between Barbara and Christine probably stem, at least in part, from differences in how their genes have been methylated over the course of their lives so far.

In this chapter, we delve for the first time into 'real' organic reactions, beyond the simple proton transfer events of Bronsted acid-base reactions that we looked at in chapter 7. The methylation of DNA is an excellent example of a type of organic reaction called nucleophilic substitution, to which we were introduced briefly in chapter 6 as a model for learning about some of the fundamental concepts of organic reactivity. Now we will delve more deeply into three crucial players in this bond-forming and bond-breaking process: the nucleophile, the electrophile, and the leaving group. In doing so, we will get a chance to practice and refine our skills in drawing organic reaction mechanisms using the curved arrow formality, and we will think about what a transition state and a reactive intermediate of a reaction might look like, and how the structure of these species determines the regiochemical and stereochemical outcome of a nucleophilic substitution reaction. Perhaps, in the time spent working on this chapter, some of the cytosines in your DNA will undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions to become methylated - and who knows how this will influence who you go on to become?

This page titled [7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

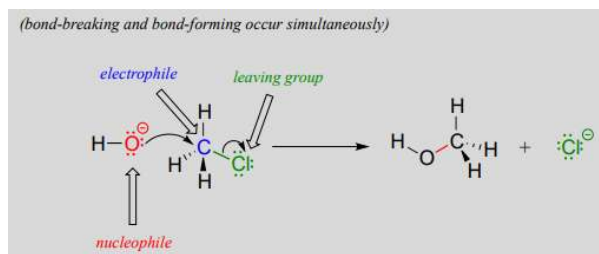
- **8.1: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions** by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution

As we begin our study of nucleophilic substitution reactions, we will focus at first on simple alkyl halide compounds. While the specific reactions we'll initially consider do not occur in living things, it is nonetheless useful to start with alkyl halides as a model to illustrate some fundamental ideas that we must cover. Later, we will move on to apply what we have learned about alkyl halides to the larger and more complex biomolecules that are undergoing nucleophilic substitution right now in your own cells.

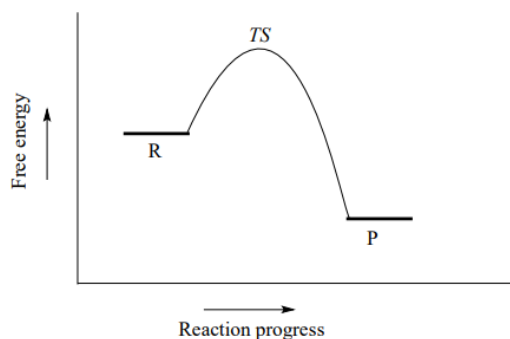
The S_N2 mechanism

You may recall from our brief introduction to the topic in chapter 6 that there are two mechanistic models for how a nucleophilic substitution reaction can proceed. In one mechanism, the reaction is concerted: it takes place in a single step, and bond-forming and bond-breaking occur simultaneously. This is illustrated by the reaction between chloromethane and hydroxide ion:

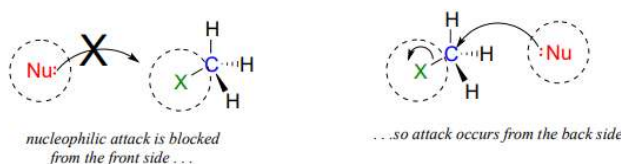


Recall that the hydroxide ion in this reaction is acting as a nucleophile (an electron-rich, nucleus-loving species), the carbon atom of chloromethane is acting as an electrophile (an electron-poor species which is attracted to electrons), and the chloride ion is the leaving group (where the name is self-evident).

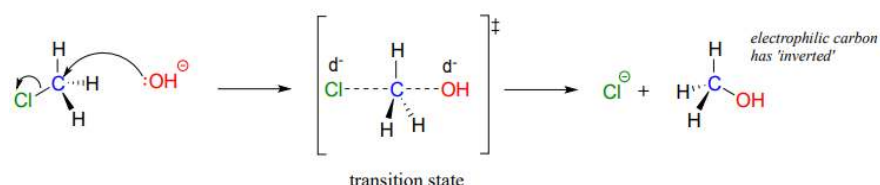
Organic chemists refer to this mechanism by the term ' S_N2 ', where S stands for 'substitution', the subscript N stands for 'nucleophilic', and the number 2 refers to the fact that this is a bimolecular reaction: the overall rate depends on a step in which two separate species collide. A potential energy diagram for this reaction shows the transition state (TS) as the highest point on the pathway from reactants to products.



The geometry of an S_N2 reaction is specific: the reaction can only occur when the nucleophile collides with the electrophilic carbon from the opposite side relative to the leaving group. This is referred to as backside attack. Approach from the front side simply doesn't work: the leaving group - which, like the nucleophile is an electron-rich group - blocks the way.



The result of backside attack is that the bonding geometry at the electrophilic carbon *inverts* (turns inside-out) as the reaction proceeds.



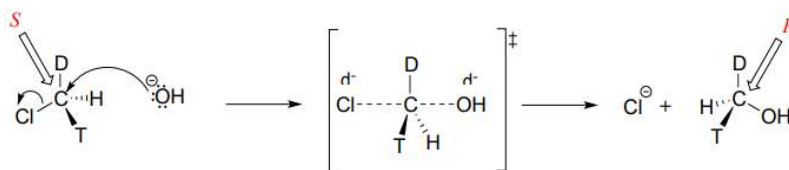
The transition state of the reaction is illustrated by drawing dotted lines to represent the covalent bonds that are in the process of breaking or forming. Because the formal charge on the oxygen nucleophile changes from negative one to zero as the reaction proceeds, and conversely the charge on the chlorine leaving group changes from zero to negative one, at the transition state both atoms are shown bearing a partial negative charge (the symbol δ^-). One other drawing convention for transition states is to use brackets, with the double-dagger symbol in subscript.

Notice that the transition state for an S_N2 reaction has trigonal bipyramidal geometry: the nucleophile, electrophile, and leaving group form a straight line, and the three substituents on carbon (all hydrogen atoms in this case) are arranged in the same plane at 120° angles.

? Exercise 8.2.1

What is the measure in degrees) of the $H - C - O$ angle in the S_N2 transition state illustrated above?

Consider what would happen if we were to replace one of the hydrogen atoms in chloromethane with deuterium (the ^2H isotope), and one with tritium (the radioactive ^3H isotope). Now, because it has four different substituents, our carbon electrophile is a chiral center. We'll arbitrarily assume that we start with the *S* enantiomer.



As the hydroxide nucleophile attacks from the backside and the bonding geometry at carbon inverts, we see that the stereochemistry of the product reflects this inversion: we end up with the *R* enantiomer of the chiral product.

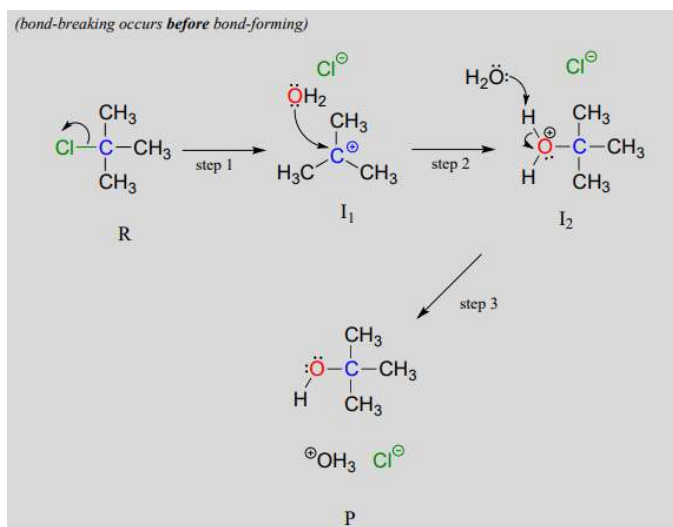
S_N2 reactions proceed with inversion of stereochemical configuration at the electrophilic carbon.

[video tutorial/animation: inversion of configuration during SN2 reactions](#)

The S_N1 mechanism

A second model for the nucleophilic substitution reaction is called the S_N1 mechanism. The '1' in S_N1 indicates that the rate-determining step of the reaction is unimolecular: in other words, the rate-determining step involves a single molecule breaking apart (rather than two molecules colliding as was the case in the S_N2 mechanism.)

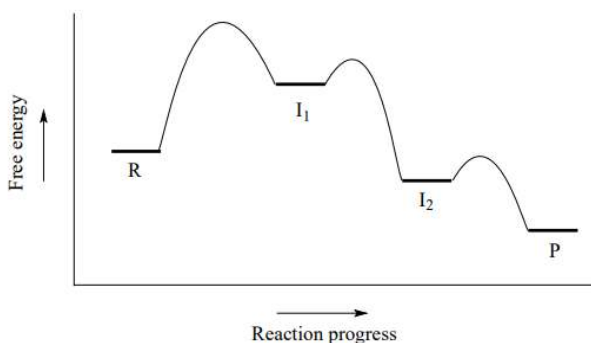
In an S_N1 mechanism the carbon-leaving group bond breaks first, before the nucleophile approaches, resulting in formation of a carbocation intermediate (step 1):



A carbocation is a powerful electrophile: because the carbon lacks a complete octet of valence electrons, it is 'electron-hungry'. In step 2, a lone pair of electrons on the water nucleophile fills the empty p orbital of the carbocation to form a new bond.

Notice that this is actually a three-step mechanism, with a final, rapid acid-base step leading to the alcohol product.

A potential energy diagram for this $\text{S}_{\text{N}}1$ reaction shows that each of the two positively-charged intermediate stages (I_1 and I_2 in the diagram) can be visualized as a valley in the path of the reaction, higher in energy than both the reactant and product but lower in energy than the transition states.



The first, bond-breaking step is the slowest, rate-determining step - notice it has the highest activation energy and leads to the highest-energy species (I_1 , the carbocation intermediate). Step 2 is rapid: a new covalent bond forms between a carbocation and a water nucleophile, and no covalent bonds are broken. Recall from chapter 7 that Bronsted-Lowry proton transfer steps like step 3 are rapid, with low activation energies.

hydrolysis

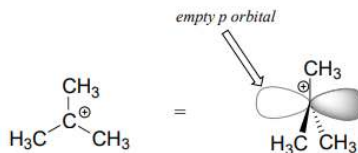
The nucleophilic substitution reactions we have seen so far are examples of hydrolysis. This term is one that you will encounter frequently in organic and biological chemistry. Hydrolysis means 'breaking with water': in a hydrolysis reaction, a water molecule (or hydroxide ion) participates in the breaking of a covalent bond. There are many reaction types other than nucleophilic substitution that can accurately be described as hydrolysis, and we will see several examples throughout the remaining chapters of this book.

Solvolysis is a more general term, used when a bond in a reagent is broken by a solvent molecule: usually, the solvent in question is water or an alcohol such as methanol or ethanol.

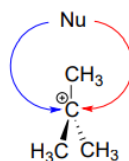
? Exercise 8.2.2

Draw a mechanism for the S_N1 solvolysis of tert-butyl chloride in methanol. What new functional group has been formed?

We saw that S_N2 reactions result in inversion of stereochemical configuration at the carbon center. What about the stereochemical outcome of S_N1 reactions? Recall that a carbocation is sp^2 -hybridized, with an empty p orbital perpendicular to the plane formed by the three sigma bonds:

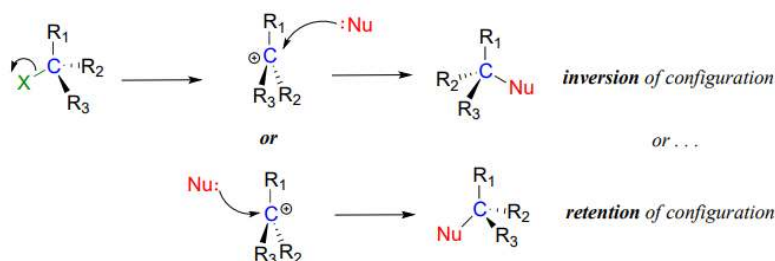


In the second step of an S_N1 reaction, the nucleophile can attack from either side of the carbocation (the leaving group is already gone, and thus cannot block attack from one side like in an S_N2 reaction).



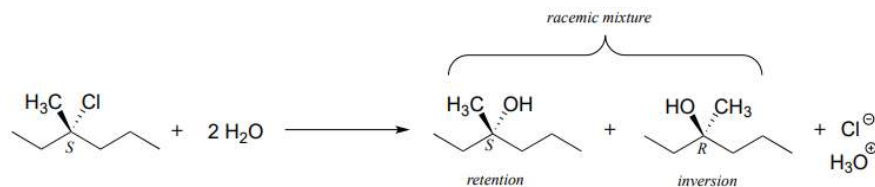
Consider an S_N1 reaction with a chiral tertiary alkyl chloride:

X = leaving group (eg Cl, Br)



Because the nucleophile is free to attack from either side of the carbocation electrophile, the reaction leads to a 50:50 mixture of two stereoisomeric products. In other words: In general nonenzymatic S_N1 reaction can occur with either retention or inversion of configuration at the electrophilic carbon, leading to racemization if the carbon is chiral.

For an example, consider the hydrolysis of (S)-3-chloro-3-methylhexane.



The result of this (nonenzymatic) reaction is a racemic mixture of chiral alcohols.

It is important to remember, however, that enzymatic reactions are in almost all cases very specific with regard to stereochemical outcome. A biochemical S_N1 reaction, as we shall see later, can result in either inversion or retention of configuration at the electrophilic carbon, but generally not a mixture of both: the two reactants are bound with specific geometry in the enzyme's active site, so that the nucleophile can approach from one side only.

(The following exercises refer to nonbiological reactions)

? Exercise 8.2.3

- Draw a complete mechanism for the hydrolysis reaction in the previous figure, showing all bond-breaking and bond-forming steps, and all intermediate species.
- Draw structures representing TS1 and TS2 in the reaction. Use the solid/dash wedge convention to show three dimensions.
- What is the expected optical rotation of the product mixture?
- Could the two organic products be separated on a silica column chromatography?

? Exercise 8.2.4

- Draw the product(s) of the hydrolysis of (R)-3-chloro-3-methyl heptane.
- What can you predict, if anything, about the optical rotation of the product(s)?
- Draw the product(s) of the hydrolysis of (3R,5R)-3-chloro-3,5-dimethyl heptane.
- What can you predict, if anything, about the optical rotation of the product(s)?

Before we go on to look at some actual biochemical nucleophilic substitution reactions, we first need to lay the intellectual groundwork by focusing more closely on the characteristics of the three principal partners in the nucleophilic substitution reaction: the nucleophile, the electrophile, and the leaving group. In addition, we need to consider the carbocation intermediate that plays such a key role in the S_N1 mechanism. For the sake of simplicity, we will continue to use simple, non-biological organic molecules and reaction examples as we work through the basic concepts.

[Video tutorial/animation: SN1 reactions](#)

Contributors

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

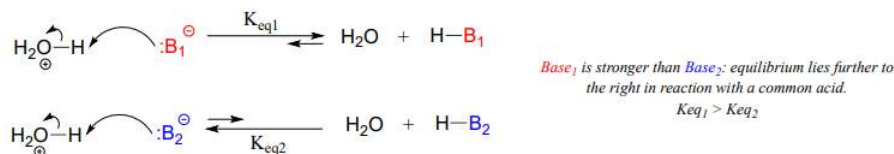
- [8.2: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.2: Nucleophiles

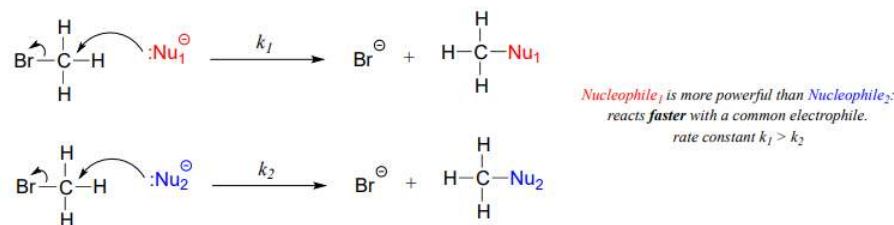
What is a nucleophile?

A nucleophile is an atom or functional group with a pair of electrons (usually a non-bonding, or lone pair) that can be shared. The same, however, can be said about a base: in fact, bases can act as nucleophiles, and nucleophiles can act as bases. What, then, is the difference between a base and a nucleophile?

A Brønsted-Lowry, as you will recall from chapter 7, uses a lone pair of electrons to form a new bond with an acidic proton. We spent much of chapter 7 discussing how to evaluate how basic a species is. Remember that when we evaluate basicity - the strength of a base - we speak in terms of thermodynamics: where does equilibrium lie in a reference acid-base reaction?



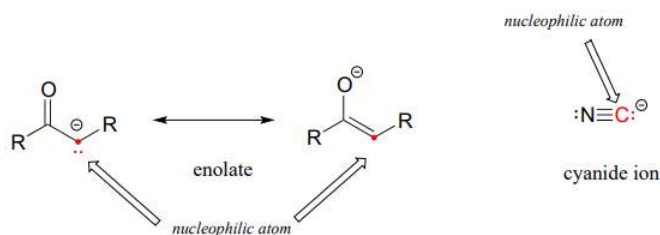
We will spend much of this section discussing how to evaluate how nucleophilic a species is - in other words, its nucleophilicity. A nucleophile shares its lone pair of electrons with an electrophile - an electron-poor atom other than a hydrogen, usually a carbon. When we evaluate nucleophilicity, we are thinking in terms of kinetics - how fast does the nucleophile react with a reference electrophile?



In both laboratory and biological organic chemistry, the most common nucleophilic atoms are oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur, and the most common nucleophilic compounds and functional groups are water/hydroxide ion, alcohols, phenols, amines, thiols, and sometimes carboxylates.

In laboratory (non-biological) reactions, halide (I^- , Br^- , Cl^- , F^-) and azide (N_3^-) anions are also commonly seen acting as nucleophiles in addition to the groups mentioned above.

Carbon atoms can also be nucleophiles - enolate ions (section 7.6) are common carbon nucleophiles in biochemical reactions, while the cyanide ion (CN^-) is just one example of a carbon nucleophile commonly used in the laboratory.



Understanding carbon nucleophiles will be critical when we study, in chapters 12 and 13, the enzyme-catalyzed reactions in which new carbon-carbon bonds are formed in the synthesis of biomolecules such as DNA and fatty acids. In the present chapter, however, we will focus on heteroatom (non-carbon) nucleophiles.

Now, let's consider a number of factors that influence how nucleophilic an atom or functional group is. We'll start with protonation state.

Protonation state

The protonation state of a group has a very large effect on its nucleophilicity. A negatively-charged hydroxide ion is much more nucleophilic (and basic) than a water molecule. In practical terms, this means that a hydroxide nucleophile will react in an S_N2 reaction with chloromethane several orders of magnitude faster than will a water nucleophile.

Likewise, a thiolate anion is more nucleophilic than a neutral thiol, and a neutral amine is nucleophilic, whereas an ammonium cation is not.

In a non-biological context, S_N2 reactions tend to occur with more powerful, anionic nucleophiles, where the nucleophile can be thought of as actively displacing ('pushing') the leaving group off the carbon. S_N1 reactions, in contrast, tend to be solvolysis reactions, with a weak, neutral nucleophile such as water or an alcohol.

Periodic trends in nucleophilicity

Just as with basicity, there are predictable periodic trends associated with nucleophilicity. Moving horizontally across the second row of the periodic table, the trend in nucleophilicity parallels the trend in basicity:

The horizontal periodic trend in nucleophilicity

more nucleophilic $NH_2^- > OH^- > F^-$ less nucleophilic

more nucleophilic $R-NH_2 > R-OH$ less nucleophilic

Recall from section 7.3 that the basicity of atoms decreases as we move vertically down a column on the periodic table: thiolate ions are less basic than alkoxide ions, for example, and bromide ion is less basic than chloride ion, which in turn is less basic than fluoride ion. Recall also that this trend can be explained by considering the increasing size of the 'electron cloud' around the larger ions: the electron density inherent in the negative charge is spread around a larger volume, which tends to increase stability (and thus reduce basicity).

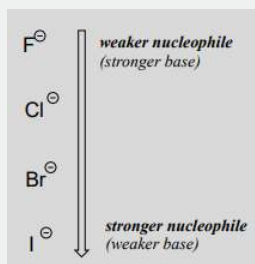
The vertical periodic trend for nucleophilicity is somewhat more complicated than that for basicity, and depends on the solvent in which the reaction is taking place. Take the general example of the S_N2 reaction below:



where Nu^- is one of the halide ions: fluoride, chloride, bromide, or iodide, and X is a common leaving group. If this reaction is occurring in a protic solvent (that is, a solvent that has a hydrogen atom bonded to an oxygen or nitrogen - water, methanol and ethanol are protic solvents), then the reaction will go fastest when iodide is the nucleophile, and slowest when fluoride is the nucleophile, reflecting the relative strength of the nucleophile.

The vertical periodic trend in nucleophilicity in water and other protic solvents

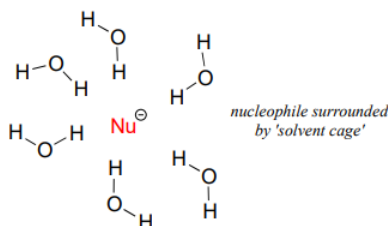
(opposite of the trend in basicity!)



This is the opposite of the vertical periodic trend in basicity (section 7.3), where iodide is the least basic. What is going on here? Shouldn't the stronger base, with its more reactive unbonded valence electrons, also be the stronger nucleophile?

As mentioned above, it all has to do with the solvent. Remember, we are talking now about the reaction running in a protic solvent like water. Protic solvent molecules form strong noncovalent interactions with the electron-rich nucleophile, essentially creating a 'solvent cage' of hydrogen bonds:

artwork needed



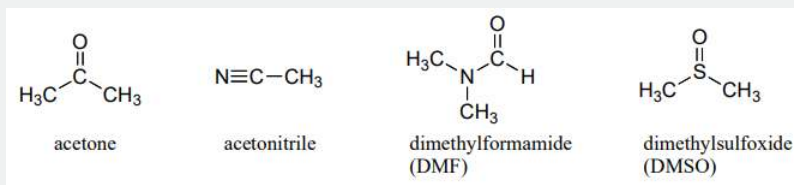
For the nucleophile to attack in an $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ reaction, the nucleophile-solvent hydrogen bonds must be disrupted - in other words, the nucleophilic electrons must 'escape through the bars' of the solvent cage. A weak base like iodide ion interacts weakly with the protons of the solvent, so these interactions are more readily disrupted. Furthermore, because the valence electrons on iodide ion are far from the nucleus, the electron cloud is polarizable - electron density can readily be pulled away from the nucleus, through the solvent cage and toward the electrophile.

A smaller, more basic anion such as fluoride is more highly shielded by stronger interactions with the solvent molecules. The electron cloud of the fluoride ion is smaller and much less polarizable than that of an iodide ion: in water solvent, the larger iodide ion is a more powerful nucleophile than the smaller fluoride ion.

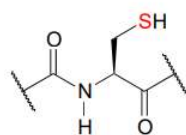
Note

The above discussion of the vertical periodic trend in nucleophilicity applies to biochemical reactions, because the biological solvent is water. The picture changes for laboratory reactions if we switch to a **polar aprotic solvent**, such as acetone, which is polar enough to solvate the polar and ionic compounds in the reaction but is not a hydrogen bond donor, and does not form a strong 'solvent cage' like water does. In acetone and other polar aprotic solvents, the trend in nucleophilicity is the same as the trend in basicity: fluoride is the strongest base and the strongest nucleophile.

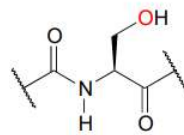
Structures of some of the most common polar aprotic solvents are shown below. These solvents are commonly used in laboratory nucleophilic substitution reactions.



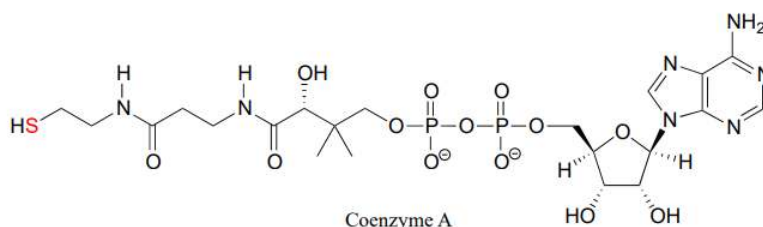
In biological chemistry, the most important implication of the vertical periodic trend in nucleophilicity is that thiols are more *nucleophilic* than alcohols. The thiol group in a cysteine amino acid residue, for example, is more nucleophilic than the alcohol group on a serine, and cysteine often acts as a nucleophile in enzymatic reactions. The thiol group on coenzyme A is another example of a nucleophile we will see often in enzymatic reactions later on. Of course, reactions with oxygen and nitrogen nucleophiles are widespread in biochemistry as well.



cysteine residue



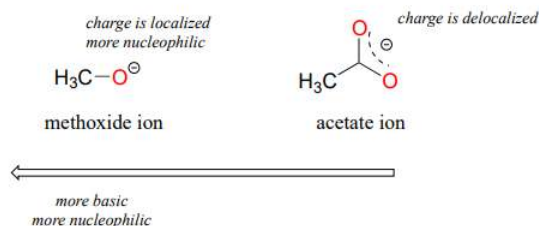
serine residue



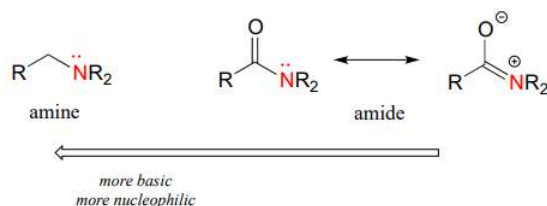
Coenzyme A

Resonance effects on nucleophilicity

Resonance effects also come into play when comparing the inherent nucleophilicity of different molecules. The reasoning involved is the same as that which we used to understand resonance effects on basicity (see section 7.3). If the electron lone pair on a heteroatom is delocalized by resonance, it is inherently less reactive - meaning less nucleophilic, and also less basic. An alkoxide ion, for example, is more nucleophilic and more basic than a carboxylate group, even though in both cases the nucleophilic atom is a negatively charged oxygen. In an alkoxide, the negative charge is localized on a single oxygen, while in the carboxylate the charge is delocalized over two oxygen atoms by resonance.



The nitrogen atom on an amide is less nucleophilic than the nitrogen of an amine, due to the resonance stabilization of the nitrogen lone pair provided by the amide carbonyl group.



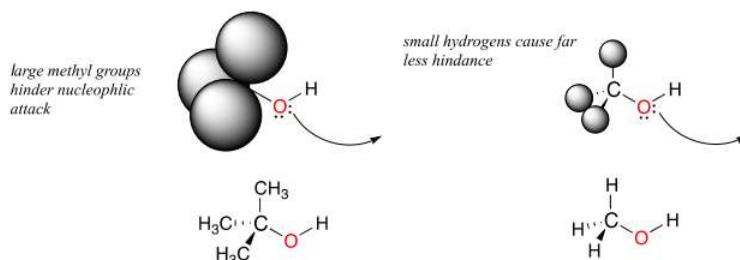
? Exercise 8.3.1

Which amino acid has the more nucleophilic side chain - serine or tyrosine? Explain.

Steric effects on nucleophilicity

Steric hindrance is an important consideration when evaluating nucleophilicity. For example, tert-butanol is less potent as a nucleophile than methanol. The comparatively bulky methyl groups on the tertiary alcohol effectively block the route of attack by

the nucleophilic oxygen, slowing the reaction down considerably (imagine trying to walk through a narrow doorway while carrying three large suitcases!).



A final note: when it comes to comparing the rate of nucleophilic substitution reactions, the strength of the nucleophile only matters for S_N2 reactions. It is irrelevant for S_N1 reactions, because the rate-determining step (when the leaving group departs and a carbocation intermediate forms) does not involve the nucleophile.

[Video tutorial: nucleophiles](#)

? Exercise 8.3.2

Which is the better nucleophile - a cysteine side chain or a methionine side chain? A serine or a threonine? Explain.

? Exercise 8.3.3

In each of the following pairs of molecules/ions, which is expected to react more rapidly with CH_3Cl in acetone solvent? Explain your choice.

- phenolate (deprotonated phenol) or benzoate (deprotonated benzoic acid)?
- water or hydronium ion?
- trimethylamine or triethylamine?
- chloride anion or iodide anion?
- CH_3NH_2 or $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$?
- acetate or trichloroacetate?
- aniline or 4-methoxyaniline?
- phenolate or 2,6-dimethylphenolate?

This page titled [7.2: Nucleophiles](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

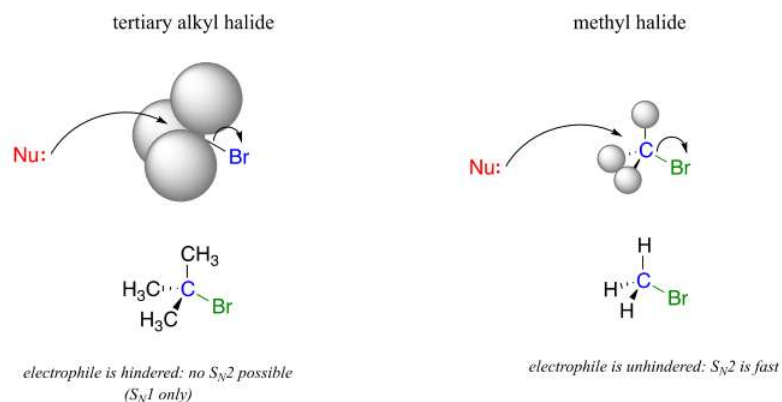
- **8.3: Nucleophiles** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.3: Electrophiles

Next, we turn to electrophiles. In the vast majority of the nucleophilic substitution reactions you will see in this and other organic chemistry texts, the electrophilic atom is a carbon bonded to an electronegative atom, usually oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, or a halogen. The concept of electrophilicity is relatively simple: an electron-poor atom is an attractive target for something that is electron-rich, i.e. a nucleophile. However, we must also consider the effect of steric hindrance on electrophilicity.

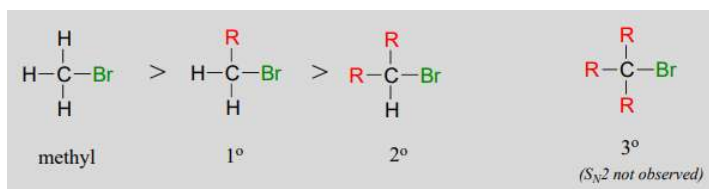
Steric hindrance at the electrophile

One of the most important factors to consider when looking at the electrophile in a nucleophilic substitution reaction is steric hindrance. Consider two hypothetical S_N2 reactions: one in which the electrophile is a methyl carbon and another in which it is tertiary carbon.



Because the three substituents on the methyl electrophile are hydrogen atoms, the nucleophile has a relatively clear path for backside attack, and the S_N2 reaction will take place readily. However, backside attack on the tertiary carbon electrophile is blocked by the bulky methyl groups, preventing access to the site of electrophilicity.

S_N2 reactions occur at methyl, primary, and secondary carbon electrophiles. The degree of steric hindrance determines relative rates of reaction: unhindered methyl electrophiles react fastest, and more hindered secondary carbon electrophiles react slowest, assuming all other reactions conditions are identical. S_N2 reactions do not occur to an appreciable extent at tertiary carbon electrophiles.

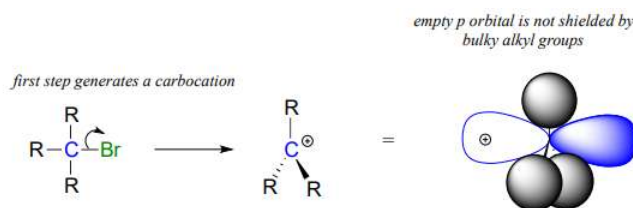


? Exercise 8.4.1

Which would be expected to react more rapidly in an S_N2 reaction with an azide ion (N_3^-) nucleophile in acetone solvent: 1-bromo-2,2-dimethylbutane or 1-bromo-3-methylbutane?

What about the S_N1 pathway? Steric hindrance around the electrophilic carbon is not a significant factor in slowing down an S_N1 reaction. This makes perfect sense from a geometric point of view: the limitations imposed by sterics are significant in an S_N2 displacement because the electrophile being attacked is an sp^3 -hybridized tetrahedral carbon with relatively 'tight' angles of 109.5° . Remember that in an S_N1 mechanism, the leaving group leaves first, and then the nucleophile attacks an sp^2 -hybridized carbocation intermediate, which has trigonal planar geometry with 'open' 120° angles.

artwork needed



With this open geometry, the empty p orbital of the carbocation is no longer significantly shielded from the approaching nucleophile by the bulky alkyl groups, and is an 'easy target' for a nucleophile: this step is fast, and is not the rate-determining step for an S_N1 reaction.

Carbocation stability

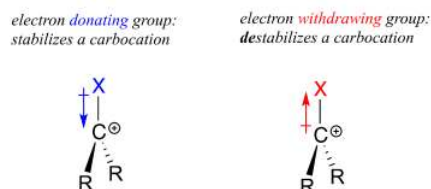
What, then, are the characteristics of an electrophile that favor an S_N1 reaction pathway as opposed to an S_N2 pathway? We know that the rate-limiting step of an S_N1 reaction is the first step: loss of the leaving group and formation of the carbocation intermediate. Accordingly, the rate of an S_N1 reaction depends to a large extent on the stability of the carbocation intermediate.

The critical question now becomes:

What stabilizes a carbocation?

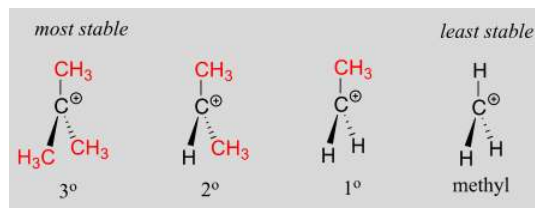
Think back to Chapter 7, when we were learning how to evaluate the strength of an acid. The critical question there was: "how stable is the conjugate base that results when this acid donates its proton"? In many cases, this conjugate base was an anion – a center of excess electron density. Anything that can draw some of this electron density away – in other words, any electron withdrawing group – will stabilize the anion.

Conversely, a carbocation is stabilized by an electron donating group, and **destabilized** by an electron withdrawing group.

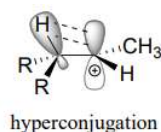


A positively charged species such as a carbocation is electron-poor, and thus anything which donates electron density to the center of electron poverty will help to stabilize it. Alkyl groups, because of the electrons in their carbon-carbon and carbon-hydrogen bonds, are weak electron-donating groups, and will stabilize nearby carbocations. What this means is that, in general, more substituted carbocations are more stable: a tert-butyl carbocation, for example, is more stable than an isopropyl carbocation. Primary carbocations are highly unstable and not often observed as reaction intermediates; methyl cations are even less stable.

More substituted carbocations are more stable:

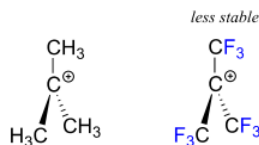


Another way to explain this trend in carbocation stability involves the phenomenon of hyperconjugation, in which the empty p orbital of a carbocation is stabilized by overlap with a σ bond on an adjacent carbon. This overlap effectively spreads the positive charge over a larger area. The figure below shows the empty p orbital of a secondary carbocation being stabilized by hyperconjugation with an adjacent C–H σ bond.

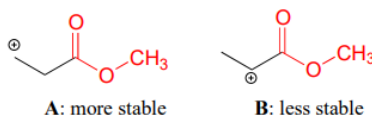


Hyperconjugation is not possible with a methyl cation as there is no adjacent σ bond available to overlap the empty p orbital. As the degree of substitution on a carbocation increases, so does the capacity for stabilizing hyperconjugation interactions.

The presence of an electron-withdrawing group - such as a fluorine atom - will significantly destabilize a carbocation through the inductive effect.

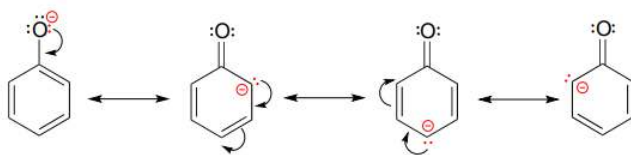


Carbonyl groups are electron-withdrawing by inductive effects, due to the polarity of the $C=O$ double bond. It is possible to demonstrate in the laboratory (we'll see how in problem 14.x) that carbocation A below is more stable than carbocation B, even though A is a primary carbocation and B is secondary.

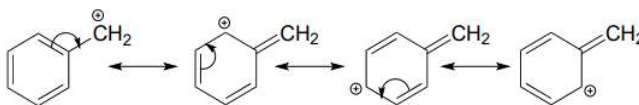


The positive charge in cation B is closer to the electron withdrawing carbonyl substitution, and as we learned in section 7.3, the inductive effect of an electron withdrawing group decreases with distance.

Stabilization of a carbocation can also occur through resonance effects. Recall from section 7.4 that the negative charge on a phenolate ion is stabilized by resonance, because the charge can be delocalized to three of the carbons on the aromatic ring.



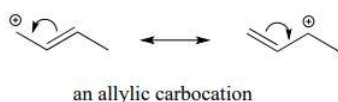
A positive charge is also stabilized when it can be delocalized over more than one atom. Consider a benzylic carbocation, where the positively-charged carbon is bonded directly to an aromatic ring. A benzylic carbocation is stabilized by the resonance electron-donating effect of the aromatic ring. Three additional resonance structures can be drawn for the carbocation in which the positive charge is located on one of three aromatic carbons:



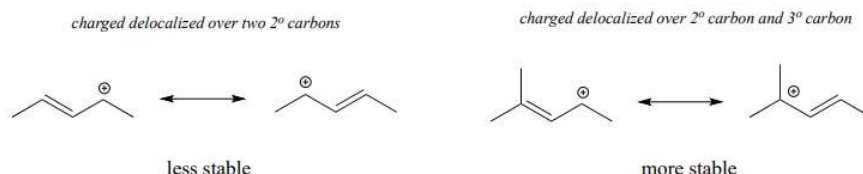
? Exercise 8.4.2

Fill in the missing numbers in this statement: The conjugated π system in the benzylic carbocation above is composed of _____ π orbitals overlapping to share _____ π electrons.

Allylic carbocations, where the positively charged carbon is adjacent to a double bond, are stabilized by resonance delocalization of the positive charge.

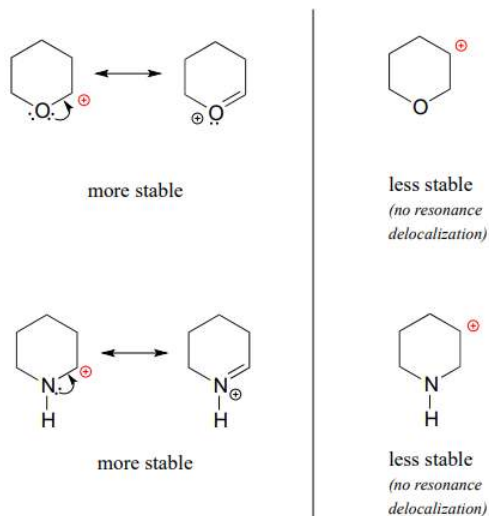


Often, we must consider more than one factor when predicting carbocation stability. For example, the carbocation on the right in the figure below is more stable than the carbocation on the left. Both are allylic with the charge delocalized over two carbons, but on the more stable carbocation, one of the carbons is tertiary.



Because heteroatoms such as oxygen and nitrogen are more electronegative than carbon, you might expect that they would be carbocation-destabilizing electron withdrawing groups. In fact, the opposite is often true: if the oxygen or nitrogen atom is in the right position, the overall effect can be carbocation stabilization. Although these heteroatoms are indeed electron withdrawing groups by induction, they can be electron donating groups by resonance, and, as we learned earlier (section 7.3) in the context of acid-base chemistry, resonance effects are in general more powerful than inductive effects when the two operate in opposite directions.

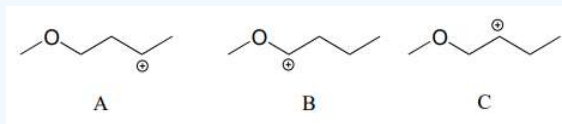
Consider the two pairs of carbocation species below:



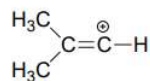
In the more stable carbocations, the heteroatom acts as an electron donating group by resonance: in effect, the lone pair on the heteroatom is available to delocalize the positive charge. Note also that every atom in the major resonance contributor has a complete octet of valence electrons.

? Exercise 8.4.3

Rank the following carbocations from most to least stable:



Finally, **vinyllic** carbocations, in which the positive charge resides on a double-bonded carbon, are highly unstable.



a vinyllic carbocation
(very unstable)

? Exercise 8.4.4

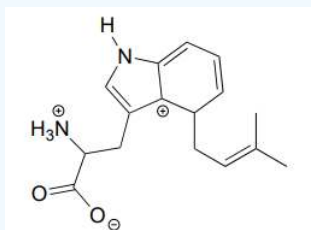
Explain why vinyllic carbocations are unstable. (Hint:)

Hint

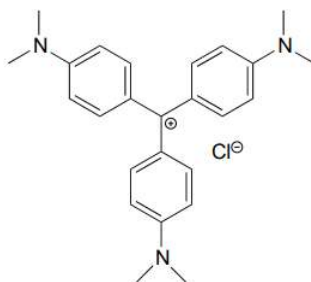
think about hybridization and electronegativity.

? Exercise 8.4.5

The carbocation below is an intermediate species in a reaction that is part of the biosynthesis of a hallucinogenic compound in a fungus. Draw a resonance contributor that shows how it is stabilized by resonance with the nitrogen atom.



For the most part, carbocations - even 'relatively stable' carbocations such as those that are tertiary and/or benzylic - are still highly reactive, transient intermediate species in organic reactions, which briefly form and then react again right away. However, there are some unusual examples of carbocation species that are so stable that they can be put in a jar and stored on the shelf as a salt. Crystal violet is the common name for the chloride salt of the carbocation whose structure is shown below. Notice the structural possibilities for extensive resonance delocalization of the positive charge, and the presence of three electron-donating amine groups.



crystal violet

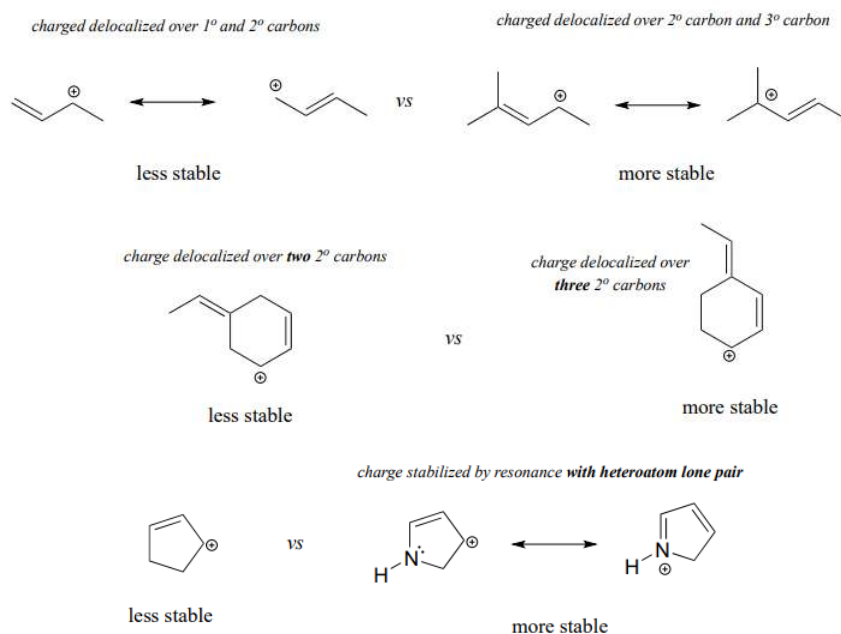
? Exercise 8.4.6

- Draw a resonance structure of the crystal violet cation in which the positive charge is delocalized to one of the nitrogen atoms.
- Notice that crystal violet is deeply colored. Explain why you could have predicted this from looking at its chemical structure.
- The conjugated system of crystal violet consists of how many overlapping p orbitals sharing how many p electrons?

Summary of factors influencing carbocation stability

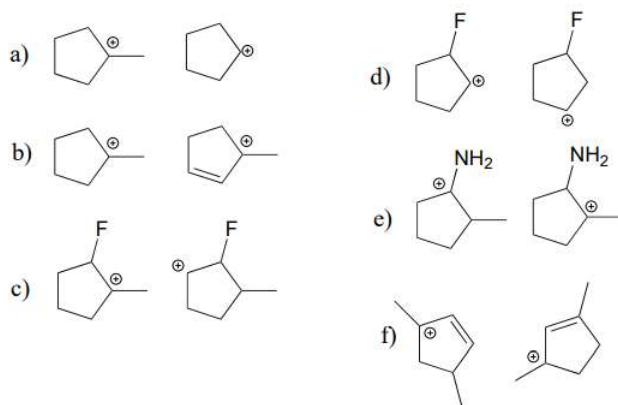
- More substituted carbocations are more stable than less substituted carbocation (eg. tertiary carbocations are more stable than secondary carbocations).
- Nearby electronegative atoms can decrease carbocation stability by the inductive effect.
- Allylic and benzylic carbocations are stabilized by resonance delocalization of the positive charge.
- Delocalization of the positive charge by resonance with the lone pair electrons on a heteroatom contributes to carbocation stability.

Below are three examples illustrating how we can make predictions about relative carbocation stability:



? Exercise 8.4.7

State which carbocation in each pair below is more stable, or if they are expected to be approximately equal. Explain your reasoning.



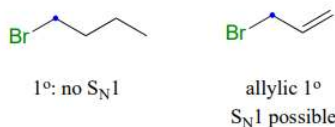
Now, back to our discussion of the electrophile in an S_N1 reaction:

An S_N1 reaction requires a stabilized carbocation intermediate. The more stable the relevant carbocation intermediate, the more favored the S_N1 reaction pathway.

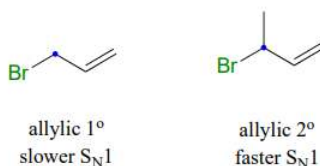
S_N1 reactions in general do not occur at methyl or primary carbon electrophiles: the carbocation intermediates involved would be too unstable and the rate-determining (carbocation-generating) step would have a very high energy barrier. Substitution on these electrophiles will occur through the S_N2 pathway.

The S_N1 reaction pathway is possible, however, with secondary and tertiary carbon electrophiles, or with any other carbon electrophile in which departure of the leaving group generates a carbocation which is stabilized by resonance.

For example: a primary alkyl bromide would not be expected to undergo nucleophilic substitution by the S_N1 pathway. An allylic primary alkyl bromide, on the other hand, would generate a relatively stable allylic carbocation and thus the S_N1 pathway is possible.

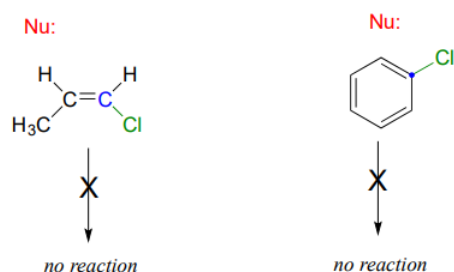


An allylic secondary alkyl bromide would undergo S_N1 substitution more rapidly than the allylic primary alkyl bromide, because the relevant carbocation is more substituted and thus more stable.



sp^2 -hybridized carbons

Nucleophilic substitution generally does not occur at sp^2 -hybridized carbons, either by the S_N2 or S_N1 pathway.



Bonds on sp^2 -hybridized carbons are inherently shorter and stronger than bonds on sp^3 -hybridized carbons, meaning that it is harder to break the bond between an sp^2 carbon and a potential leaving group (such as the chlorine atom in the figure above). In addition, steric considerations play a part here: in order to attack from behind the leaving group in an S_N2 -like fashion, the nucleophile would need to approach in the plane of the carbon-carbon double bond.

Substitution by an S_N1 pathway is equally unlikely because of the inherent instability of a vinylic (double-bonded) carbocation.

This page titled [7.3: Electrophiles](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [8.4: Electrophiles](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.4: Leaving Groups

Next, we investigate what makes a good leaving group. It's really quite straightforward: everything that we learned in chapter 7 about evaluating base strength will apply to leaving groups:

Weaker bases are better leaving groups

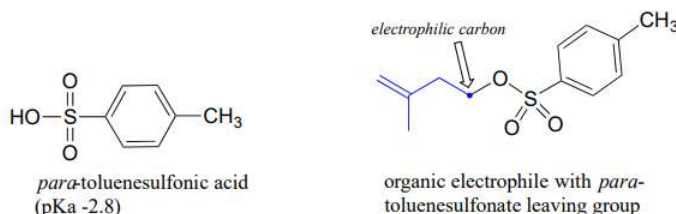
In our general discussion of nucleophilic substitution reactions, we have until now been using chloride ion as our common leaving group. Alkyl chlorides are indeed common reactants in laboratory nucleophilic substitution reactions, as are alkyl bromides and alkyl iodides. Iodide, which is the least basic of the four common halides (**F**, **Cl**, **Br**, and **I**), is the best leaving group among them. Fluoride is the least effective leaving group among the halides, because fluoride anion is the most basic. This rule applies to both S_N2 and S_N1 reactions, because in both cases the rate-determining step involves loss of the leaving group.

best leaving group **I**- > **Br**- > **Cl**- > **F**- worst leaving group

This trend is evident when you compare the relative rates of S_N2 reactions of four halomethanes with a common nucleophile and solvent: iodomethane reacts fastest, fluoromethane the slowest.

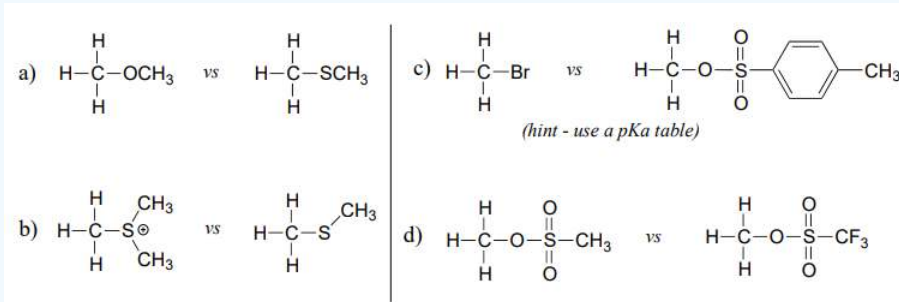
fastest S_N2 reaction $CH_3I > CH_3Br > CH_3Cl > CH_3F$ slowest S_N2 reaction

The conjugate base of toluenesulfonic acid is a leaving group commonly used in the organic synthesis laboratory. Toluenesulfonic acid is a strong organic acid with a pK_a of -2.8, so its conjugate base is a weak base and excellent leaving group.



? Exercise 8.5.1

In each pair (A and B) below, which electrophile would be expected to react more rapidly with cyanide ion nucleophile in acetone solvent? Explain your reasoning.



Beginning later in this chapter and throughout the rest of our study of organic reactivity, we will see examples of leaving group 'activation': in other words, conversion of a strong base/poor leaving group into a weak base/good leaving group. In some cases this is as simple as protonation: an acidic group may be positioned in the active site in order to protonate a poor leaving group (eg. hydroxide ion in the case of an alcohol) as it leaves, thus converting it into a weak base and good leaving group. In many other enzymatic reactions, alcohols are converted into phosphates, which can be excellent biochemical leaving groups. We will learn much more about the structure and reactions of organic phosphate compounds in chapter 9.

This page titled [7.4: Leaving Groups](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **8.5: Leaving Groups** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions

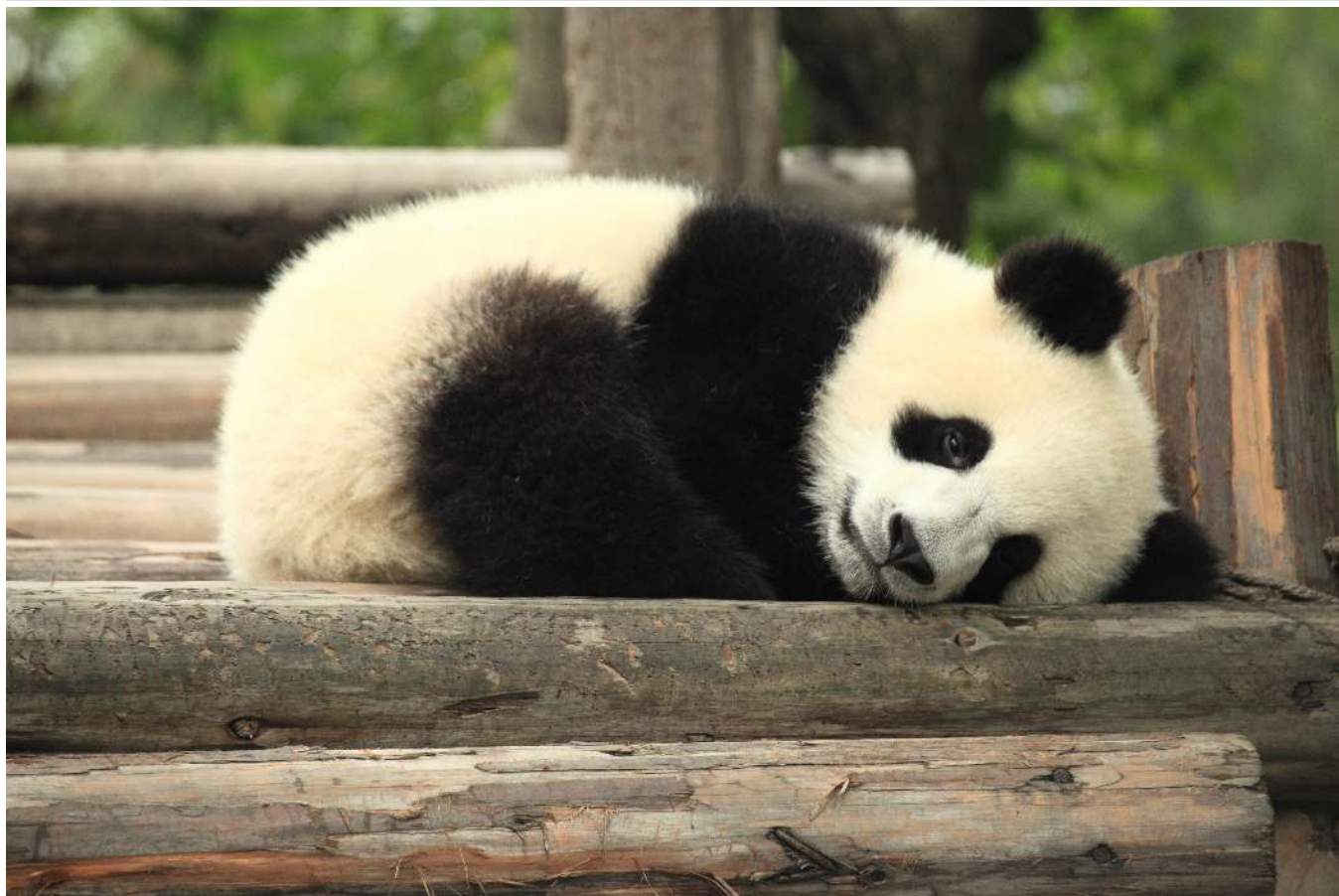


Figure 10.1.1 : Panda (photo credit: <https://www.flickr.com/photos/gzlu/>)

Introduction

It's possible that the fuel for the car you drive thirty years from now will come from the back end of a panda. Not literally, of course – but it just might turn out that future biofuel technology will be derived in part from the stuff that workers have to clean out of the enclosure housing Ya Ya and Le Le, the two resident pandas at the Memphis Zoo in . At least, that's the hope of Dr. Ashli Brown, a biochemistry professor at Tennessee State University.

First, a little background. If you are like most people in the United States, you are already burning ethanol every time you drive: in 2012, the U.S. Department of Energy reports that over 13 million gallons of ethanol were sold at gas stations nationwide, most often as a 10% mixture along with 90% conventional gasoline. The ethanol we burn today is made by fermenting the sugars present in edible corn. The use of corn ethanol, while a significant step forward in the effort to move away from petroleum fuels and towards carbon-neutral, renewable energy sources, is far from a permanent, sustainable solution to the world's ever-increasing energy needs. Growing corn crops requires a lot of energy and expense, from running the large equipment used to plow and harvest the fields, to manufacturing and applying pesticides and fertilizers, all the way to trucking the corn to the ethanol plant. In fact, some calculation methods suggest that more energy goes into producing a gallon of corn-based ethanol than is released when the ethanol is burned.

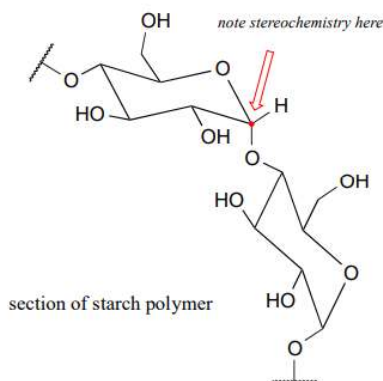
Moreover, growing corn requires a lot of water, and takes up land which otherwise could be used for growing food, or preserved as a natural habitat. A recent study by scientists in South Dakota reported that between 2006 and 2011, a full 1.3 million acres of wetland and prairie were plowed over and converted to biofuel crop production in five midwestern states.

What would be much better in the long run is if we could produce ethanol or other biofuels not from resource-intensive food crops like corn, but from non-edible plant materials: grasses, trees, and agricultural byproducts such as the cobs and stalks from corn

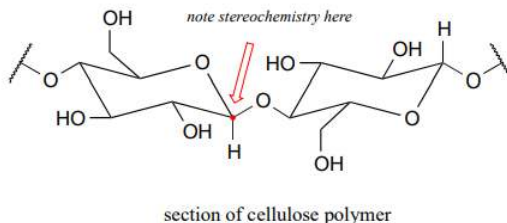
plants. Switchgrass, for example, is a native North American prairie grass that is thought to have high potential for biofuel production.

So if we can make ethanol from corn, couldn't we just change over to switchgrass using the same technology?

Unfortunately, it's not nearly that simple. Ethanol is made by 'feeding' glucose to living yeast cells, allowing them to break down the sugar into ethanol – a metabolic process called fermentation. Corn kernels contain sugar in the form of starch, a polysaccharide of linked glucose molecules. Enzymes called 'amylases' are used to break up the starch polymer into individual glucose molecules (as well as two-glucose units called cellobiose), which are then fermented by the yeast.



The rest of the corn plant – the stalks, leaves, and cobs – is composed in large part of another glucose polymer called cellulose.



Cellulose is a major component of plant cell walls, and is the most abundant organic compound on the planet - an enormous source of glucose for fermentation! The problem, from a renewable energy perspective, is how to get at the glucose monomers that make up the polymer. Look closely at the bond connecting two glucose monomers in starch, and then compare it to the same bond in cellulose. They both link the same two carbons of glucose, but with opposite stereochemistry. Recall that enzymes are very sensitive to the stereochemical configuration of their substrate molecules. It should come as no surprise, then, that the amylase enzymes which are so efficient at breaking apart starch are completely ineffective at breaking apart cellulose. Other enzymes, known as cellulases, are needed for this job. These enzymes do exist in nature: just think about what happens to tree branches, leaves, and other cellulose-rich plant matter that lies on the forest floor. These slowly rot away, the cellulose broken apart by cellulase enzymes in microscopic fungi.

The key word here, though, is 'slowly'. Fungi living on the forest floor are not in any great hurry to degrade the leaves and wood around them – the cellulose is not going anywhere. Fungal cellulases are, comparatively speaking, very slow, inefficient enzymes. Herein lies the biggest challenge to the development of economically viable production of ethanol from cellulosic sources such as switchgrass or wood. Breaking the glucose-glucose bonds in cellulose is the main bottleneck in the whole process.

This is where the pandas come in.

Pandas live primarily on a diet of bamboo, obtaining their energy from the cellulose in the plant. Like other plant-eaters such as cows, horses, and sheep, pandas do not make their own cellulase enzymes. Rather, they rely on a diverse population of symbiotic microbes inhabiting their digestive tracts to do the job of cellulose digestion for them. Unlike the microbes living the slow-paced lifestyle of the forest floor, though, the panda's microbes don't have a lot of time to spare - the food is moving through the system pretty quickly. In theory, evolutionary pressure should have resulted in panda-gut microbes with speedy cellulase enzymes, and that

is what Dr. Ashli Brown at Tennessee State was hoping to find as she and her research students analyzed panda feces from the Memphis Zoo. They have had some success: at the fall, 2013 meeting of the American Chemical Society, Dr. Brown announced that her group, working in cooperation with colleagues at the University of Wisconsin, had found over forty cellulose-digesting bacteria, courtesy of Ya Ya and Le Le. The next step is to clone the cellulase- encoding genes, use the DNA to produce recombinant enzyme, and see just how fast they are.

Other less cuddly and photogenic animals are also being studied with similar goals in mind. Dr. Falk Warnecke, working at the U.S. Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute in Northern California, has been investigating the microbes that live in the guts of wood-eating termites, and many other researchers around the world are interested in the symbiotic bugs which inhabit the rumen of cows and sheep.

The problematic chemical reaction catalyzed by cellulase enzymes is, in organic chemistry terminology, an 'acetal hydrolysis'. Acetals are derived from aldehydes. The reactions that occur at the carbonyl carbon of aldehydes and ketones is absolutely central to the chemistry of carbohydrates such as starch and cellulose, and it is this chemistry that is the subject of the chapter we are about to begin.

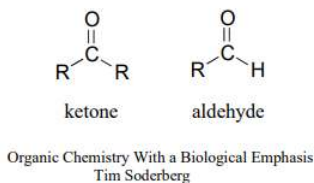
This page titled [7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.1: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

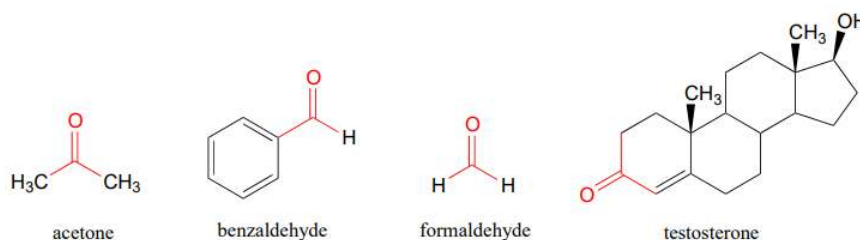
7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview

The aldehyde and ketone functional groups

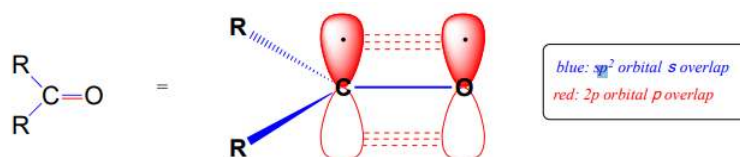
Recall from chapter 1 that the ketone functional group is made up of a carbonyl bonded to two carbons, while in an aldehyde one (or both) of the neighboring atoms is a hydrogen.



You probably are familiar with the examples shown below: acetone, the simplest ketone compound, is the solvent in nail polish remover, benzaldehyde is the flavoring in maraschino cherries, and formaldehyde (a special case in which the carbonyl carbon is bonded to hydrogens on both sides) is the nasty-smelling stuff that was used to preserve the unlucky frog that you dissected in high school biology class. The male sex hormone testosterone contains a ketone group in addition to alcohol and alkene groups.

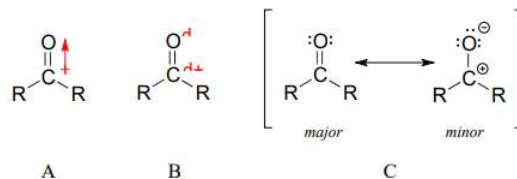


Recall from chapter 2 the bonding picture in a ketone or aldehyde: the carbonyl carbon is sp^2 hybridized, with its three trigonal planar sp^2 orbitals forming σ bonds with orbitals on the oxygen and on the two carbon or hydrogen atoms. The remaining unhybridized $2p$ orbital is perpendicular to the plane formed by the sp^2 orbitals, and forms a π bond through a side-by-side overlap with a $2p$ orbital on the oxygen. The σ and π bonds between the carbon and oxygen combine to make the $\text{C}=\text{O}$ double bond that defines the carbonyl functionality.



Nucleophilic addition

The carbon-oxygen double bond is polar: oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, so electron density is higher on the oxygen end of the bond and lower on the carbon end. Recall that bond polarity can be depicted with a dipole arrow (A in the figure below), or by showing the oxygen as bearing a partial negative charge and the carbonyl carbon a partial positive charge (B).

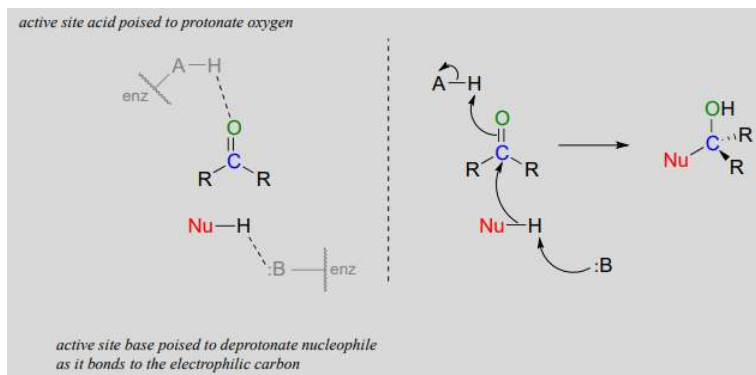


A third way to illustrate the carbon-oxygen dipole (C in the figure above) is to consider the two main resonance contributors: the major form, which is what you typically see drawn in Lewis structures, and a minor but very important contributor in which both

electrons in the π bond are localized on the oxygen, giving it a full negative charge. The latter depiction shows the carbon with an empty $2p$ orbital and a full positive charge.

However the bond polarity is depicted, the end result is that the carbonyl carbon is electron-poor - in other words, it is an electrophile. In addition, the trigonal planar geometry means that the carbonyl group is unhindered). Thus, it is an excellent target for attack by an electron-rich nucleophilic group, a mechanistic step called nucleophilic addition:

Nucleophilic addition to an aldehyde or ketone (enzymatic)

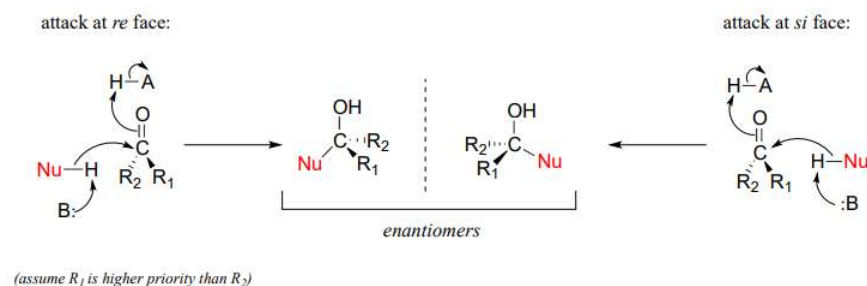


Notice the acid-base catalysis that is going on in this generalized mechanism: in the enzyme active site, a basic group is poised to deprotonate the nucleophile (thus enhancing its nucleophilicity) as begins to attack the carbonyl carbon, while at the same time an acidic proton on another active site group is poised just above the carbonyl oxygen (thus enhancing the electrophilicity of the carbon), ready to protonate the oxygen and neutralize any negative charge that builds up.

Stereochemistry of nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl

Recall from section 3.11B that when the two groups adjacent to a carbonyl are not the same, we can distinguish between the *re* and *si* 'faces' of the planar structure.

The concept of a trigonal planar group having two distinct faces comes into play when we consider the stereochemical outcome of a nucleophilic addition reaction. Notice that in the course of a carbonyl addition reaction, the hybridization of the carbonyl carbon changes from sp^2 to sp^3 , meaning that the bond geometry changes from trigonal planar to tetrahedral. If the two R groups are not equivalent, then a chiral center is created upon addition of the nucleophile. The configuration of the new chiral center depends upon which side of the carbonyl plane the nucleophile attacks from.



If the reaction is catalyzed by an enzyme, the stereochemistry of addition is (as you would expect) tightly controlled, and leads to one stereoisomer exclusively- the nucleophilic and electrophilic substrates are bound in specific positions within the active site, so that attack must occur specifically from one side and not the other. Nonenzymatic reactions of this type often result in a 50:50 mixture of stereoisomers, but it is also possible that one stereoisomer may be more abundant, depending on the structure of the reactants and the conditions under which the reaction takes place. We'll see some examples of this phenomenon soon when we look at cyclic forms of sugar molecules.

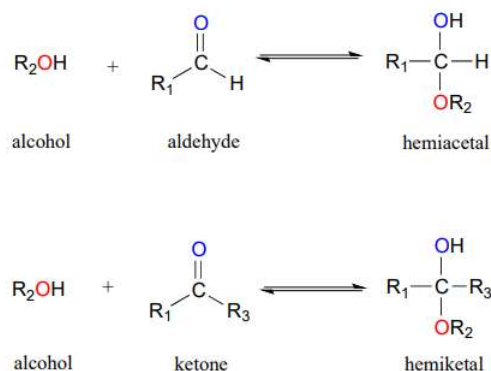
This page titled [7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **10.2: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

Overview

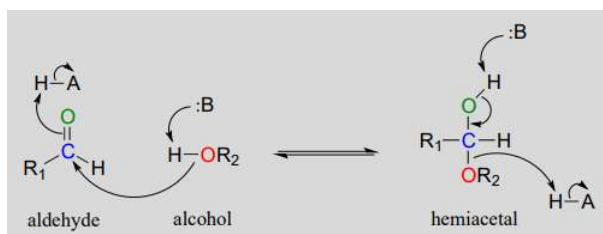
One of the most important examples of a nucleophilic addition reaction in biochemistry, and in carbohydrate chemistry in particular, is the addition of an alcohol to a ketone or aldehyde. When an alcohol adds to an aldehyde, the result is called a hemiacetal; when an alcohol adds to a ketone the resulting product is a hemiketal.



(The prefix 'hemi' (half) is used in each term because, as we shall soon see, addition of a second alcohol nucleophile can occur, resulting in species called acetals and ketals.)

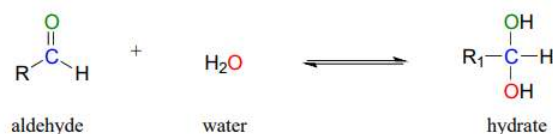
The conversion of an alcohol and aldehyde (or ketone) to a hemiacetal (or hemiketal) is a reversible process. The generalized mechanism for the process at physiological pH is shown below.

Biochemical mechanism of hemiacetal formation:



In general, hemiacetals (and hemiketals) are higher in energy than their aldehyde-alcohol components, so the equilibrium for the reaction lies to the left. As we will soon see in the context of glucose and other sugars, however, five- and six-membered cyclic hemiacetals are considerably lower in energy, and are favored at equilibrium: recall from chapter 3 the inherent stability of five- and six-membered rings.

Aldehydes and ketones, when in aqueous solution, exist in equilibrium with their hydrate form. A hydrate forms as the result of a water molecule adding to the carbonyl carbon of the aldehyde or ketone.

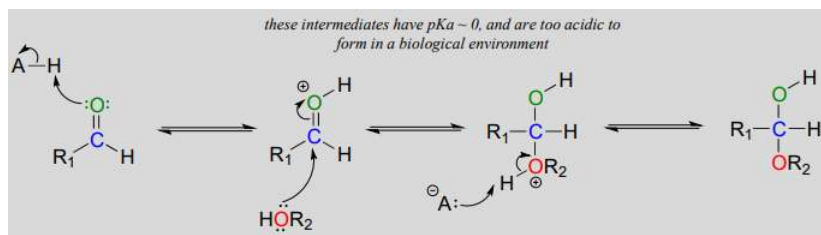


Although you should be aware that aldehyde and ketone groups may exist to a considerable extent in their hydrated forms when in aqueous solution (depending upon their structure), they are usually drawn in their non-hydrated form for the sake of simplicity.

The mechanism we just saw for hemiacetal formation applies to biochemical reactions occurring at physiological *pH*. In the organic laboratory, however, hemiacetal and hemiketal formation usually takes place in the presence of a strong acid. The acid catalyzes the reaction by protonating the carbonyl oxygen, thus increasing the electrophilicity of the carbonyl carbon. Notice in the

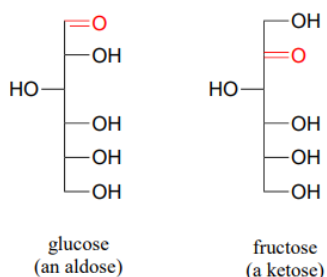
mechanism below that highly acidic intermediates are drawn which would be unreasonable to propose for the corresponding biochemical mechanisms occurring at physiological pH .

Acid-catalyzed hemiacetal formation (non-biological):



Sugars as intramolecular hemiacetals and hemiketals

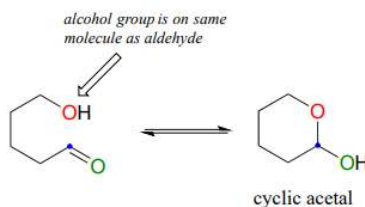
As stated above, the reactions of hemiacetals and hemiketals are central to the chemistry of carbohydrates. Recall that sugar molecules generally contain either an aldehyde or a ketone functional group, in addition to multiple alcohol groups. Aldehyde sugars are often referred to as aldoses; ketone sugars as ketoses. For example, glucose is an aldose, and fructose is a ketose - their structures are drawn below in Fischer projection:



? Exercise 10.3.1

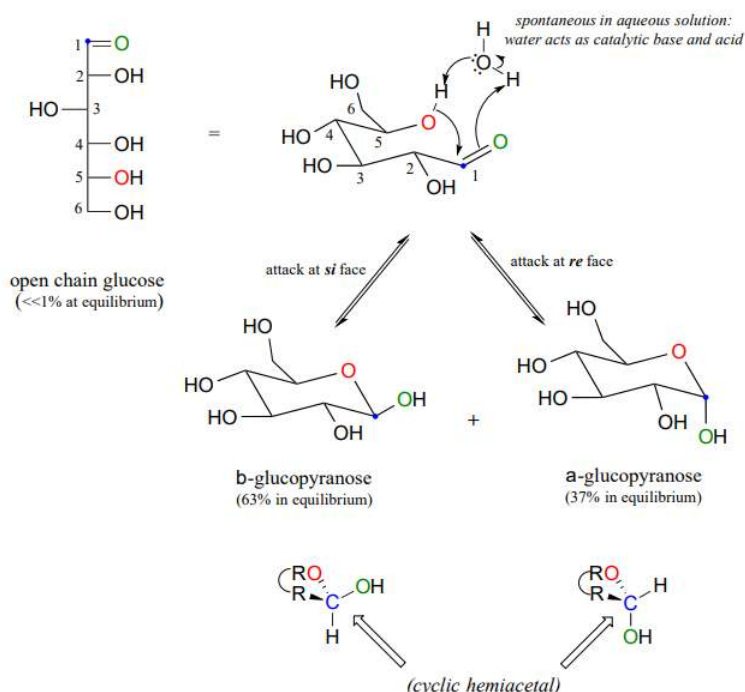
What term describes the relationship between glucose and fructose (in other words, what kind of isomers are they)?

Glucose and fructose are shown above in their open-chain form. However, recall from section 1.3 that in aqueous solution, glucose, fructose, and other sugars of five or six carbons rapidly interconvert between straight-chain and cyclic forms. This occurs through the formation of intramolecular hemiacetals and hemiketals. This simply means that the 'R' group of the alcohol is already covalently attached to the 'R' group of the aldehyde (R1 in our general mechanism).



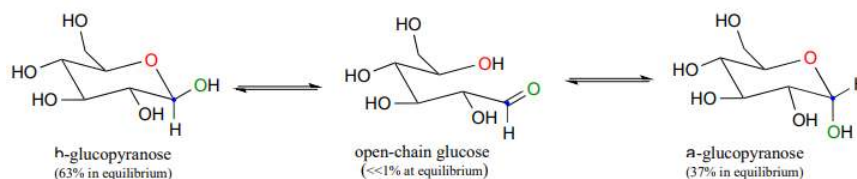
Unlike most of the biochemical reactions you will see in this text, sugar cyclization reactions are not catalyzed by enzymes: they occur spontaneously and reversibly in aqueous solution. For most five- and six-carbon sugars, the cyclic forms predominate in equilibrium.

The cyclic form of glucose is a six-membered ring, with an intramolecular hemiacetal formed by attack of the hydroxyl on carbon #5 to the aldehyde carbon (carbon #1, also called the anomeric carbon in carbohydrate terminology).



The cyclic form of glucose is called glucopyranose. As was discussed above, nucleophilic attack on a planar carbonyl group can occur at either face of the plane, leading to two different stereochemical outcomes - in this case, to two different diastereomers. In carbohydrate nomenclature, these two diastereomers are referred to as the *α* and *β* anomers of glucopyranose.

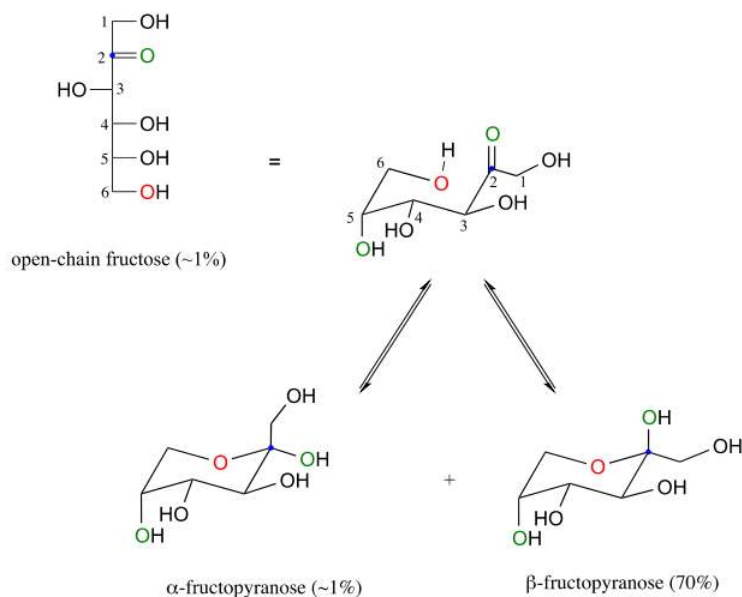
Because the formation of glucopyranose occurs spontaneously without enzyme catalysis, shouldn't equal amounts of these two anomers form? In fact, this does not happen: there is almost twice as much of one anomer than the other at equilibrium. Why is this? Remember (section 3.2) that six-membered rings exist predominantly in the chair conformation, and that the lower energy chair conformation is that in which unfavorable interactions between substituents are minimized – in most cases, this is the conformation in which larger substituents are in the equatorial position. In the lower-energy chair conformation of the major *β* anomer of glucopyranose, all of the hydroxyl groups are in the equatorial position, but in the minor *α* anomer one hydroxyl group is forced into the axial position. As a result, the *α* anomer is higher in energy, and less abundant at equilibrium.



? Exercise 10.3.2

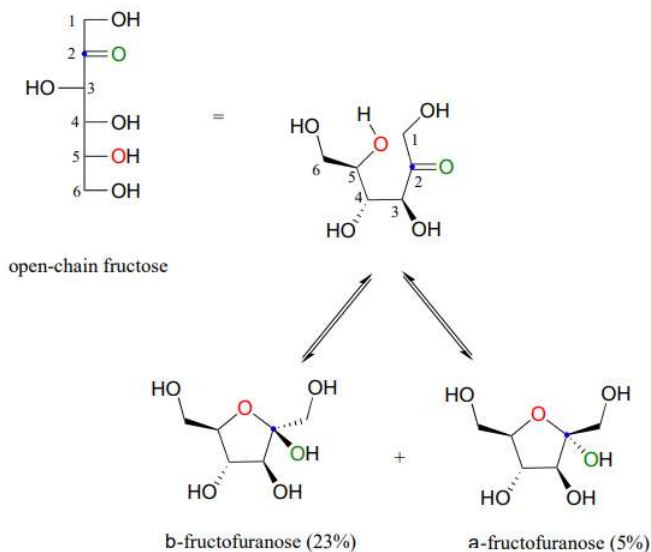
Draw a mechanism for the conversion of *α*-glucopyranose to open-chain glucose.

Fructose in aqueous solution forms a six-membered cyclic hemiketal called fructopyranose when the hydroxyl oxygen on carbon #6 attacks the ketone carbon (carbon #2, the anomeric carbon in fructose).



In this case, the β anomer is heavily favored in equilibrium by a ratio of 70:1, because in the minor α anomer the bulkier CH_2OH group occupies an axial position.

Notice in the above figure that the percentages of α and β anomers present at equilibrium do not add up to 100%. Fructose also exists in solution as a five-membered cyclic hemiketal, referred to in carbohydrate nomenclature as fructofuranose. In the formation of fructofuranose from open-chain fructose, the hydroxyl group on the fifth carbon attacks the ketone.

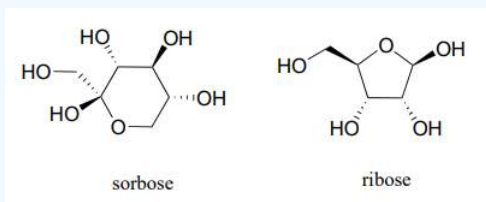


In aqueous solution, then, fructose exists as an equilibrium mixture of 70% β -fructopyranose, 23% β -fructofuranose, and smaller percentages of the open chain and cyclic α -anomers. The β -pyranose form of fructose is one of the sweetest compounds known, and is the main component of high-fructose corn syrup. The β -furanose form is much less sweet.

Although we have been looking at specific examples for glucose and fructose, other five- and six-carbon monosaccharides also exist in solution as equilibrium mixtures of open chains and cyclic hemiacetals and hemiketals. Shorter monosaccharides are unlikely to undergo analogous ring-forming reactions, however, due to the inherent instability of three and four-membered rings.

? Exercise 10.3.3

- Identify the anomeric carbon of each of the sugars shown below, and specify whether the structure shown is a hemiacetal or hemiketal.
- Draw mechanisms for cyclization of the open-chain forms to the cyclic forms shown.



This page titled [7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.3: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.8: Acetals and Ketals

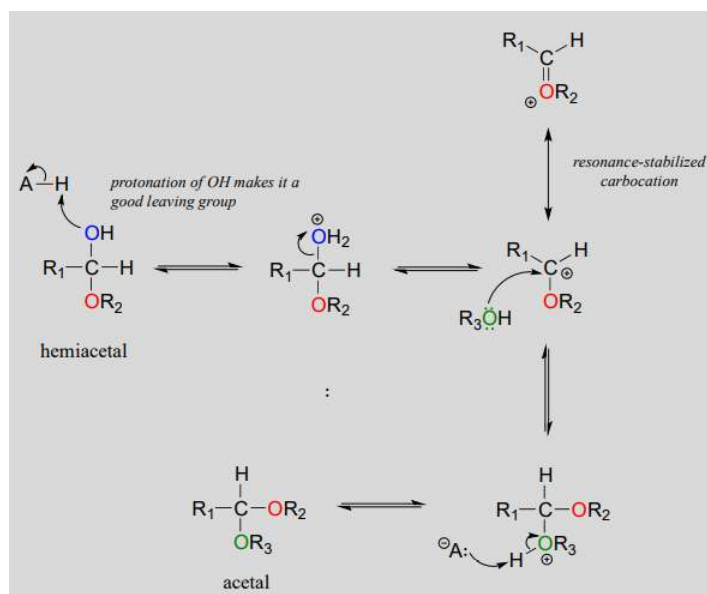
Overview

Hemiacetals and hemiketals can react with a second alcohol nucleophile to form an acetal or ketal. The second alcohol may be the same as the first (ie. if $R_2 = R_3$ in the scheme below), or different.



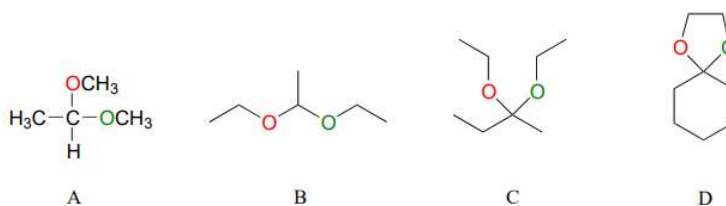
Although we focus here on biological reactions, it is instructive in this case to consider non-biological acetal-forming reactions before we look at their biochemical counterparts. In a non-enzymatic context, acetal/ketal formation - just like hemiacetal/hemiketal formation - is generally catalyzed by a strong acid.

Acid-catalyzed acetal formation (non-biological)



The role of the acid catalyst is to protonate the OH group of the acetal, thus making it a good leaving group (water). Notice something important here: the conversion of a hemiacetal to an acetal is simply an S_N1 reaction, with an alcohol nucleophile and water leaving group. The carbocation intermediate in this S_N1 mechanism is stabilized by resonance due to the oxygen atom already bound to the electrophilic carbon.

Below are some examples of simple, non-biological acetal and ketals.

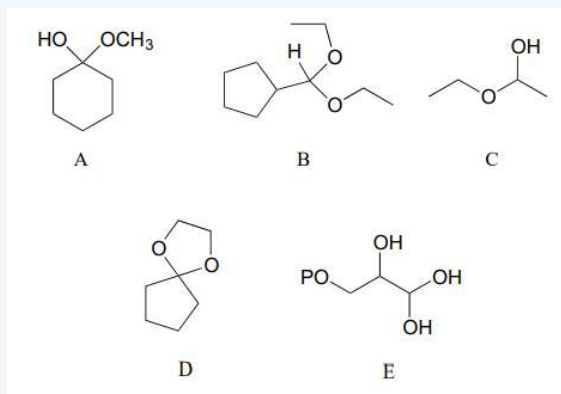


? Exercise 10.4.1

For each acetal/ketal A-D in the figure above, specify the required aldehyde/ketone and alcohol starting materials.

? Exercise 10.4.2

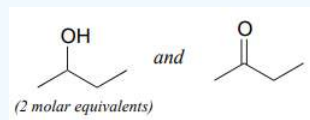
Categorize each of the following molecules as a hemiacetal, hemiketal, acetal, ketal, hydrate of an aldehyde, or hydrate of a ketone.



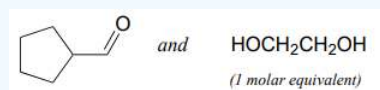
? Exercise 10.4.3

Specify the acetal/ketal that would form from a reaction between the given starting compounds.

a.



b.

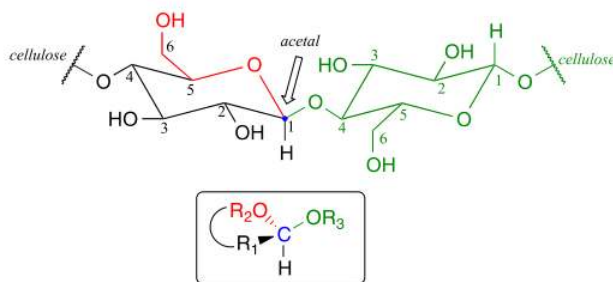


? Exercise 10.4.4

Specify the aldehyde/ketone and alcohol combination that would be required to form the compounds in exercise 10.5.

Glycosidic bond formation

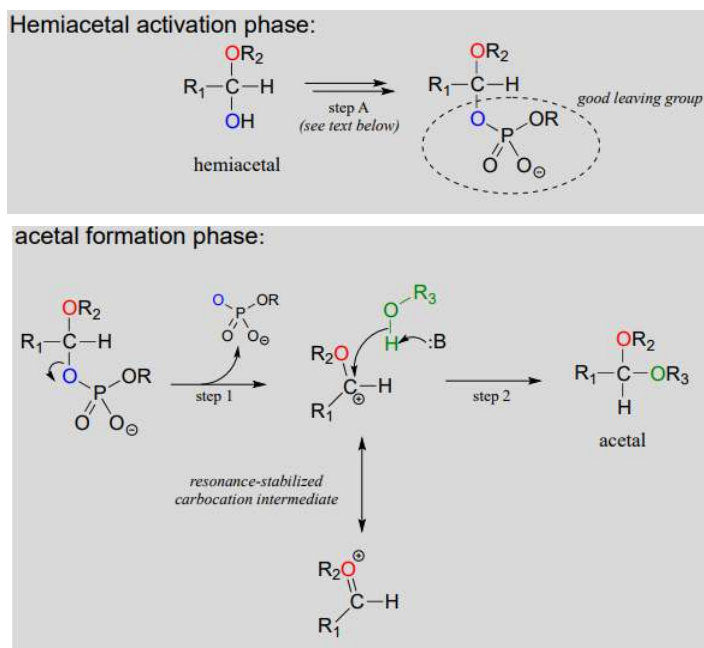
Now, let's consider acetal formation in a biochemical context. A very important example of the acetal/ketal group in biochemistry is the glycosidic bonds which link individual sugar monomers to form polysaccharides (see section 1.3 for a quick review). Look at the glycosidic bond between two glucose monomers in a cellulase chain:



If you look carefully, you should recognize that carbon #1, the anomeric carbon on the left-side glucose monomer, is the central carbon of an acetal group. Biochemists refer to this as a β -1,4 linkage, because the stereochemistry at carbon #1 is β in the specialized carbohydrate nomenclature system, and it is linked to carbon #4 of the next glucose on the chain. The vast structural diversity of carbohydrates stems in large part from the different linkages that are possible - both in terms of which two carbons are linked, and also the stereochemistry of the linkage. You will see many more variations of glycosidic bond linkage patterns if you study carbohydrate biochemistry in greater depth.

Reactions in which new glycosidic bonds are formed are catalyzed by enzymes called glycosyltransferases, and in organic chemistry terms these reactions represent the conversion of a hemiacetal to an acetal (remember that sugar monomers in their cyclic form are hemiacetals and hemiketals). The mechanism for glycosidic bond formation in a living cell parallels the acid-catalyzed (non-biological) acetal-forming mechanism, with an important difference: rather than being protonated, the **OH** group of the hemiacetal is converted to a good leaving group by phosphorylation (this is a pattern that we are familiar with from chapters 9 and 10). The specific identity of the activating phosphate group varies for different reactions, so it is generalized in the figure below.

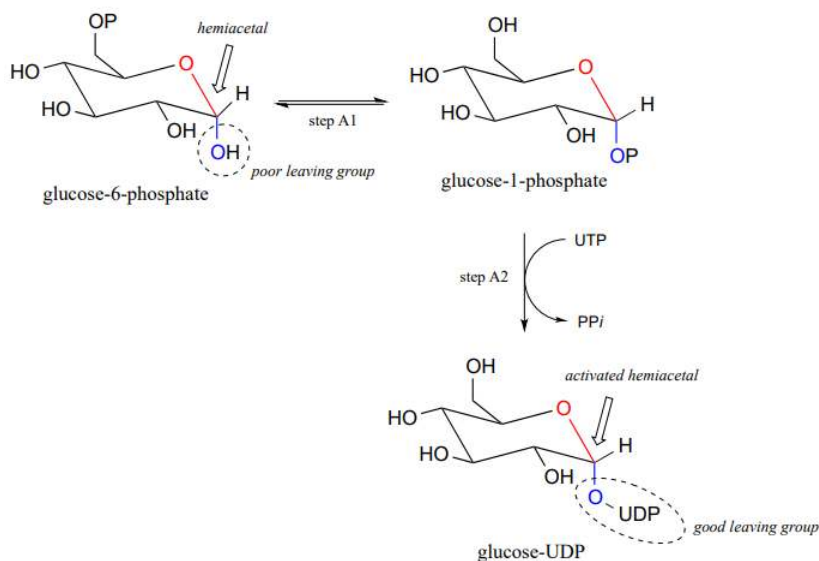
Mechanism for (biochemical) acetal formation:



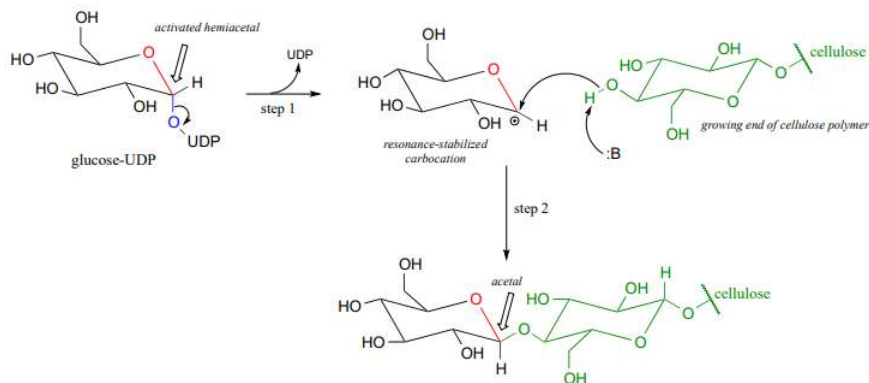
- Step A (Activation phase): This phase of the reaction varies according to the particular case, but always involves phosphate group transfer steps that are familiar from chapter 9. What is most important for our present discussion, however, is simply that the hydroxyl group on the hemiacetal has been activated - ie. made into a good leaving group - by phosphorylation.
- Step 1: Now that the leaving group has been activated, it does its job and leaves, resulting in a resonance stabilized carbocation.
- Step 2: A nucleophilic alcohol on the growing cellulose chain attacks the highly electrophilic carbocation to form an acetal. Here is where the stereochemistry of the new glycosidic bond is determined: depending on the reaction, the alcohol nucleophile could approach from either side of the planar carbocation.

To reiterate: it is important to recognize the familiar S_N1 mechanistic pattern in play here: in step A, a poor leaving group is converted into a good leaving group, in step 1 the leaving group leaves and a stabilized carbocation is left behind, and in step 2 a nucleophile attacks to form a new bond and complete the substitution process. Look back at the S_N1 reactions we saw in chapter 8 if you are having trouble making this mechanistic connection.

Now, let's look specifically at the glycosyl transferase reaction mechanism in which a new glycosidic bond is formed on a growing cellulose chain. Glucose (a hemiacetal) is first activated through two enzymatic phosphate transfer steps: step A1, a phosphate isomerization reaction with a mechanism similar to the reaction in problem P9.13, followed by a UTP-dependent step A2, for which you were invited to propose a mechanism in problem P9.12.



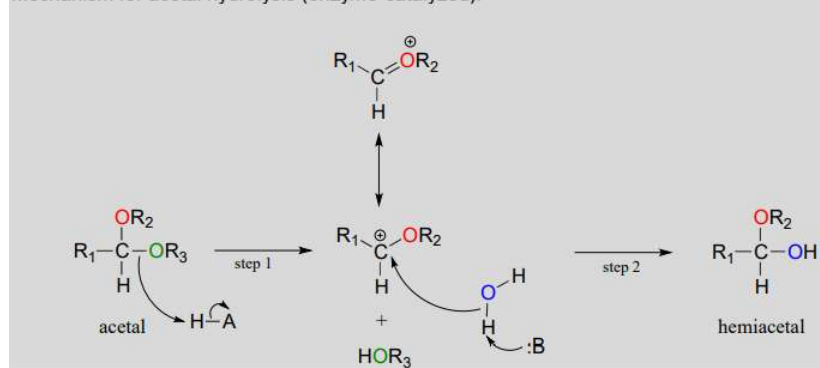
The UDP group on glucose-UDP then leaves (step 1 below), forming a resonance-stabilized carbocation intermediate. Attack by the alcohol group on the growing cellulose chain in step 2 forms the glycosidic (acetal) bond. Note the inversion of stereochemistry.



Glycosidic bond hydrolysis

Acetals can be hydrolyzed back to hemiacetals. Notice that an acetal to hemiacetal conversion is an S_N1 -type reaction with a water nucleophile and an alcohol leaving group.

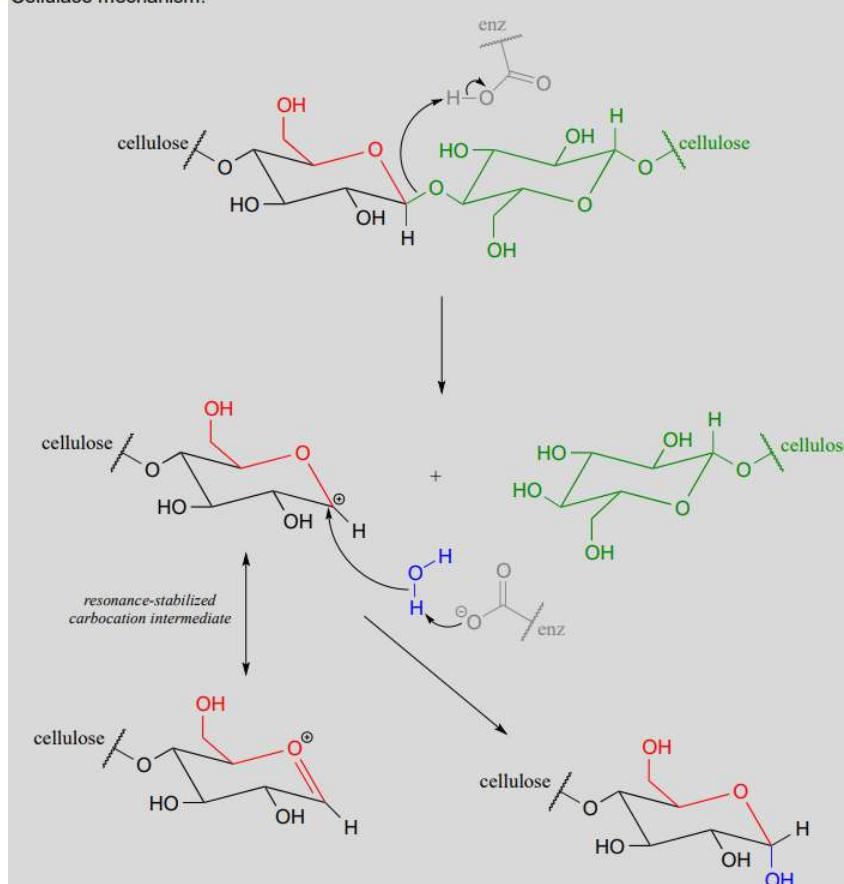
Mechanism for acetal hydrolysis (enzyme-catalyzed):



In step 1, an alcohol is protonated by a nearby acid group as it breaks away to form a resonance-stabilized carbocation intermediate. The carbocation is attacked by a nucleophilic water molecule in step 2 to form a hemiacetal.

The general mechanism above applies to reactions catalyzed by glycosidase enzymes, which catalyze the cleavage of glycosidic bonds in carbohydrates. In the introduction to this chapter, we learned about ongoing research in the field of cellulosic ethanol. Recall that the main bottleneck in the production of ethanol from sources such as switchgrass or wood is the cellulase-catalyzed step in which the glycosidic bonds in cellulose are cleaved. Cellulose-digesting microbes have several different but closely related forms of cellulase enzymes, all working in concert to cleave cellulose into smaller and smaller pieces until individual glucose molecules are free to be converted to ethanol by the fermentation process. Below is a representative mechanism for a cellulase reaction.

Cellulase mechanism:



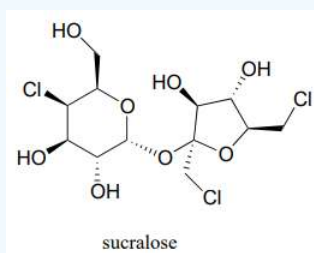
The starch-digesting amylase enzymes used in the corn ethanol production process catalyze similar glycoside hydrolysis reactions, the main difference being the opposite stereochemistry at the anomeric carbon of the substrate.

? Exercise 10.4.5

Notice that the cellulose glycoside bond-forming reaction requires the cell to 'spend' a high-energy UTP molecule, but the cellulase glycoside bond-breaking reaction does not. Use your knowledge of chemical thermodynamics to explain this observation.

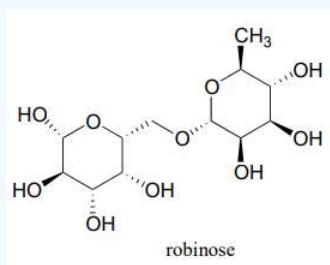
? Exercise 10.4.6

Below is the structure of the artificial sweetener sucralose. Identify the two anomeric carbons in the disaccharide.



? Exercise 10.4.7

Robinsonose is a disaccharide found in 'Chenille Plant', a flowering shrub native to the Pacific Islands.



- Identify the two anomeric carbons and the glycosidic bond in robinose.
- Using the same carbon numbering system as for glucose in the earlier figure, fill in the carbon numbers (#1 through #6) for each of the monosaccharides that make up robinose.
- Based on what you know of glycosidic bond-forming reactions in nature, propose a reasonable mechanism for the linking of the two monosaccharides, starting with the activated hemiacetal species, assuming that it is a UDP species as in the cellulose glycosidic bond-forming reaction.
- Draw the open chain form of each of the monosaccharides

? Exercise 10.4.8

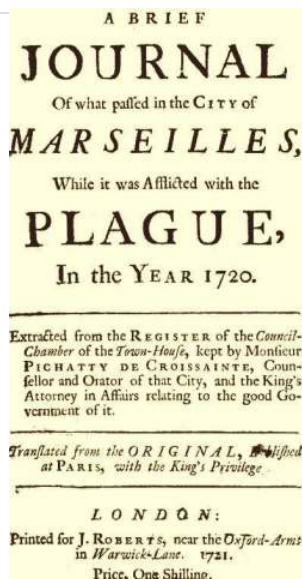
Look again at the structures of the two-glucose fragments of cellulose and amylose shown the introduction to this chapter. A structural feature of the cellulose polymer makes it inherently more resistant to enzymatic hydrolysis compared to starch. Explain.

Hint

think about intermolecular interactions.

- **10.4: Acetals and Ketals** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions



Introduction

The 26th of July, Notice is given to the Sheriffs, that in the Street of Lescalle, a Part of the old Town inhabited only by poor People, Fifteen Persons are suddenly fallen sick: They dispatch thither Physicians and Surgeons; they examine into the Distemper, and make Report; some, that 'tis a Malignant Fever; others, a contagious or pestilential Fever, occasioned by bad Food, which Want had long forced those poor Creatures to live upon . . .

The 27th, Eight of those Sick dye; the Sheriffs themselves go to their Houses to cause them to be searched; Buboes [swelling of the lymph nodes] are found on Two of them: The Physicians and Surgeons still hold the same Language, and impute the Cause of the Distemper to unwholsome Food. Notwithstanding which, as soon as Night comes, M. Moustier repairs to the Place, sends for Servants from the Infirmarys, makes them willingly or by Force, take up the Bodies, with all due Precautions; they are carried to the Infirmarys, where they are buried with Lime; and all the rest of the Night he causes the remaining Sick, and all those of their Houses, to be removed to the Infirmarys.

The 28th, very early in the Morning, Search is made every where for those who had Communication with them, in order to confine them: Other Persons in the same Street fall sick, and some of those who first sicken'd dye. ..

The People who love to deceive themselves, and will have it absolutely not to be the Plague, urge a Hundred false Reasons on that Side. Would the Plague, say they, attack none but such poor People? Would it operate so slowly?

Let them have but a few Days Patience, and they will see all attacked without Distinction, with the swiftest Rage, and the most dreadful Havock, that ever was heard of.

(source: Gutenberg Project <http://www.gutenberg.org/files/45673...-h/45673-h.htm>)

In late May of 1720, a ship arrived in the Mediterranean port city of Marseille, having recently departed from Cyprus and Tripoli. Although several crew members had fallen ill and died during the journey, the ship was allowed to unload after only a very brief quarantine, the result of political pressure on port authorities from local businessmen who wanted quick access to the valuable silk and cotton waiting in the ship's hold.

Along with silk and cotton, the hold carried rats. The rats, in turn, carried fleas. The fleas carried a microscopic mass murderer: *Yersinia pestis*, the species of bacteria that causes bubonic plague.

It is next to impossible to estimate how many people have died from bubonic plague over the course of human history. In the time of the 'Black Death' in the 14th century, it wiped out more than half the population of Europe. In the Great Plague of Marseille in 1720, over 100,000 people succumbed to *Y. pestis* infection in the city and surrounding provinces. At the height of the outbreak,

corpses piled up in city streets, and a fortified wall, the 'mur de la peste' was constructed in an attempt to prevent people from traveling north to the neighboring city of Aix.

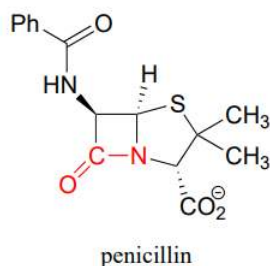
Throughout history, bacteria have been the cause of untold human death and suffering, making the threat posed by more obviously frightening species - lions and bears, spiders and snakes – seem inconsequential by comparison. As recently as the mid-1940s, a minor cut or cold could become a life-threatening event if a bacterial infection were to set in, and even in developed countries, one in twenty infants did not survive to celebrate their first birthday.

Since then, the infant mortality rate in developed countries has declined by a factor of ten. You probably don't worry very much when a small cut on your hand becomes infected. The idea of half of the population of the United States dying in a plague is, in most people's minds, the stuff of zombie movies, not reality. Bacteria are, for now at least, no longer public enemy #1.

How did this happen?

For an answer, we move to a September morning in 1928, in the laboratory of Alexander Fleming, a Scottish bacteriologist working at St. Mary's Hospital in London. As a young man serving in the British Medical Corps during World War I, Fleming saw first-hand how deadly bacteria could be, as he watched countless soldiers in his battlefield hospital die from infected wounds. After returning to civilian life, he began to study Staphylococci bacteria, a common source of life-threatening infections in humans, hoping to discover new antibacterial agents that were more effective than those he had used in the war. He spent a lot of his time growing Staphylococcus cultures in petri dishes for his experiments, and, notoriously untidy, he tended to leave piles of culture dishes lying around his lab. One morning, he returned from a short vacation to find that one of the cultures he had left out had some mold growing on it. He was about to throw it away, but happened to notice something curious: surrounding the small spot of mold was a circle of clear medium, where no bacteria were growing. He realized that the mold must be secreting something that killed bacteria.

As it turned out, the mold was a of strain called *Penicillium notatum*, and the 'something' killing the bacteria was an organic compound that came to be known as penicillin.



Fleming published his findings in the British Journal of Experimental Pathology, but made only passing reference to the potential therapeutic value of penicillin. The paper received little attention.

Fast-forward now to early February 1941, with the world once again at war. One morning, a policeman named Albert Alexander living in Oxford, England, had an unfortunate gardening accident. While he was trimming some roses on his day off, his shears slipped and gave him a nasty cut on the side of his mouth. The cut became infected, and after a few days it appeared as if the infection would kill him. Then, he got a visit in his hospital room from some chemists at nearby Oxford University.

For the last few years, the chemists had been hard at work isolating pure penicillin from mold cultures, a tricky job because the compound tends to degrade during purification. It is a feat that Alexander Fleming -who, after all, was a bacteriologist, not a chemist - had never been able to accomplish, but the Oxford researchers had realized how valuable penicillin might be to the war effort, and had finally met with some success. They needed a human subject on whom to test the ability of their compound to treat infected wounds, and Albert was their man for the job. They injected him with penicillin, and within a day his infection cleared up. It was a new day in the history of medicine.

At the heart of a penicillin molecule is an amide functional group - more specifically, a cyclic amide, or 'lactam'. To understand how penicillin works at the molecular level as it prevents bacteria from multiplying, we first need to know more about the chemistry of amides and other carboxylic acid derivative functional groups, and a type of organic reaction mechanism called 'nucleophilic acyl substitution'. Understanding the reactivity of carboxylic acid derivative groups will also allow us to appreciate

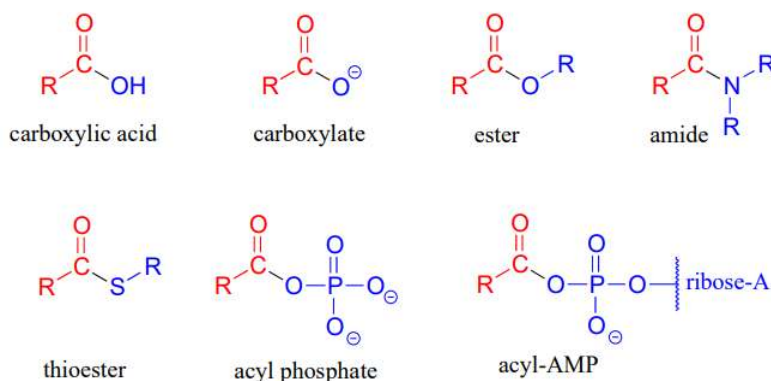
why penicillin is so prone to degradation, and why - very significantly for all of us - the era of not having to worry about bacterial infections may be near an end, as common toxic bacterial species such as Staphylococcus develop increasingly robust resistance to antibiotics.

This page titled [7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

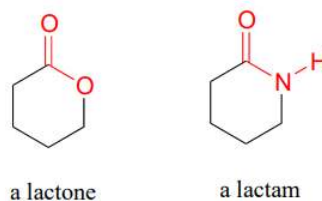
- **11.1: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

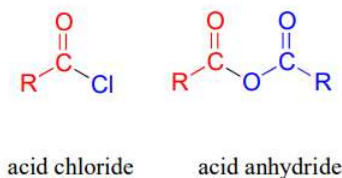
The functional groups at the heart of this chapter are called **carboxylic acid derivatives**: they include carboxylic acids themselves, carboxylates (deprotonated carboxylic acids), amides, esters, thioesters, and acyl phosphates.



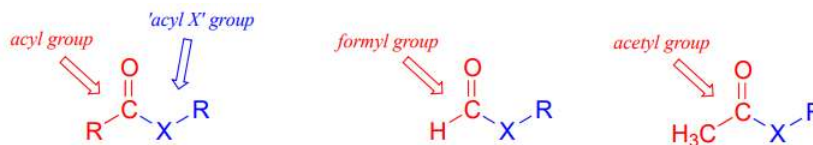
Cyclic esters and amides are referred to as **lactones** and **lactams**, respectively.



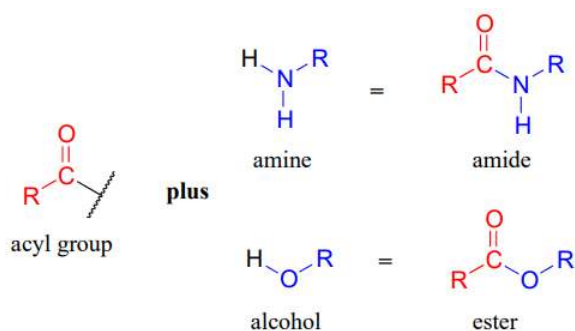
Carboxylic acid anhydrides and acid chlorides, which also fall under the carboxylic acid derivative category, are not generally found in biomolecules but are useful intermediates in laboratory synthesis. They are discussed in a section on laboratory reactions at the end of this chapter.



Carboxylic acid derivatives can be distinguished from aldehydes and ketones by the presence of a group containing an electronegative heteroatom - usually oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur - bonded directly to the carbonyl carbon. You can think of a carboxylic acid derivative as having two sides. One side is the acyl group, which is the carbonyl plus the attached alkyl (R) group. In the specific cases where R is a hydrogen or methyl, chemists use the terms formyl and acetyl group, respectively. On the other side is the heteroatom-linked group: in this text, we will sometimes refer to this component as the 'acyl X' group (this, however, is not a standard term in organic chemistry).



Notice that the acyl X groups are simply deprotonated forms of other functional groups linked to the acyl group: in an amide, for example, the acyl X group is an amine, while in an ester the acyl X group is an alcohol.



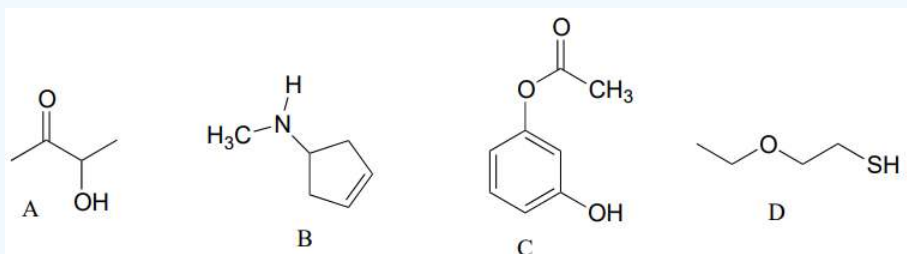
? Exercise 11.2.1

What is the 'acyl X' group in:

- an acid anhydride?
- a thioester?
- a carboxylic acid?
- an acyl phosphate?

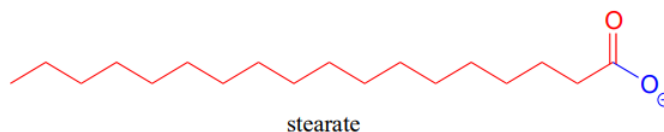
? Exercise 11.2.2

Draw the structures indicated:

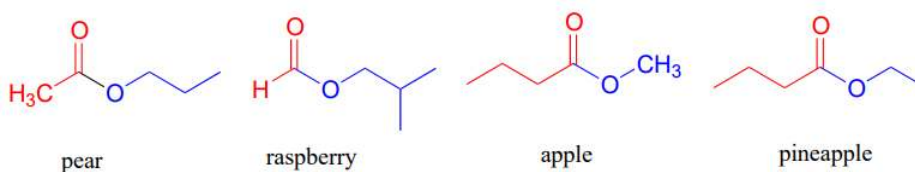


- compound A after it has been acetylated (ie. an acetyl group added)
- compound B after it has been formylated
- compound C after it has been formylated
- Compound D after it has been acetylated

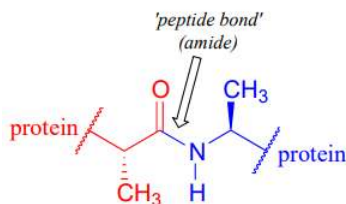
'Fatty acid' molecules such as stearate are carboxylates with long carbon chains for acyl groups.



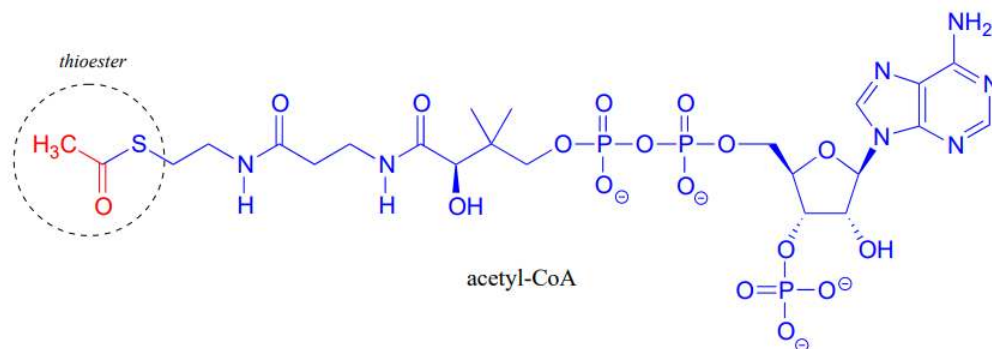
The aromas of many fruits come from small ester-containing molecules:



The 'peptide bonds' that link amino acids together in proteins are amides.



Acetyl-Coenzyme A, a very important two carbon (acetyl group) 'building block' molecule in metabolism, is characterized by reactions at its thioester functional group:

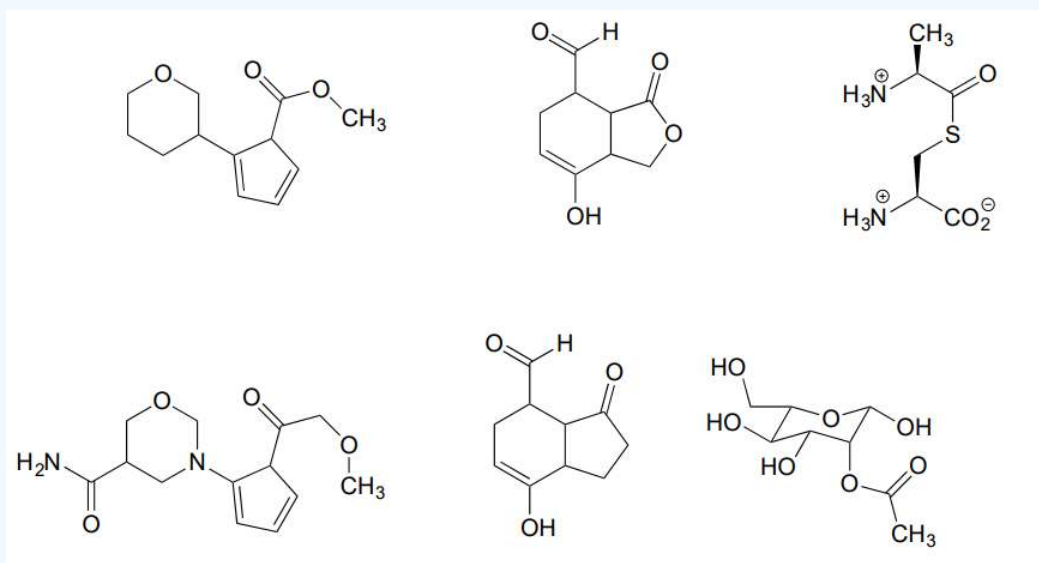


? Exercise 11.2.3

There are two amide groups in acetyl-CoA: identify them.

? Exercise 11.2.4

Name all carboxylic acid derivative groups in the molecules below.

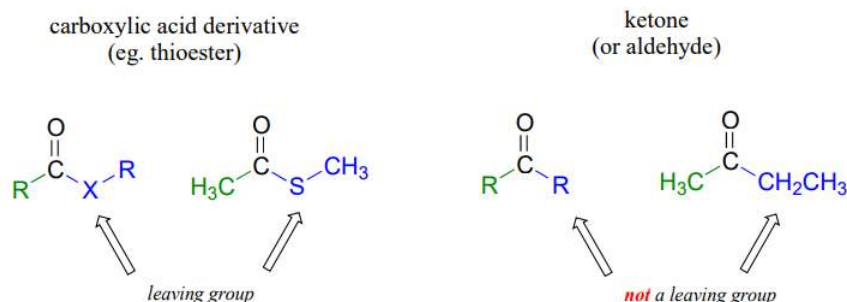


This page titled [7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [11.2: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism

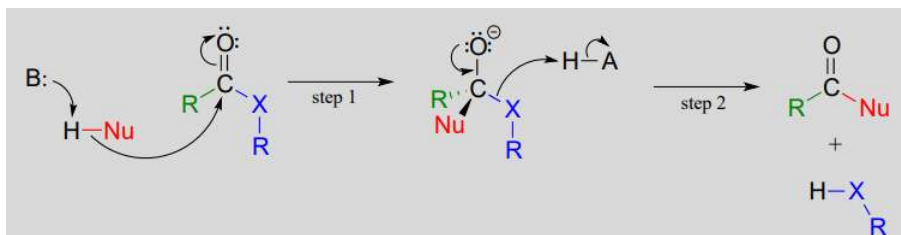
The fact that one of the atoms adjacent to the carbonyl carbon in carboxylic acid derivatives is an electronegative heteroatom – rather than a carbon like in ketones or a hydrogen like in aldehydes – is critical to understanding the reactivity of carboxylic acid derivatives. The most significant difference between a ketone/aldehyde and a carboxylic acid derivative is that the latter has a potential leaving group – what we are calling the 'acyl X group' – bonded to the carbonyl carbon.



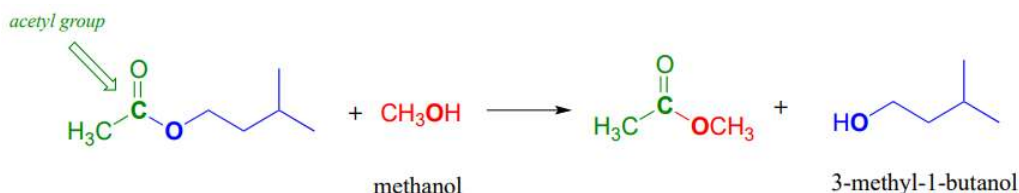
As a result, carboxylic acid derivatives undergo nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions, rather than nucleophilic additions like ketones and aldehydes.

A nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction starts with nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl, leading to a tetrahedral intermediate (step 1 below). In step 2, the tetrahedral intermediate collapses and the acyl X group is expelled, usually accepting a proton from an enzymatic acid in the process.

Mechanism for a nucleophilic acyl substitution reaction:



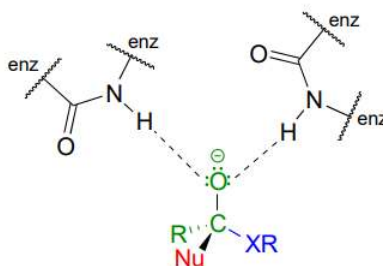
Notice that in the product, the nucleophile becomes the new acyl X group. This is why this reaction type is called a nucleophilic acyl substitution: one acyl X group is substituted for another. For example, in the reaction below, one alcohol 'X group' (methanol), substitutes for by another alcohol 'X group' (3-methyl-1-butanol) as one ester is converted to another.



Another way of looking at this reaction is to picture the acyl group being transferred from one acyl X group to another: in the example above, the acetyl group (in green) is transferred from 3-methyl-1-butanol (blue) to methanol (red). For this reason, nucleophilic acyl substitutions are also commonly referred to as acyl transfer reactions.

Enzymes catalyzing nucleophilic acyl substitution reactions have evolved ways to stabilize the negatively charged, tetrahedral intermediate, thus lowering the activation energy of the first, rate-determining step (nucleophilic attack). The late transition state of the first step resembles the tetrahedral intermediate that results: recall from chapter 6 that the Hammond postulate tells us that anything that stabilizes the tetrahedral intermediate will also stabilize the transition state. In many cases, for example, enzymatic amino acid residues are positioned in the active site so as to provide stabilizing hydrogen bond donating interactions with the

negatively-charged oxygen. This arrangement is sometimes referred to in the biochemistry literature as an oxanion hole. The figure below shows a tetrahedral intermediate stabilized by hydrogen bond donation from two main chain (amide) nitrogen atoms.



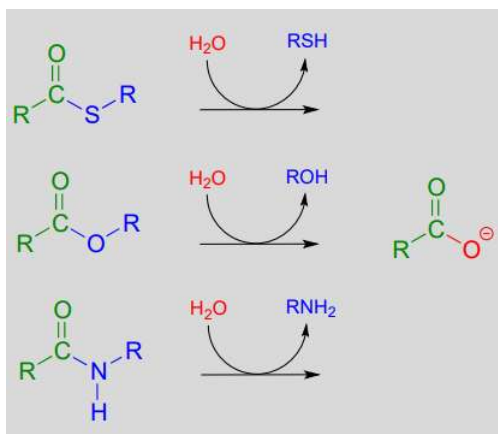
This page titled [7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [11.3: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

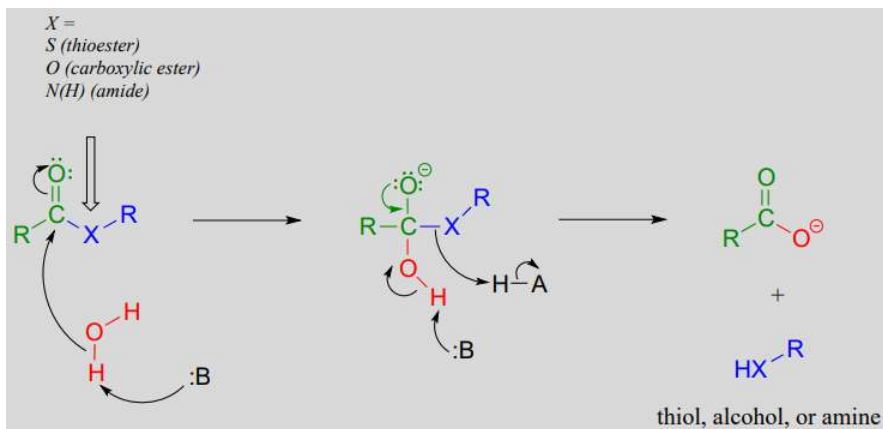
7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides

So far we have been looking at the formation of thioesters, carboxylic esters, and amides, starting from carboxylates. In hydrolytic acyl substitution reactions, nucleophilic water is the incoming nucleophile and a carboxylate group is the final product. Because carboxylates are the least reactive among the carboxylic acid derivatives, these hydrolysis reactions are thermodynamically favorable, with thioester hydrolysis the most favorable of the three.

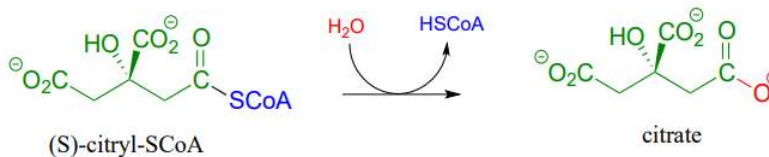
Thioester, carboxylic ester, and amide hydrolysis:



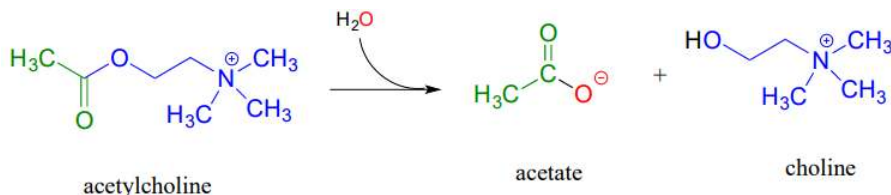
Mechanism:



In the citric acid (Krebs) cycle, (S)-citryl CoA is hydrolyzed to citrate (EC 2.3.3.8):



Acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7), an enzyme present in the synapse, catalyzes hydrolysis of the ester group in acetylcholine, a neurotransmitter that triggers muscle contraction.



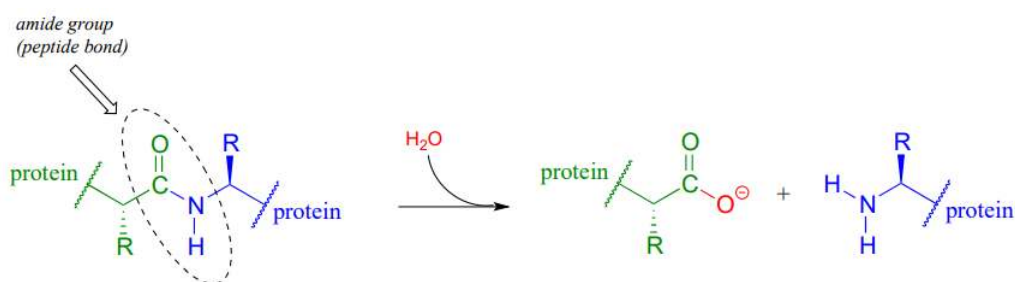
Like many other hydrolytic enzymes, the acetylcholinesterase reaction proceeds in two phases: first, a covalent enzyme-substrate intermediate is formed when the acyl group of acetylcholine is transferred to an active-site serine on the enzyme (a transesterification reaction). A water nucleophile then attacks this ester, driving off acetate and completing the hydrolysis.

? Exercise 11.7.1

Based on the above description, draw the structure of the covalent enzyme-substrate intermediate in the acetylcholinesterase reaction.

If the action of acetylcholinesterase is inhibited, acetylcholine in the synapse does not get hydrolyzed and thus accumulates, resulting in paralysis and death in severe cases. Sarin nerve gas is a potent inhibitor of acetylcholinesterase action. Some victims of the Tokyo subway sarin attack in 1995 who were exposed to low levels of the gas reported that they initially realized that something was wrong when they noticed how dark everything seemed around them. This was due to uncontrolled contraction of their pupils. You will be invited to consider the mechanism of inhibition by sarin in problem 11.6.4.

Peptide (amide) bonds in proteins and polypeptides are subject to spontaneous (nonenzymatic) hydrolysis in water.

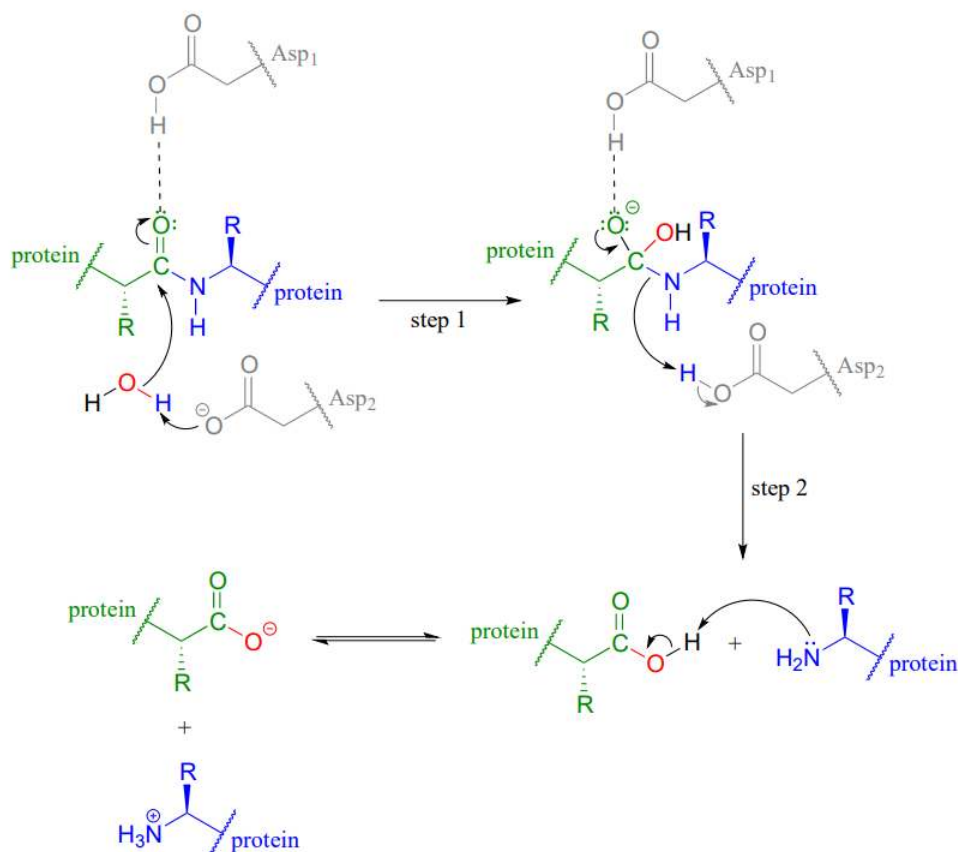


Although this amide to carboxylate conversion is thermodynamically a downhill reaction, peptide bonds are kinetically very stable (they react slowly) at neutral pH. In fact, the half-life for uncatalyzed hydrolysis of a peptide bond in pH 7 water is by some estimates as high as 1000 years. (Ann. Rev. Biochem. 2011, 80, 645.)

The stability of peptides bonds makes good physiological sense: we would all be in trouble if our enzymes, receptors, and structural proteins were hydrolyzing away while we slept! That being said, it is also true that controlled, specific hydrolysis of peptide bonds, catalyzed by a large, diverse class of enzymes called proteases, is a critical biochemical reaction type that can occur very rapidly, in many different biological contexts. For example, many proteins only become active after they have been 'processed' - in other words, hydrolyzed at a specific amino acid location by a specific protease.

Although all proteases catalyze essentially the same reaction – amide hydrolysis - different protease subfamilies have evolved different catalytic strategies to accomplish the same result. HIV protease is the target of some the most recently-developed anti-HIV drugs. It plays a critical role in the life cycle of the HIV virus, hydrolyzing specific peptide bonds of essential viral proteins in order to convert them to their active forms. HIV protease is a member of the aspartyl protease subfamily, so-named because of the two aspartate residues located in the active sites of these enzymes. HIV protease is also, as you are probably aware, the target of HIV protease inhibitor drugs, which are a component of the most effective treatment currently available for HIV infection.

In HIV protease and other aspartyl proteases, the two enzymatic aspartates residues (shaded grey and abbreviated 'Asp1' and 'Asp2' in the figure below) work in concert to activate the electrophile, nucleophile, and leaving group in the reaction.

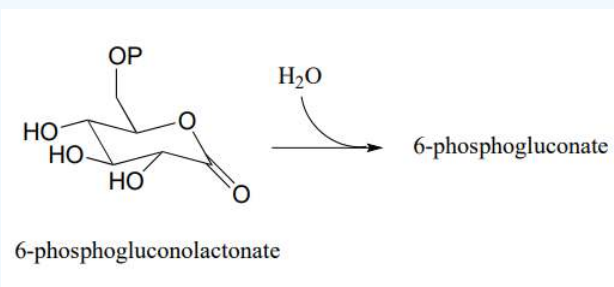


Exactly how this works is a subject of some debate and the details may well vary according to the enzyme in question, but one likely mechanism is illustrated in the figure above, where Asp1, which is initially in its protonated form, contributes a hydrogen bond to draw electron density away from the carbonyl carbon, making it more electrophilic. At the same time, Asp2, which begins the reaction cycle in its anionic form, deprotonates the water molecule to make it more nucleophilic. In step 2, Asp2 donates a proton back to the nitrogen, making it a better leaving group.

HIV protease inhibitors shut down this reaction, which prevents the virus from processing the proteins that it uses to bond to host cells.

? Exercise 11.7.2

Lactonase (EC 3.1.1.17), the second enzyme in the oxidative branch of the pentose phosphate pathway, catalyzes hydrolysis of the lactone (cyclic ester) group in 6-phosphogluconolactone. Draw the structure of 6-phosphogluconate, the product of this reaction.

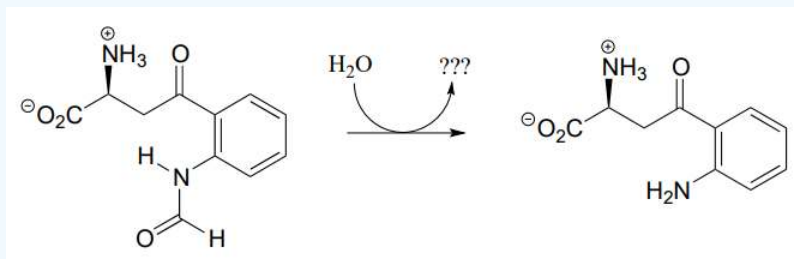


? Exercise 11.7.3

Draw the product of the β -lactamase-catalyzed hydrolysis of penicillin as described in section 11.6.

? Exercise 11.7.4

What is the missing product (designated below by question marks) in the reaction below, which is part of degradation pathway for the amino acid tryptophan? How could you describe this reaction in organic chemistry terminology?



Answer

Add answer text here and it will automatically be hidden if you have a "AutoNum" template active on the page.

This page titled [7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [11.7: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

In the first three chapters of this text, we have focused our efforts on learning about the structure of organic compounds. Now that we know what organic molecules look like, we can start to address the question of *how* chemists are able to elucidate organic structures. The individual atoms and functional groups in organic compounds are far too small to be directly observed or photographed, even with the best electron microscope. How, then, are chemists able to draw with confidence the bonding arrangements in organic molecules, even simple ones such as acetone or ethanol?

The answer lies, for the most part, in a field of chemistry called **molecular spectroscopy**. Spectroscopy is the study of how electromagnetic radiation, across a spectrum of different wavelengths, interacts with molecules - and how these interactions can be quantified, analyzed, and ultimately interpreted to gain information about molecular structure.

After first reviewing some basic information about the properties of light and introducing the basic ideas behind spectroscopy, we will move to a discussion of infrared (IR) spectroscopy, a technique which is used in organic chemistry to detect the presence or absence of common functional groups. Next, we will look at ultraviolet-visible (UV-vis) spectroscopy, in which light of a shorter wavelength is employed to provide information about organic molecules containing conjugated p-bonding systems.

In the final section of this chapter, we will change tack slightly and consider another analytical technique called mass spectrometry (MS). Here, we learn about the structure of a molecule by, in a sense, taking a hammer to it and smashing it into small pieces, then measuring the mass of each piece. Although this metaphorical description makes mass spectrometry sound somewhat crude, it is in fact an extremely powerful and sensitive technique, one which has in recent years become central to the study of life at the molecular level.

Looking ahead, Chapter 5 will be devoted to the study of nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, where we use ultra-strong magnets and radio frequency radiation to learn about the electronic environment of individual atoms in a molecule. For most organic chemists, NMR is the single most powerful analytical tool available in terms of the wealth of detailed information it can provide about the structure of a molecule. It is the closest thing we have to a 'molecular camera'.

In summary, the analytical techniques we will be studying in this chapter and the next primarily attempt to address the following questions about an organic molecule:

- Infrared (IR) spectroscopy: *What functional groups does the molecule contain?*
- Ultraviolet-visible (UV-vis) spectroscopy: *To what extent does the molecule contain a system of conjugated pi bonds?*
- Mass spectrometry (MS): *What is the atomic weight of the molecule and its common fragments?*
- Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMR): *What is the overall bonding framework of the molecule?*

[8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I](#)

[8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy](#)

[8.2: Mass Spectrometry](#)

[8.3: Infrared spectroscopy](#)

[8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy](#)

[8.P: Problems for Chapter 4](#)

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I



(Photo credit: <https://www.flickr.com/photos/vamapaul/>)

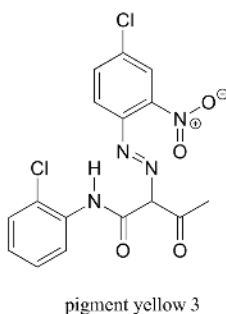
Introduction: a foiled forgery

In the end, it was a 'funky yellow color' that led to the demise of Charles Heller's not-so-illustrious career in the world of collectable art.

William Aiken Walker was a 19th-century 'genre' painter, known for his small scenes of sharecroppers working the fields in the post-Civil War south. For much of his career, he traveled extensively, throughout the southern states but also to New York City and even as far as Cuba. He earned a decent living wherever he went by setting up shop on the sidewalk and selling his paintings to tourists, usually for a few dollars each. While he never became a household name in the art world, he was prolific and popular, and his paintings are today considered collectible, often selling for upwards of ten thousand dollars.

In August, 1994, Robert Hicklin, an art gallery owner in Charleston, South Carolina, was appraising a Walker painting brought to him by another South Carolina art dealer named Rick Simons. Hicklin's years of experience with Walker paintings told him that something just wasn't right with this one - he was particularly bothered by one of the pigments used, which he later described in a story in the *Maine Antique Digest* as a 'funky yellow color'. Reluctantly, he told Simons that it almost certainly was a fake.

Hoping that Hicklin was wrong, Simons decided to submit his painting to other experts for analysis, and eventually it ended up in the laboratory of James Martin, whose company *Orion Analytical* specializes in forensic materials analysis. Using a technique called infrared spectroscopy, Martin was able to positively identify the suspicious yellow pigment as an organic compound called 'pigment yellow 3'.



As it turns out, Pigment Yellow 3 had not become available in the United States until many years after William Aiken Walker died. Simons had purchased his painting from a man named Robert Heller for \$9,500. When Heller approached him again to offer several more Walker paintings for sale, Simons contacted the FBI. A few days later, with FBI agents listening in, Simons agreed to buy two more Walker paintings. When he received them, they were promptly analyzed and found to be fake. Heller, who turned out to be a convicted felon, was arrested and eventually imprisoned.

(For more details on this story, see [Chemical and Engineering News, Sept 10, 2007, p. 28](#)).

In the first three chapters of this text, we have focused our efforts on learning about the structure of organic compounds. Now that we know what organic molecules look like, we can begin to address, in the next two chapters, the question of how we get this knowledge in the first place. How are chemists able to draw with confidence the bonding arrangements in organic molecules, even simple ones such as acetone or ethanol? How was James Martin at Orion Analytical able to identify the chemical structure of the pigment compound responsible for the 'funky yellow color' in the forged William Aiken Walker painting?

This chapter is devoted to three very important techniques used by chemists to learn about the structures of organic molecules. First, we will learn how mass spectrometry can provide us with information about the mass of a molecule as well as the mass of fragments into which the molecule has been broken. Then, we will begin our investigation of molecular spectroscopy, which is the study of how electromagnetic radiation at different wavelengths interacts in different ways with molecules - and how these interactions can be quantified, analyzed, and interpreted to gain information about molecular structure. After a brief overview of the properties of light and the elements of a molecular spectroscopy experiment, we will move to a discussion of infrared (IR) spectroscopy, the key technique used in the detection of the Walker forgery, and a way to learn about functional groups present in an organic compound. Then, we will consider ultraviolet-visible (UV-vis) spectroscopy, with which chemists gain information about conjugated pi-bonding systems in organic molecules. Among other applications, we will see how information from UV-vis spectroscopy can be used to measure the concentration of biomolecules compounds in solution.

Looking ahead, Chapter 5 will be devoted to nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, where we use ultra-strong magnets and radio frequency radiation to learn about the electronic environment of individual atoms in a molecule and use this information to determine the atom-to-atom bonding arrangement. For most organic chemists, NMR is one of the most powerful analytical tools available in terms of the wealth of detailed information it can provide about the structure of a molecule.

The structure determination techniques we will be studying in this chapter and the next primarily attempt to address the following questions about an organic molecule:

Chapter 4:

Mass spectrometry (MS): What is the atomic weight of the molecule and its common fragments?

Infrared (IR) spectroscopy: what functional groups does the molecule contain?

Ultraviolet-visible (UV-Vis) spectroscopy: What is the nature of conjugated pi-bonding systems in the molecule?

Chapter 5:

Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMR): What is the overall bonding framework of the molecule?

8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

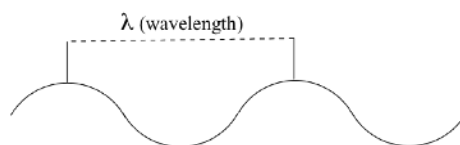
- [4.1: Prelude to Structure Determination I](#) has no license indicated.

8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy

The electromagnetic spectrum

Electromagnetic radiation, as you may recall from a previous chemistry or physics class, is composed of electrical and magnetic waves which oscillate on perpendicular planes. Visible light is electromagnetic radiation. So are the gamma rays that are emitted by spent nuclear fuel, the x-rays that a doctor uses to visualize your bones, the ultraviolet light that causes a painful sunburn when you forget to apply sun block, the infrared light that the army uses in night-vision goggles, the microwaves that you use to heat up your frozen burritos, and the radio-frequency waves that bring music to anybody who is old-fashioned enough to still listen to FM or AM radio.

Just like ocean waves, electromagnetic waves travel in a defined direction. While the speed of ocean waves can vary, however, the speed of electromagnetic waves – commonly referred to as the speed of light – is essentially a constant, approximately 300 million meters per second. This is true whether we are talking about gamma radiation or visible light. Obviously, there is a big difference between these two types of waves – we are surrounded by the latter for more than half of our time on earth, whereas we hopefully never become exposed to the former to any significant degree. The different properties of the various types of electromagnetic radiation are due to differences in their wavelengths, and the corresponding differences in their energies: *shorter wavelengths correspond to higher energy*.



High-energy radiation (such as gamma- and x-rays) is composed of very short waves – as short as 10^{-16} meter from crest to crest. Longer waves are far less energetic, and thus are less dangerous to living things. Visible light waves are in the range of 400 – 700 nm (nanometers, or 10^{-9} m), while radio waves can be several hundred meters in length.

The notion that electromagnetic radiation contains a quantifiable amount of energy can perhaps be better understood if we talk about light as a stream of *particles*, called **photons**, rather than as a wave. (Recall the concept known as ‘wave-particle duality’: at the quantum level, wave behavior and particle behavior become indistinguishable, and very small particles have an observable ‘wavelength’). If we describe light as a stream of photons, the energy of a particular wavelength can be expressed as:

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} \quad (4.1.1)$$

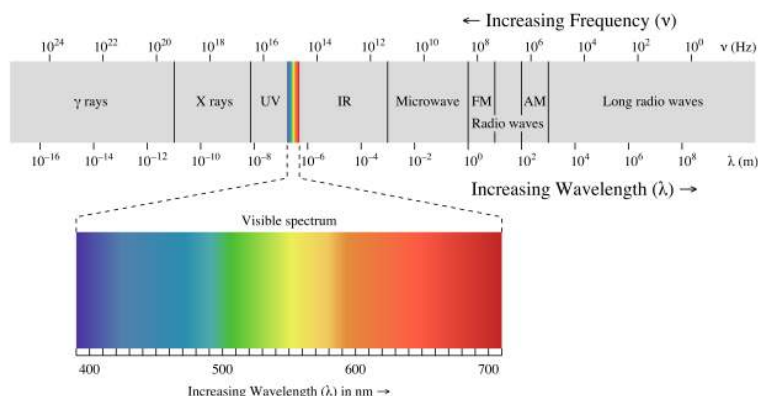
where E is energy in kJ/mol, λ (the Greek letter *lambda*) is wavelength in meters, c is 3.00×10^8 m/s (the speed of light), and h is 3.99×10^{-13} kJ·s·mol⁻¹, a number known as **Planck’s constant**.

Because electromagnetic radiation travels at a constant speed, each wavelength corresponds to a given frequency, which is the number of times per second that a crest passes a given point. Longer waves have lower frequencies, and shorter waves have higher frequencies. Frequency is commonly reported in hertz (Hz), meaning ‘cycles per second’, or ‘waves per second’. The standard unit for frequency is s⁻¹.

When talking about electromagnetic waves, we can refer either to wavelength or to frequency - the two values are interconverted using the simple expression:

$$\lambda\nu = c \quad (4.1.2)$$

where ν (the Greek letter ‘nu’) is frequency in s⁻¹. Visible red light with a wavelength of 700 nm, for example, has a frequency of 4.29×10^{14} Hz, and an energy of 40.9 kcal per mole of photons. The full range of electromagnetic radiation wavelengths is referred to as the **electromagnetic spectrum**.



(Image from [Wikipedia commons](#))

Notice that visible light takes up just a narrow band of the full spectrum. White light from the sun or a light bulb is a mixture of all of the visible wavelengths. You see the visible region of the electromagnetic spectrum divided into its different wavelengths every time you see a rainbow: violet light has the shortest wavelength, and red light has the longest.

? Exercise 4.4

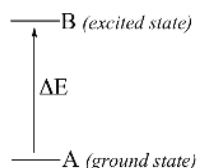
Visible light has a wavelength range of about 400-700 nm. What is the corresponding frequency range? What is the corresponding energy range, in kJ/mol of photons?

Solutions

Overview of a molecular spectroscopy experiment

In a spectroscopy experiment, electromagnetic radiation of a specified range of wavelengths is allowed to pass through a sample containing a compound of interest. The sample molecules absorb energy from some of the wavelengths, and as a result jump from a low energy 'ground state' to some higher energy 'excited state'. Other wavelengths are *not* absorbed by the sample molecule, so they pass on through. A detector on the other side of the sample records which wavelengths were absorbed, and to what extent they were absorbed.

Here is the key to molecular spectroscopy: *a given molecule will specifically absorb only those wavelengths which have energies that correspond to the energy difference of the transition that is occurring.* Thus, if the transition involves the molecule jumping from ground state A to excited state B, with an energy difference of ΔE , the molecule will specifically absorb radiation with wavelength that corresponds to ΔE , while allowing other wavelengths to pass through unabsorbed.



By observing which wavelengths a molecule absorbs, and to what extent it absorbs them, we can gain information about the nature of the energetic transitions that a molecule is able to undergo, and thus information about its structure.

These generalized ideas may all sound quite confusing at this point, but things will become much clearer as we begin to discuss specific examples.

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.2: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

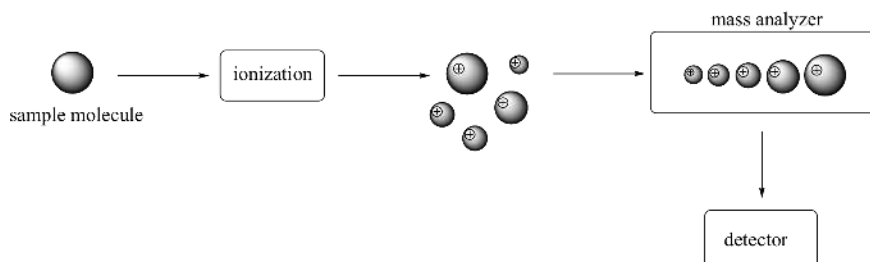
8.2: Mass Spectrometry

Mass spectrometry (MS) is a powerful analytical technique widely used by chemists, biologists, medical researchers, and environmental and forensic scientists, among others. With MS, we are looking at the mass of a molecule, or of different fragments of that molecule.

The basics of a mass spectrometry experiment

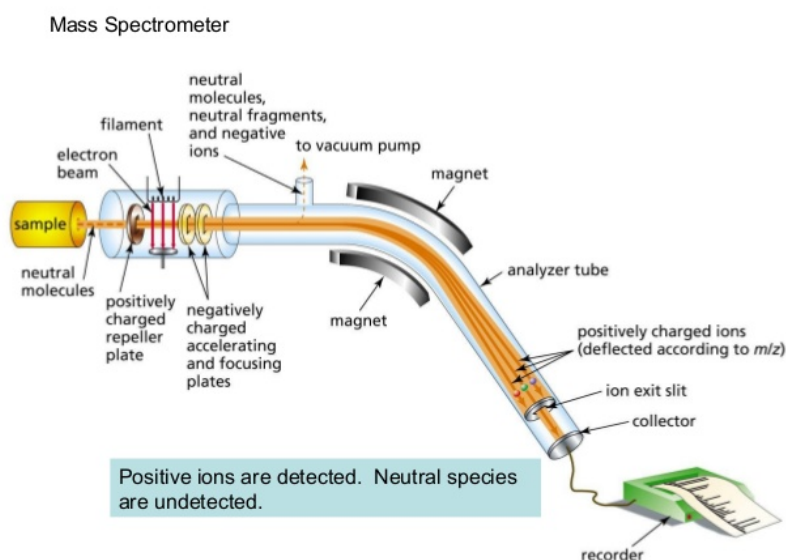
There are many different types of MS instruments, but they all have the same three essential components. First, there is an ionization source, where the molecule is given a positive electrical charge, either by removing an electron or by adding a proton. Depending on the ionization method used, the ionized molecule may or may not break apart into a population of smaller fragments. In the figure below, some of the sample molecules remain whole, while others fragment into smaller pieces.

Next in line there is a mass analyzer, where the cationic fragments are separated according to their mass.



Finally, there is a detector, which detects and quantifies the separated ions.

One of the more common types of MS techniques used in the organic laboratory is **electron ionization**. In the ionization source, the sample molecule is bombarded by a high-energy electron beam, which has the effect of knocking a valence electron off of the molecule to form a **radical cation**. Because a great deal of energy is transferred by this bombardment process, the radical cation quickly begins to break up into smaller fragments, some of which are positively charged and some of which are neutral. The neutral fragments are either adsorbed onto the walls of the chamber or are removed by a vacuum source. In the mass analyzer component, the positively charged fragments and any remaining unfragmented **molecular ions** are accelerated down a tube by an electric field.

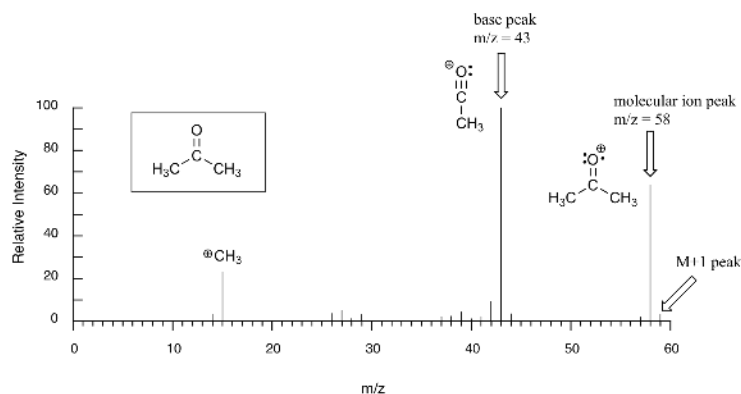


(Image from [Wikipedia Commons](#))

This tube is curved, and the ions are deflected by a strong magnetic field. Ions of different mass to charge (m/z) ratios are deflected to a different extent, resulting in a 'sorting' of ions by mass (virtually all ions have charges of $z = +1$, so sorting by the mass to charge ratio is the same thing as sorting by mass). A detector at the end of the curved flight tube records and quantifies the sorted ions.

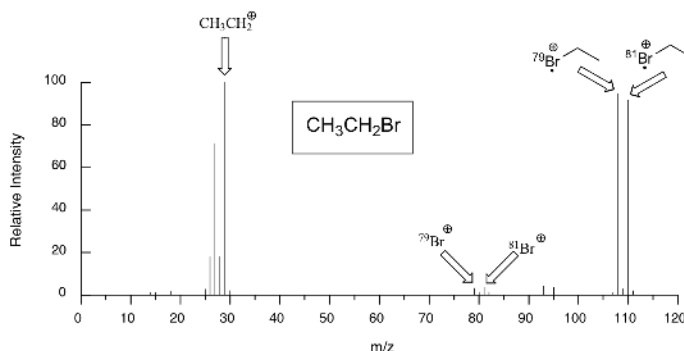
Looking at mass spectra

Below is typical output for an electron-ionization MS experiment (MS data in the section is derived from the [Spectral Database for Organic Compounds](#), a free, web-based service provided by AIST in Japan).



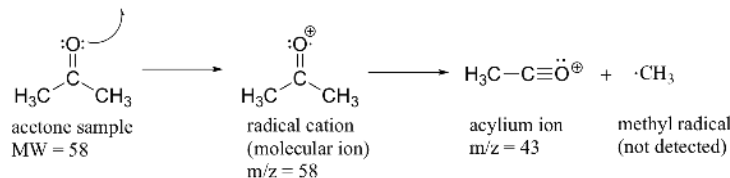
The sample is acetone. On the horizontal axis is the value for m/z (as we stated above, the charge z is almost always $+1$, so in practice this is the same as mass). On the vertical axis is the relative abundance of each ion detected. On this scale, the most abundant ion, called the **base peak**, is set to 100%, and all other peaks are recorded relative to this value. For acetone, the base peak is at $m/z = 43$ - we will discuss the formation of this fragment a bit later. The molecular weight of acetone is 58, so we can identify the peak at $m/z = 58$ as that corresponding to the **molecular ion peak**, or **parent peak**. Notice that there is a small peak at $m/z = 59$: this is referred to as the **$M+1$ peak**. How can there be an ion that has a greater mass than the molecular ion? Simple: a small fraction - about 1.1% - of all carbon atoms in nature are actually the ^{13}C rather than the ^{12}C isotope. The ^{13}C isotope is, of course, heavier than ^{12}C by 1 mass unit. In addition, about 0.015% of all hydrogen atoms are actually deuterium, the ^2H isotope. So the $M+1$ peak represents those few acetone molecules in the sample which contained either a ^{13}C or ^2H .

Molecules with lots of oxygen atoms sometimes show a small **$M+2$ peak** (2 m/z units greater than the parent peak) in their mass spectra, due to the presence of a small amount of ^{18}O (the most abundant isotope of oxygen is ^{16}O). Because there are two abundant isotopes of both chlorine (about 75% ^{35}Cl and 25% ^{37}Cl) and bromine (about 50% ^{79}Br and 50% ^{81}Br), chlorinated and brominated compounds have very large and recognizable $M+2$ peaks. Fragments containing both isotopes of Br can be seen in the mass spectrum of ethyl bromide:

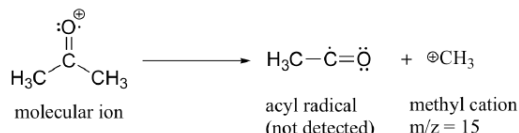


Much of the utility in electron-ionization MS comes from the fact that the radical cations generated in the electron-bombardment process tend to fragment in predictable ways. Detailed analysis of the typical fragmentation patterns of different functional groups is beyond the scope of this text, but it is worthwhile to see a few representative examples, even if we don't attempt to understand the exact process by which the fragmentation occurs. We saw, for example, that the base peak in the mass spectrum of acetone is

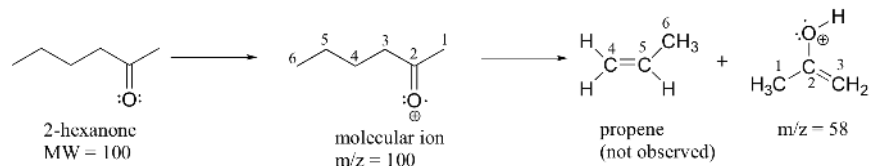
$m/z = 43$. This is the result of cleavage at the 'alpha' position - in other words, at the carbon-carbon bond adjacent to the carbonyl. Alpha cleavage results in the formation of an acylium ion (which accounts for the base peak at $m/z = 43$) and a methyl radical, which is neutral and therefore not detected.



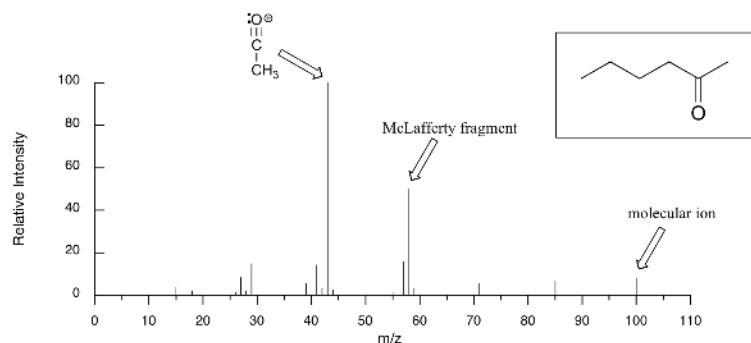
After the parent peak and the base peak, the next largest peak, at a relative abundance of 23%, is at $m/z = 15$. This, as you might expect, is the result of formation of a methyl cation, in addition to an acyl radical (which is neutral and not detected).



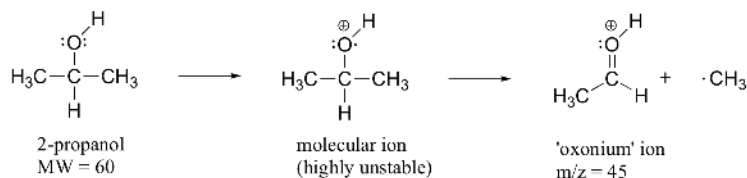
A common fragmentation pattern for larger carbonyl compounds is called the **McLafferty rearrangement**:

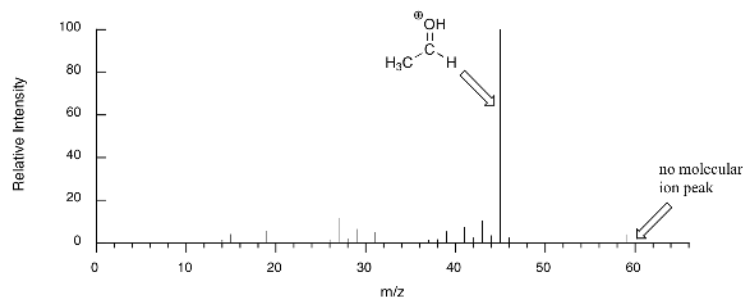


The mass spectrum of 2-hexanone shows a 'McLafferty fragment' at $m/z = 58$, while the propene fragment is not observed because it is a neutral species (remember, only cationic fragments are observed in MS). The base peak in this spectrum is again an acylium ion.



When alcohols are subjected to electron ionization MS, the molecular ion is highly unstable and thus a parent peak is often not detected. Often the base peak is from an 'oxonium' ion.





Other functional groups have predictable fragmentation patterns as well. By carefully analyzing the fragmentation information that a mass spectrum provides, a knowledgeable spectrometrists can often ‘put the puzzle together’ and make some very confident predictions about the structure of the starting sample. You can see many more actual examples of mass spectra in the [Spectral Database for Organic Compounds](#)

? Exercise 8.2.1

Using the fragmentation patterns for acetone as a guide, predict the signals that you would find in the mass spectra of:

a) 2-butanone; b) 3-hexanone; c) cyclopentanone

? Exercise 8.2.1

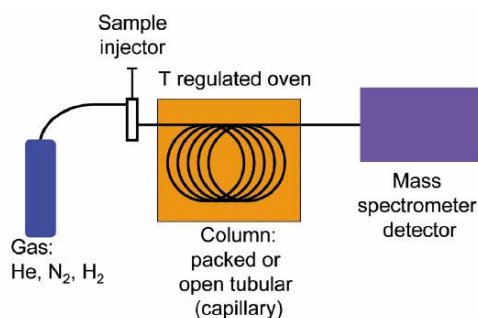
Predict some signals that you would expect to see in a mass spectrum of 2-chloropropane.

? Exercise 8.2.3

The mass spectrum of an aldehyde shows a parent peak at $m/z = 58$ and a base peak at $m/z = 29$. Propose a structure, and identify the two species whose m/z values were listed.

Gas Chromatography - Mass Spectrometry

Quite often, mass spectrometry is used in conjunction with a separation technique called gas chromatography (GC). The combined GC-MS procedure is very useful when dealing with a sample that is a mixture of two or more different compounds, because the various compounds are separated from one another before being subjected individually to MS analysis. We will not go into the details of gas chromatography here, although if you are taking an organic laboratory course you might well get a chance to try your hand at GC, and you will almost certainly be exposed to the conceptually analogous techniques of thin layer and column chromatography. Suffice it to say that in GC, a very small amount of a liquid sample is vaporized, injected into a long, coiled metal column, and pushed through the column by helium gas. Along the way, different compounds in the sample stick to the walls of the column to different extents, and thus travel at different speeds and emerge separately from the end of the column. In GC-MS, each purified compound is sent directly from the end of GC column into the MS instrument, so in the end we get a separate mass spectrum for each of the compounds in the original mixed sample. Because a compound's MS spectrum is a very reliable and reproducible 'fingerprint', we can instruct the instrument to search an MS database and identify each compound in the sample.



Gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) schematic

(Image from [Wikipedia by K. Murray](#))

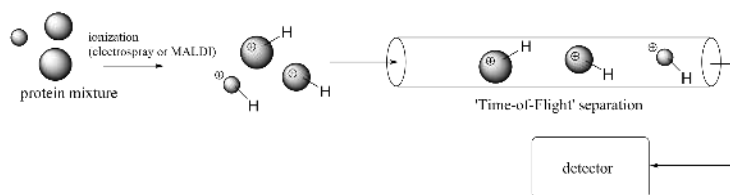
The extremely high sensitivity of modern GC-MS instrumentation makes it possible to detect and identify very small trace amounts of organic compounds. GC-MS is being used increasingly by environmental chemists to detect the presence of harmful organic contaminants in food and water samples. Airport security screeners also use high-speed GC-MS instruments to look for residue from bomb-making chemicals on checked luggage.

Mass spectrometry of proteins - applications in proteomics

Electron ionization mass spectrometry is generally not very useful for analyzing biomolecules: their high polarity makes it difficult to get them into the vapor phase, the first step in EIMS. Mass spectrometry of biomolecules has undergone a revolution over the past few decades, with many new ionization and separation techniques being developed. Generally, the strategy for biomolecule analysis involves **soft ionization**, in which much less energy (compared to techniques such as EIMS) is imparted to the molecule being analyzed during the ionization process. Usually, soft ionization involves adding protons rather than removing electrons: the cations formed in this way are significantly less energetic than the radical cations formed by removal of an electron. The result of soft ionization is that little or no fragmentation occurs, so the mass being measured is that of an intact molecule. Typically, large biomolecules are digested into smaller pieces using chemical or enzymatic methods, then their masses determined by 'soft' MS.

New developments in soft ionization MS technology have made it easier to detect and identify proteins that are present in very small quantities in biological samples. In **electrospray ionization (ESI)**, the protein sample, in solution, is sprayed into a tube and the molecules are induced by an electric field to pick up extra protons from the solvent. Another common 'soft ionization' method is 'matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization' (**MALDI**). Here, the protein sample is adsorbed onto a solid matrix, and protonation is achieved with a laser.

Typically, both electrospray ionization and MALDI are used in conjunction with a time-of-flight (TOF) mass analyzer component.



The proteins are accelerated by an electrode through a column, and separation is achieved because lighter ions travel at greater velocity than heavier ions with the same overall charge. In this way, the many proteins in a complex biological sample (such as blood plasma, urine, etc.) can be separated and their individual masses determined very accurately. Modern protein MS is extremely sensitive – recently, scientists were even able to detect the presence of *Tyrannosaurus rex* protein in a fossilized skeleton! ([Science 2007, 316, 277](#)).

Soft ionization mass spectrometry has become in recent years an increasingly important tool in the field of **proteomics**. Traditionally, protein biochemists tend to study the structure and function of individual proteins. Proteomics researchers, in contrast, want to learn more about how large numbers of proteins in a living system interact with each other, and how they respond to changes in the state of the organism. One important subfield of proteomics is the search for protein 'biomarkers' for human disease: in other words, proteins which are present in greater quantities in the tissues of a sick person than in a healthy person.

Detection in a healthy person of a known biomarker for a disease such as diabetes or cancer could provide doctors with an early warning that the patient may be especially susceptible to the disease, so that preventive measures could be taken to prevent or delay onset.

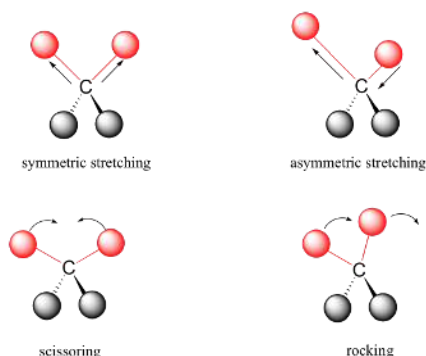
In a 2005 study, MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry was used to compare fluid samples from lung transplant recipients who had suffered from tissue rejection to samples from recipients who had not suffered rejection. Three peptides (short proteins) were found to be present at elevated levels specifically in the tissue rejection samples. It is hoped that these peptides might serve as biomarkers to identify patients who are at increased risk of rejecting their transplanted lungs. (Proteomics **2005**, 5, 1705).

This page titled [8.2: Mass Spectrometry](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **4.3: Mass Spectrometry** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

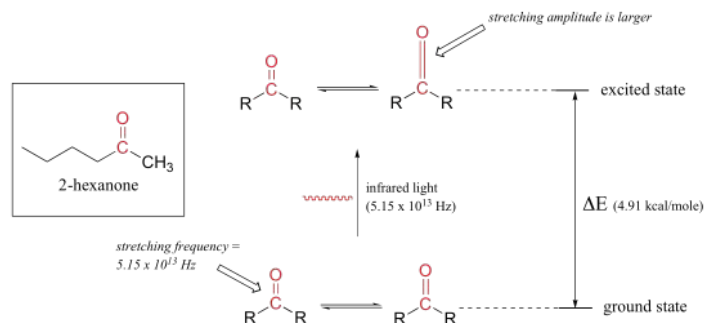
Covalent bonds in organic molecules are not rigid sticks – rather, they behave more like springs. At room temperature, organic molecules are always in motion, as their bonds stretch, bend, and twist. These complex vibrations can be broken down mathematically into individual **vibrational modes**, a few of which are illustrated below.



The energy of molecular vibration is *quantized* rather than continuous, meaning that a molecule can only stretch and bend at certain 'allowed' frequencies. If a molecule is exposed to electromagnetic radiation that matches the frequency of one of its vibrational modes, it will in most cases absorb energy from the radiation and jump to a higher vibrational energy state - what this means is that the *amplitude* of the vibration will increase, but the vibrational *frequency* will remain the same. The difference in energy between the two vibrational states is equal to the energy associated with the wavelength of radiation that was absorbed. It turns out that it is the *infrared* region of the electromagnetic spectrum which contains frequencies corresponding to the vibrational frequencies of organic bonds.

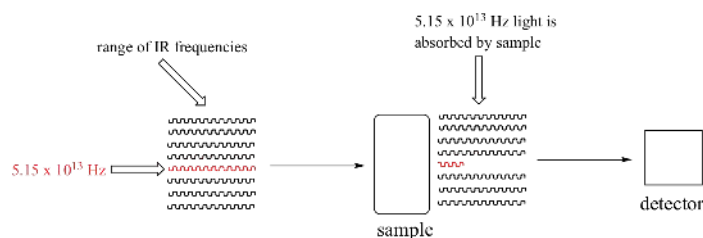
Let's take 2-hexanone as an example. Picture the carbonyl bond of the ketone group as a spring that is constantly bouncing back and forth, stretching and compressing, pushing the carbon and oxygen atoms further apart and then pulling them together. This is the **stretching mode** of the carbonyl bond. In the space of one second, the spring 'bounces' back and forth 5.15×10^{13} times - in other words, the ground-state frequency of carbonyl stretching for a the ketone group is about 5.15×10^{13} Hz.

If our ketone sample is irradiated with infrared light, the carbonyl bond will specifically absorb light with this same frequency, which by equations 4.1 and 4.2 corresponds to a wavelength of 5.83×10^{-6} m and an energy of 4.91 kcal/mol. When the carbonyl bond absorbs this energy, it jumps up to an excited vibrational state.



The value of ΔE - the energy difference between the low energy (ground) and high energy (excited) vibrational states - is equal to 4.91 kcal/mol, the same as the energy associated with the absorbed light frequency. The molecule does not remain in its excited vibrational state for very long, but quickly releases energy to the surrounding environment in form of heat, and returns to the ground state.

With an instrument called an infrared spectrophotometer, we can 'see' this vibrational transition. In the spectrophotometer, infrared light with frequencies ranging from about 10^{13} to 10^{14} Hz is passed through our sample of cyclohexane. Most frequencies pass right through the sample and are recorded by a detector on the other side.



Our 5.15×10^{13} Hz carbonyl stretching frequency, however, is absorbed by the 2-hexanone sample, and so the detector records that the intensity of this frequency, after having passed through the sample, is something less than 100% of its initial intensity.

The vibrations of a 2-hexanone molecule are not, of course, limited to the simple stretching of the carbonyl bond. The various carbon-carbon bonds also stretch and bend, as do the carbon-hydrogen bonds, and all of these vibrational modes also absorb different frequencies of infrared light.

The power of infrared spectroscopy arises from the observation that *different functional groups have different characteristic absorption frequencies*. The carbonyl bond in a ketone, as we saw with our 2-hexanone example, typically absorbs in the range of $5.11 - 5.18 \times 10^{13}$ Hz, depending on the molecule. The carbon-carbon triple bond of an alkyne, on the other hand, absorbs in the range $6.30 - 6.80 \times 10^{13}$ Hz. The technique is therefore very useful as a means of identifying which functional groups are present in a molecule of interest. If we pass infrared light through an unknown sample and find that it absorbs in the carbonyl frequency range but not in the alkyne range, we can infer that the molecule contains a carbonyl group but not an alkyne.

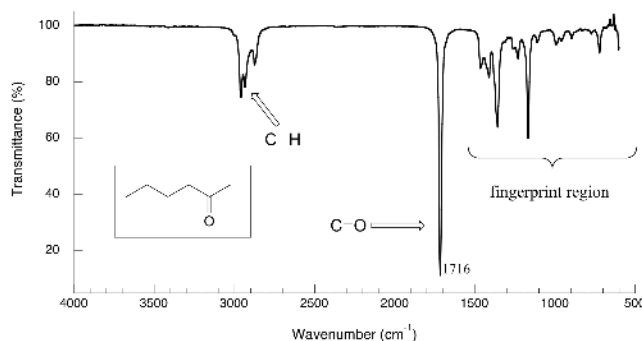
Some bonds absorb infrared light more strongly than others, and some bonds do not absorb at all. *In order for a vibrational mode to absorb infrared light, it must result in a periodic change in the dipole moment of the molecule.* Such vibrations are said to be **infrared active**. In general, the greater the polarity of the bond, the stronger its IR absorption. The carbonyl bond is very polar, and absorbs very strongly. The carbon-carbon triple bond in most alkynes, in contrast, is much less polar, and thus a stretching vibration does not result in a large change in the overall dipole moment of the molecule. Alkyne groups absorb rather weakly compared to carbonyls.

Some kinds of vibrations are **infrared inactive**. The stretching vibrations of completely symmetrical double and triple bonds, for example, do not result in a change in dipole moment, and therefore do not result in any absorption of light (but other bonds and vibrational modes in these molecules *do* absorb IR light).



infrared-inactive double and triple bonds

Now, let's look at some actual output from IR spectroscopy experiments. Below is the IR spectrum for 2-hexanone.



There are a number of things that need to be explained in order for you to understand what it is that we are looking at. On the horizontal axis we see IR wavelengths expressed in terms of a unit called **wavenumber** (cm^{-1}), which tells us how many waves fit into one centimeter. On the vertical axis we see '% **transmittance**', which tells us how strongly light was absorbed at each

frequency (100% transmittance means no absorption occurred at that frequency). The solid line traces the values of % transmittance for every wavelength – the ‘peaks’ (which are actually pointing down) show regions of strong absorption. For some reason, it is typical in IR spectroscopy to report wavenumber values rather than wavelength (in meters) or frequency (in Hz). The ‘upside down’ vertical axis, with absorbance peaks pointing down rather than up, is also a curious convention in IR spectroscopy. We wouldn’t want to make things too easy for you!

Exercise 4.5

Express the wavenumber value of 3000 cm^{-1} in terms of wavelength (in meter units) frequency (in Hz), and associated energy (in kJ/mol).

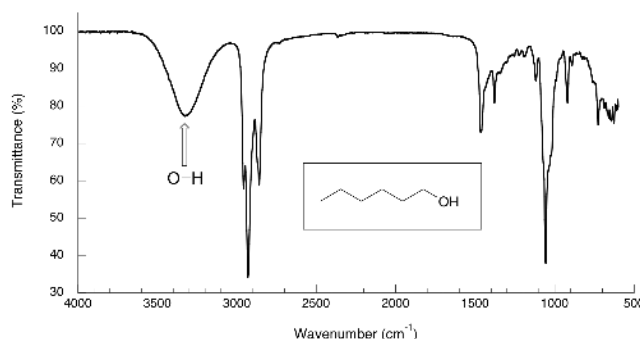
Solutions

The key absorption peak in this spectrum is that from the carbonyl double bond, at 1716 cm^{-1} (corresponding to a wavelength of 5.86 mm , a frequency of $5.15 \times 10^{13}\text{ Hz}$, and a ΔE value of 4.91 kcal/mol). Notice how strong this peak is, relative to the others on the spectrum: *a strong peak in the $1650\text{--}1750\text{ cm}^{-1}$ region is a dead giveaway for the presence of a carbonyl group*. Within that range, carboxylic acids, esters, ketones, and aldehydes tend to absorb in the shorter wavelength end ($1700\text{--}1750\text{ cm}^{-1}$), while conjugated unsaturated ketones and amides tend to absorb on the longer wavelength end ($1650\text{--}1700\text{ cm}^{-1}$).

The jagged peak at approximately $2900\text{--}3000\text{ cm}^{-1}$ is characteristic of tetrahedral carbon-hydrogen bonds. This peak is not terribly useful, as just about every organic molecule that you will have occasion to analyze has these bonds. Nevertheless, it can serve as a familiar reference point to orient yourself in a spectrum.

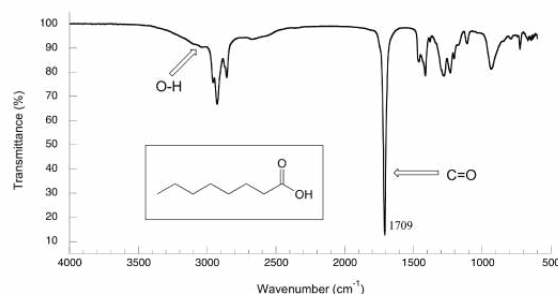
You will notice that there are many additional peaks in this spectrum in the longer-wavelength $400\text{--}1400\text{ cm}^{-1}$ region. This part of the spectrum is called the **fingerprint region**. While it is usually very difficult to pick out any specific functional group identifications from this region, it does, nevertheless, contain valuable information. The reason for this is suggested by the name: just like a human fingerprint, the pattern of absorbance peaks in the fingerprint region is unique to every molecule, meaning that the data from an unknown sample can be compared to the IR spectra of known standards in order to make a positive identification. It was the IR fingerprint region of the suspicious yellow paint that allowed for its identification as a pigment that could not possibly have been used by the purported artist, William Aiken Walker.

Now, let’s take a look at the IR spectrum for 1-hexanol.



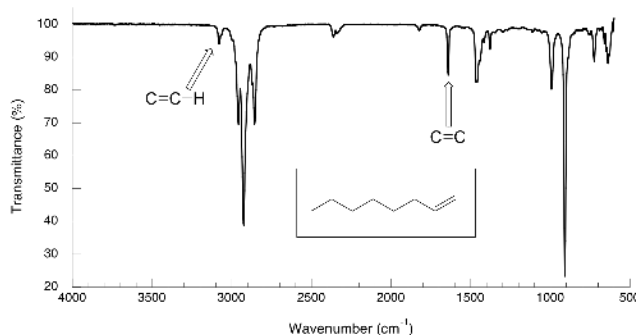
As you can see, the carbonyl peak is gone, and in its place is a very broad ‘mountain’ centered at about 3400 cm^{-1} . This signal is characteristic of the O-H stretching mode of alcohols, and is a dead giveaway for the presence of an alcohol group. The breadth of this signal is a consequence of hydrogen bonding between molecules.

In the spectrum of octanoic acid we see, as expected, the characteristic carbonyl peak, this time at 1709 cm^{-1} .



We also see a low, broad absorbance band that looks like an alcohol, except that it is displaced slightly to the right (long-wavelength) side of the spectrum, causing it to overlap to some degree with the C-H region. This is the characteristic carboxylic acid O-H single bond stretching absorbance.

The spectrum for 1-octene shows two peaks that are characteristic of alkenes: the one at 1642 cm⁻¹ is due to stretching of the carbon-carbon double bond, and the one at 3079 cm⁻¹ is due to stretching of the s bond between the alkene carbons and their attached hydrogens.



Alkynes have characteristic IR absorbance peaks in the range of 2100-2250 cm⁻¹ due to stretching of the carbon-carbon triple bond, and terminal alkenes can be identified by their absorbance at about 3300 cm⁻¹, due to stretching of the bond between the sp-hybridized carbon and the terminal hydrogen.

You can see many more examples of IR spectra in the [Spectral Database for Organic Compounds](#)

? Exercise 4.6

Explain how you could use the C-C and C-H stretching frequencies in IR spectra to distinguish between four constitutional isomers: 1,2-dimethylcyclohexene, 1,3-octadiene, 3-octyne, and 1-octyne.

Exercise 4.7

Using the online Spectral Database for Organic Compounds, look up IR spectra for the following compounds, and identify absorbance bands corresponding to those listed in the table above. List actual frequencies for each signal to the nearest cm⁻¹ unit, using the information in tables provided on the site.

- 1-methylcyclohexanol
- 4-methylcyclohexene
- 1-hexyne
- 2-hexyne

e) 3-hexyne-2,5-diol

Exercise 4.8

A carbon-carbon single bond absorbs in the fingerprint region, and we have already seen the characteristic absorption wavelengths of carbon-carbon double and triple bonds. Rationalize the trend in wavelengths. (*Hint* - remember, we are thinking of bonds as springs, and looking at the frequency at which they 'bounce').

Solutions

It is possible to identify other functional groups such as amines and ethers, but the characteristic peaks for these groups are considerably more subtle and/or variable, and often are overlapped with peaks from the fingerprint region. For this reason, we will limit our discussion here to the most easily recognized functional groups, which are summarized in table 1 in the tables section at the end of the text.

As you can imagine, obtaining an IR spectrum for a compound will not allow us to figure out the complete structure of even a simple molecule, unless we happen to have a reference spectrum for comparison. In conjunction with other analytical methods, however, IR spectroscopy can prove to be a very valuable tool, given the information it provides about the presence or absence of key functional groups. IR can also be a quick and convenient way for a chemist to check to see if a reaction has proceeded as planned. If we were to run a reaction in which we wished to convert cyclohexanone to cyclohexanol, for example, a quick comparison of the IR spectra of starting compound and product would tell us if we had successfully converted the ketone group to an alcohol (this type of reaction is discussed in detail in chapter 15).

[Khan Academy video tutorials on infrared spectroscopy](#)

This page titled [8.3: Infrared spectroscopy](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

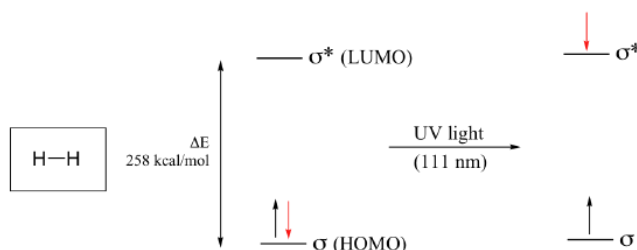
- **4.4: Infrared spectroscopy** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

While interaction with infrared light causes molecules to undergo vibrational transitions, the shorter wavelength, higher energy radiation in the UV (200-400 nm) and visible (400-700 nm) range of the electromagnetic spectrum causes many organic molecules to undergo **electronic transitions**. What this means is that when the energy from UV or visible light is absorbed by a molecule, one of its electrons jumps from a lower energy to a higher energy molecular orbital.

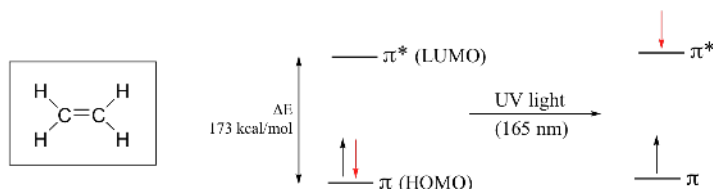
Electronic transitions

Let's take as our first example the simple case of molecular hydrogen, H_2 . As you may recall from section 2.1A, the molecular orbital picture for the hydrogen molecule consists of one bonding σ MO, and a higher energy antibonding σ^* MO. When the molecule is in the ground state, both electrons are paired in the lower-energy bonding orbital – this is the Highest Occupied Molecular Orbital (HOMO). The antibonding σ^* orbital, in turn, is the Lowest Unoccupied Molecular Orbital (LUMO).



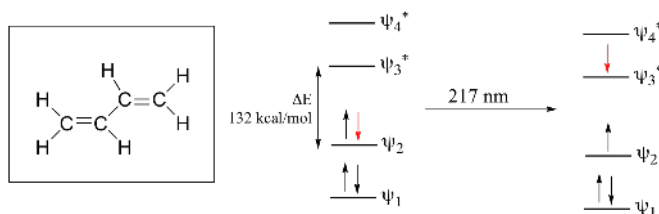
If the molecule is exposed to light of a wavelength with energy equal to ΔE , the HOMO-LUMO energy gap, this wavelength will be absorbed and the energy used to bump one of the electrons from the HOMO to the LUMO – in other words, from the σ to the σ^* orbital. This is referred to as a **$\sigma - \sigma^*$ transition**. ΔE for this electronic transition is 258 kcal/mol, corresponding to light with a wavelength of 111 nm.

When a double-bonded molecule such as ethene (common name ethylene) absorbs light, it undergoes a **$\pi - \pi^*$ transition**. Because $\pi - \pi^*$ energy gaps are narrower than $\sigma - \sigma^*$ gaps, ethene absorbs light at 165 nm - a longer wavelength than molecular hydrogen.



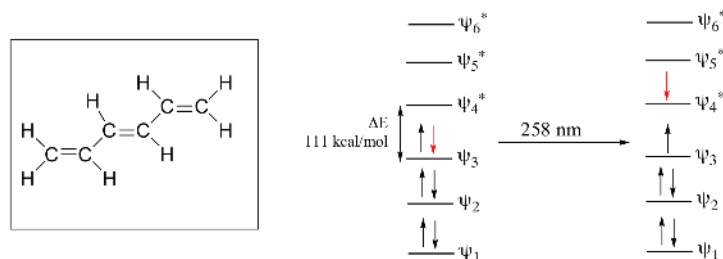
The electronic transitions of both molecular hydrogen and ethene are too energetic to be accurately recorded by standard UV spectrophotometers, which generally have a range of 220 – 700 nm. Where UV-vis spectroscopy becomes useful to most organic and biological chemists is in the study of molecules with conjugated π systems. In these groups, the energy gap for $\pi - \pi^*$ transitions is smaller than for isolated double bonds, and thus the wavelength absorbed is longer. Molecules or parts of molecules that absorb light strongly in the UV-vis region are called **chromophores**.

Let's revisit the MO picture for 1,3-butadiene, the simplest conjugated system. Recall that we can draw a diagram showing the four π MO's that result from combining the four $2p_z$ atomic orbitals. The lower two orbitals are bonding, while the upper two are antibonding.

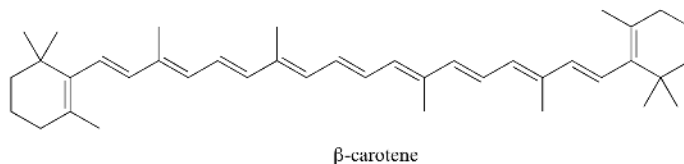


Comparing this MO picture to that of ethene, our isolated pi-bond example, we see that the HOMO-LUMO energy gap is indeed smaller for the conjugated system. 1,3-butadiene absorbs UV light with a wavelength of 217 nm.

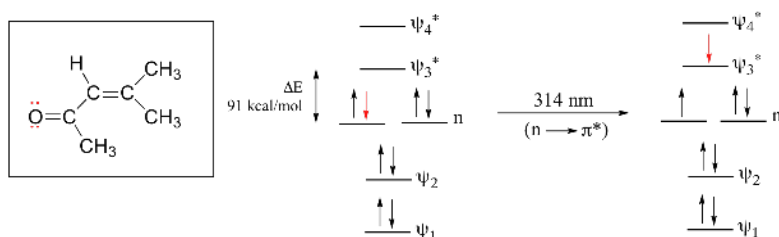
As conjugated pi systems become larger, the energy gap for a $\pi - \pi^*$ transition becomes increasingly narrow, and the wavelength of light absorbed correspondingly becomes longer. The absorbance due to the $\pi - \pi^*$ transition in 1,3,5-hexatriene, for example, occurs at 258 nm, corresponding to a ΔE of 111 kcal/mol.



In molecules with extended pi systems, the HOMO-LUMO energy gap becomes so small that absorption occurs in the visible rather than the UV region of the electromagnetic spectrum. Beta-carotene, with its system of 11 conjugated double bonds, absorbs light with wavelengths in the blue region of the visible spectrum while allowing other visible wavelengths – mainly those in the red-yellow region - to be transmitted. This is why carrots are orange.



The conjugated pi system in 4-methyl-3-penten-2-one gives rise to a strong UV absorbance at 236 nm due to a $\pi - \pi^*$ transition. However, this molecule also absorbs at 314 nm. This second absorbance is due to the transition of a non-bonding (lone pair) electron on the oxygen up to a π^* antibonding MO:



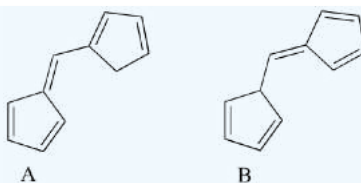
This is referred to as an **$n - \pi^*$ transition**. The nonbonding (n) MO's are higher in energy than the highest bonding p orbitals, so the energy gap for an $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ transition is smaller than that of a $\pi - \pi^*$ transition – and thus the $n - \pi^*$ peak is at a longer wavelength. In general, $n - \pi^*$ transitions are weaker (less light absorbed) than those due to $\pi - \pi^*$ transitions.

? Exercise 4.9

What is the energy of the photons (in kJ/mol) of light with wavelength of 470 nm, the λ_{max} of b-carotene?

Exercise 4.10

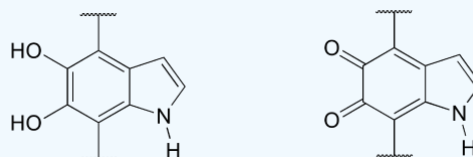
Which of the following molecules would you expect absorb at a longer wavelength in the UV region of the electromagnetic spectrum? Explain your answer.



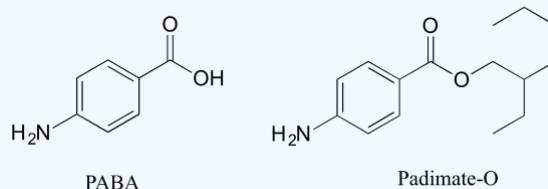
Solutions

✓ Protecting yourself from sunburn

Human skin can be damaged by exposure to ultraviolet light from the sun. We naturally produce a pigment, called melanin, which protects the skin by absorbing much of the ultraviolet radiation. Melanin is a complex polymer, two of the most common monomer units of which are shown below.



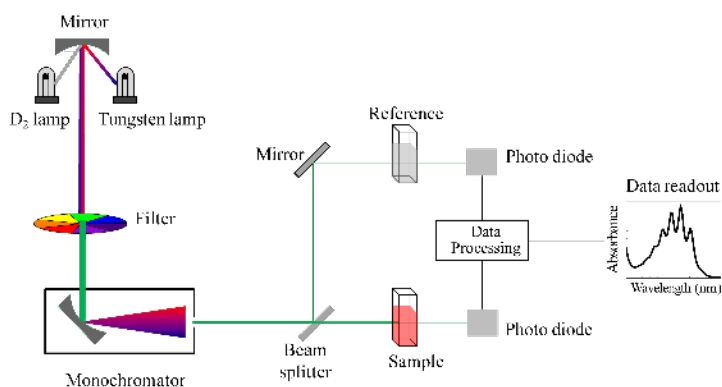
common monomer units in melanin



Overexposure to the sun is still dangerous, because there is a limit to how much radiation our melanin can absorb. Most commercial sunscreens claim to offer additional protection from both UV-A and UV-B radiation: UV-A refers to wavelengths between 315-400 nm, UV-B to shorter, more harmful wavelengths between 280-315 nm. PABA (*para*-aminobenzoic acid) was used in sunscreens in the past, but its relatively high polarity meant that it was not very soluble in oily lotions, and it tended to rinse away when swimming. Many sunscreens today contain, among other active ingredients, a more hydrophobic derivative of PABA called Padimate O.

Looking at UV-vis spectra

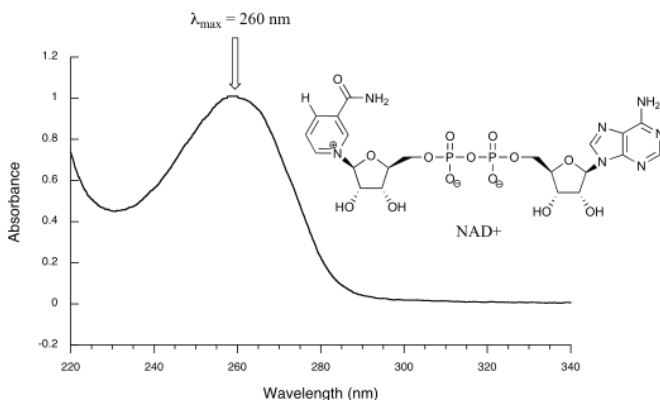
We have been talking in general terms about how molecules absorb UV and visible light – now let's look at some actual examples of data from a UV-vis absorbance spectrophotometer. The basic setup is the same as for IR spectroscopy: radiation with a range of wavelengths is directed through a sample of interest, and a detector records which wavelengths were absorbed and to what extent the absorption occurred.



Schematic for a UV-Vis spectrophotometer

(Image from [Wikipedia Commons](#))

Below is the absorbance spectrum of an important biological molecule called nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, abbreviated NAD^+ . This compound absorbs light in the UV range due to the presence of conjugated pi-bonding systems.



You'll notice that this UV spectrum is much simpler than the IR spectra we saw earlier: this one has only one peak, although many molecules have more than one. Notice also that the convention in UV-vis spectroscopy is to show the baseline at the bottom of the graph with the peaks pointing up. Wavelength values on the x-axis are generally measured in nanometers (nm) rather than in cm^{-1} as is the convention in IR spectroscopy.

Peaks in UV spectra tend to be quite broad, often spanning well over 20 nm at half-maximal height. Typically, there are two things that we look for and record from a UV-Vis spectrum. The first is λ_{max} , which is the wavelength at maximal light absorbance. As you can see, NAD^+ has $\lambda_{\text{max}} = 260 \text{ nm}$. We also want to record how much light is absorbed at λ_{max} . Here we use a unitless number called **absorbance**, abbreviated 'A'. This contains the same information as the 'percent transmittance' number used in IR spectroscopy, just expressed in slightly different terms. To calculate absorbance at a given wavelength, the computer in the spectrophotometer simply takes the intensity of light at that wavelength *before* it passes through the sample (I_0), divides this value by the intensity of the same wavelength *after* it passes through the sample (I), then takes the $\log_{10}$ of that number:

$$A = \log \frac{I_0}{I} \quad (4.3.1)$$

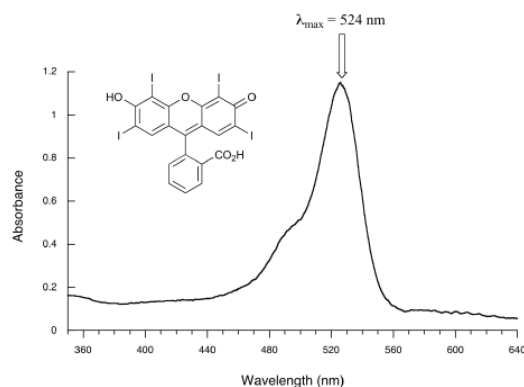
You can see that the absorbance value at 260 nm (A_{260}) is about 1.0 in this spectrum.

Exercise 4.11

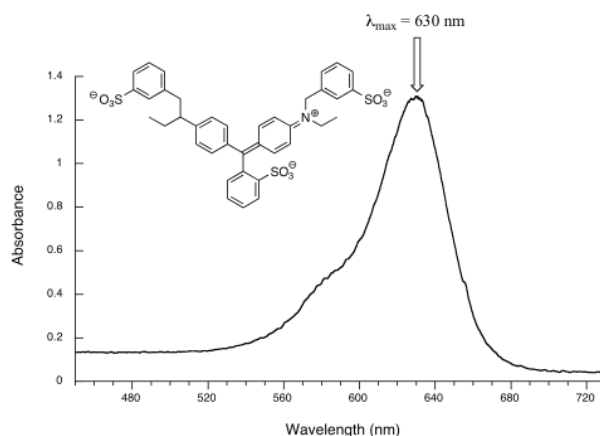
Express $A = 1.0$ in terms of percent transmittance (%T, the unit usually used in IR spectroscopy (and sometimes in UV-vis as well)).

Solutions

Here is the absorbance spectrum of the common food coloring Red #3:



Here, we see that the extended system of conjugated pi bonds causes the molecule to absorb light in the visible range. Because the λ_{max} of 524 nm falls within the green region of the spectrum, the compound appears red to our eyes. Now, take a look at the spectrum of another food coloring, Blue #1:



Here, maximum absorbance is at 630 nm, in the orange range of the visible spectrum, and the compound appears blue.

Applications of UV spectroscopy in organic and biological chemistry

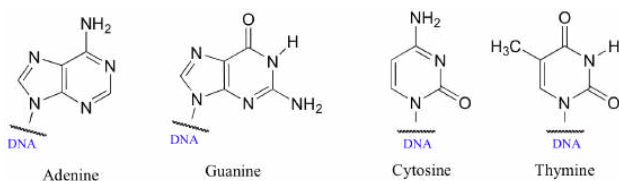
UV-vis spectroscopy has many different applications in organic and biological chemistry. One of the most basic of these applications is the use of the **Beer - Lambert Law** to determine the concentration of a chromophore. You most likely have performed a Beer - Lambert experiment in a previous chemistry lab. The law is simply an application of the observation that, within certain ranges, the absorbance of a chromophore at a given wavelength varies in a linear fashion with its concentration: the higher the concentration of the molecule, the greater its absorbance.

If we divide the observed value of A at λ_{max} by the concentration of the sample (c , in mol/L), we obtain the **molar absorptivity**, or **extinction coefficient** (ϵ), which is a characteristic value for a given compound.

$$\epsilon = \frac{A}{c} \quad (4.3.2)$$

The absorbance will also depend, of course, on the **path length** - in other words, the distance that the beam of light travels through the sample. In most cases, sample holders are designed so that the path length is equal to 1 cm, so the units for molar absorptivity are $\text{L} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{cm}^{-1}$. If we look up the value of ϵ for our compound at λ_{max} , and we measure absorbance at this wavelength, we can easily calculate the concentration of our sample. As an example, for NAD^+ the literature value of ϵ at 260 nm is $18,000 \text{ L} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{cm}^{-1}$. In our NAD^+ spectrum we observed $A_{260} = 1.0$, so using equation 4.4 and solving for concentration we find that our sample is $5.6 \times 10^{-5} \text{ M}$.

The bases of DNA and RNA are good chromophores:



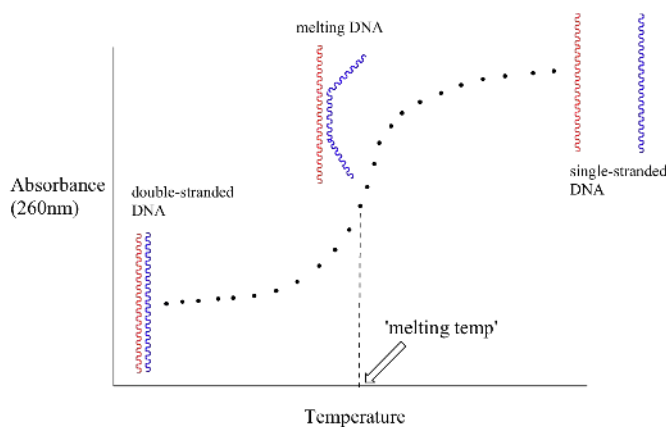
Biochemists and molecular biologists often determine the concentration of a DNA sample by assuming an average value of $\epsilon = 0.020 \text{ ng}^{-1} \times \text{mL}$ for double-stranded DNA at its λ_{max} of 260 nm (notice that concentration in this application is expressed in mass/volume rather than molarity: ng/mL is often a convenient unit for DNA concentration when doing molecular biology).

Exercise 4.12

50 microliters of an aqueous sample of double stranded DNA is dissolved in 950 microliters of water. This diluted solution has a maximal absorbance of 0.326 at 260 nm. What is the concentration of the original (more concentrated) DNA sample, expressed in micrograms per microliter?

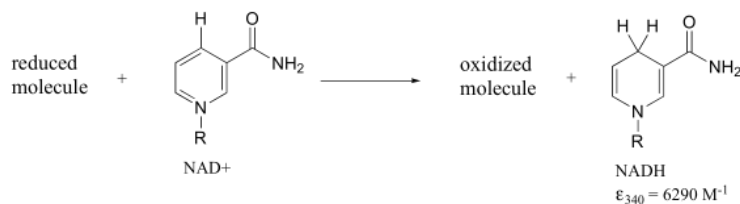
Solutions

Because the extinction coefficient of double stranded DNA is slightly lower than that of single stranded DNA, we can use UV spectroscopy to monitor a process known as DNA melting. If a short stretch of double stranded DNA is gradually heated up, it will begin to 'melt', or break apart, as the temperature increases (recall that two strands of DNA are held together by a specific pattern of hydrogen bonds formed by 'base-pairing').

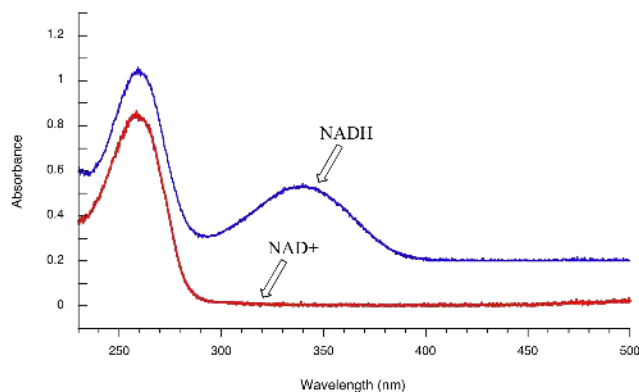


As melting proceeds, the absorbance value for the sample increases, eventually reaching a high plateau as all of the double-stranded DNA breaks apart, or 'melts'. The mid-point of this process, called the 'melting temperature', provides a good indication of how tightly the two strands of DNA are able to bind to each other.

Later we will see how the Beer - Lambert Law and UV spectroscopy provides us with a convenient way to follow the progress of many different enzymatic redox (oxidation-reduction) reactions. In biochemistry, oxidation of an organic molecule often occurs concurrently with reduction of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+ , the compound whose spectrum we saw earlier in this section) to NADH :

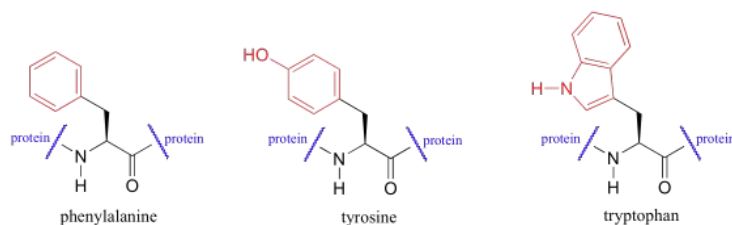


Both NAD^+ and NADH absorb at 260 nm. However NADH , unlike NAD^+ , has a second absorbance band with $\lambda_{\text{max}} = 340 \text{ nm}$ and $\epsilon = 6290 \text{ L} \cdot \text{mol}^{-1} \cdot \text{cm}^{-1}$. The figure below shows the spectra of both compounds superimposed, with the NADH spectrum offset slightly on the y-axis:



By monitoring the absorbance of a reaction mixture at 340 nm, we can 'watch' NADH being formed as the reaction proceeds, and calculate the rate of the reaction.

UV spectroscopy is also very useful in the study of proteins. Proteins absorb light in the UV range due to the presence of the aromatic amino acids tryptophan, phenylalanine, and tyrosine, all of which are chromophores.



Biochemists frequently use UV spectroscopy to study conformational changes in proteins - how they change shape in response to different conditions. When a protein undergoes a conformational shift (partial unfolding, for example), the resulting change in the environment around an aromatic amino acid chromophore can cause its UV spectrum to be altered.

[Khan Academy video tutorials on UV-Vis spectroscopy](#)

This page titled [8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [4.5: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

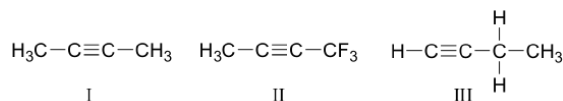
8.P: Problems for Chapter 4

[link to Solution Manual](#)

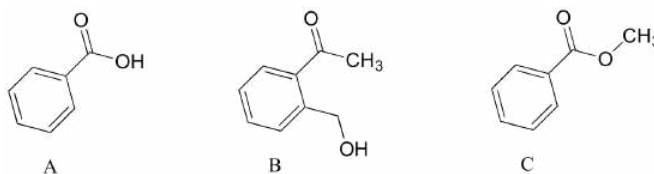
P4.1: Which represents a higher energy frequency of electromagnetic radiation, 1690 cm^{-1} or 3400 cm^{-1} ? Express each of these in terms of wavelength (meters) and frequency (Hz).

P4.2: Calculate the value, in kcal/mol, of the energy gap associated with a typical ketone carbonyl stretching transition at 1720 cm^{-1} .

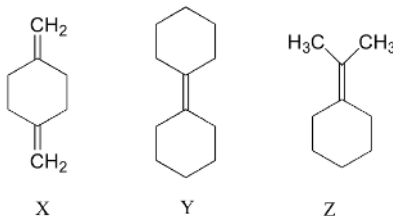
P4.3: Explain how you could use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between compounds I, II, and III.



P4.4: Explain how you could use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between compounds A, B, and C.



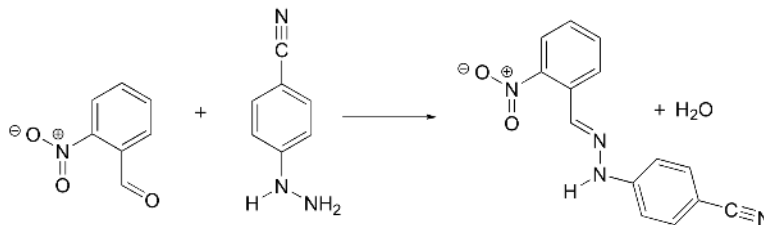
P4.5: Explain how you could use IR spectroscopy to distinguish between compounds X, Y, and Z.



P4.6: A 0.725 mL aqueous solution of NADH shows an absorbance at 340 nm of 0.257. Express (in nanomole (nm) units) how much NADH is contained in the sample.

P4.7: A 1 mL enzymatic reaction mixture contains NADH as one of the reactants, and has a starting $A_{340} = 0.345$. After the reaction is allowed to run for five minutes, the researcher records a value of $A_{340} = 0.125$. How many nm of NADH are used up per minute, on average, in this reaction?

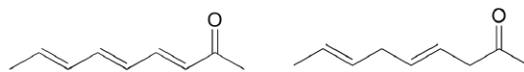
P4.8: The reaction below is of a type that we will study in Chapter 11. While the two starting materials are only slightly colored, the product is an intense orange-red. Account for this observation.



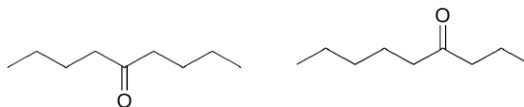
P4.9: Predict five fragments that you would expect to be evident in the mass spectrum of 3-methyl-2-pentanone.

P4.10: One would expect the mass spectrum of cyclohexanone to show a molecular ion peak at $m/z = 98$. However, the $m/z = 98$ peak in the cyclohexanone spectrum is unusually tall, compared to the molecular ion peaks in the mass spectra of other ketones such as 2-hexanone or 3-hexanone. Explain.

P4.11: Which would be more useful in distinguishing the two compounds shown below: IR or UV spectroscopy? Explain.



P4.12: Which analytical technique – IR, UV, or MS - could best be used to distinguish between the two compounds below? Explain.



Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis by Tim Soderberg (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled 8.P: Problems for Chapter 4 is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 4.P: Problems for Chapter 4 is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Introduction to Acid-base Reactions

[9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions](#)

[9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions](#)

[9.2: The Acidity Constant](#)

[9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity](#)

This page titled [9: Introduction to Acid-base Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions



The glass flask sitting on a bench in Dr. Barry Marshall's lab in Perth, Western Australia, contained about thirty milliliters of a distinctly unappetizing murky, stinking yellowish liquid.

A few days earlier, Dr. Marshall, in consultation with his mentor and research partner Dr. J. Robin Warren, had poured a nutrient broth into the flask, then dropped in a small piece of tissue sample taken from the stomach of a patient suffering from chronic gastritis. Gastritis is an inflammation of the stomach lining characterized by lingering pain, nausea, and vomiting, and is often the precursor to a peptic ulcer. Now, after several days of incubating in a warm water bath, the flask contained a living liquid culture, swarming with billions of bacterial cells. According to the medical textbooks lining Dr. Marshall's bookshelves, the bacteria should not have been there – nothing should have grown in the broth, because the highly acidic environment inside the stomach was supposed to be sterile. Also according to the textbooks, the cause of his patient's stomach ailment was stress, or perhaps a poor diet – but most definitely not a bacterial infection.

Dr. Marshall took a good, long, look at the contents of the flask. Then he gave it a final swirl, and drank it down.

Five days later, his stomach started to hurt.

This is the story of how two doctors dared to think what no one else had thought, and turned an established medical doctrine upside-down. Dr. J. Robin Warren was a pathologist at the Royal Perth Hospital in Perth, Western Australia. One day, when examining an image taken from a stomach biopsy from a patient with severe gastritis, he noticed what appeared to be spiral-shaped bacteria in the tissue, a surprising observation given the medical consensus that bacteria could not live in the stomach.

The microbe-like shapes were very hard to see, but when he tried treating the sample with a silver stain they became much more apparent. He decided to start looking at silver-stained sections of every stomach biopsy he examined, and before long he noticed a pattern: the presence of the spiral bacteria coincided with gastritis in the patient, and the tissues which were more severely inflamed seemed also to have more bacteria present. Could there be a causal link between the bacteria and the illness?

When he discussed his observations with colleagues, they dismissed the results as coincidental contamination – nothing important.

Warren wasn't willing to just let it go. He was able to interest Barry Marshall, a young internal medicine resident training at the same hospital, in taking on a research project to try and solve the mystery of the bacteria that were not supposed to exist. Marshall started by doing a thorough search of the literature, and found that his mentor was not the first to report seeing spiral-shaped bacteria in stomach tissue – there were in fact several such observations in the literature, the oldest going back to the middle of the 19th century. All of them had been dismissed as unimportant artifacts.

Warren and Marshall started sending stomach biopsies from gastritis patients to the microbiology lab in the hospital, to see if bacteria from the samples could be cultured in a petri dish. For many months, they got nothing. Then one Tuesday morning, right after the four-day Easter holiday, Marshall got a call from an excited microbiology technician: he had neglected to dispose of the latest round of test cultures before going home for the holiday, and instead had left them in the incubator the whole time. After growing for a full five days, the dishes had colonies of bacteria growing in them. All this time, the technicians had been throwing the cultures away after two days when no bacterial growth was evident – standard procedure when working with other bacteria – but apparently these bacteria were especially slow-growing.

Now that he could culture the bacteria in the lab, he was able to isolate and study them in more detail, and gave them the name *Helicobacter pylori*. Marshall confirmed Warren's earlier observation of a correlation between stomach bacteria and gastritis: only those patients suffering from gastritis or ulcers seemed to have the bacteria in their stomachs. There seemed to be strong evidence that *H. pylori* infection led to gastritis, which in turn lead eventually to stomach ulcers.

Despite the new data, Warren and Marshall's colleagues in the gastroenterology field were still unconvinced of the link between bacteria and gastritis or ulcers. Scientists are inherently skeptical people, and it was difficult to overcome the long-entrenched theory that the stomach was sterile, and that ulcers were caused by stress. Interviewed much later by *Discovery Magazine*, Marshall recalled: "To gastroenterologists, the concept of a germ causing ulcers was like saying that the Earth is flat".

Poring once more over the available literature, Marshall learned that acid-reducing drugs – an enormously profitable product– were able to relieve ulcer symptoms, but only temporarily. One interesting piece of information stood out to him, though: an over-the-counter antacid containing the element bismuth (similar the brand-name medicine *Pepto-Bismol*) provided much longer-lasting relief compared to the other drugs – and in some cases seemed to effect a permanent cure. Marshall soaked a small circle of filter paper in the bismuth medicine, and placed it on a petri dish that he had inoculated with *H. pylori*. After five days in the incubator, there was a clear circle of non-growth around the filter paper. The medicine had killed the bacteria.

Everything seemed to fit together: almost all patients with gastritis or ulcers had *H. pylori* infections, and a drug which was able to kill the bacteria was also effective against the stomach ailment. But to convince the medical community that the root cause of ulcers was *H. pylori* infection, Warren and Marshall needed more direct evidence: they had to show that a healthy stomach – free from gastritis and uninfected by *H. pylori* – would develop gastritis as a result of intentional infection, and that clearing up the infection would also cure the gastritis. They tried experiments with pigs first, then rats, and then mice, but to no avail – they were not able to induce an *H. pylori* infection in the animal models. Marshall was getting desperate: all around him he saw patients suffering terribly, getting only temporary relief from acid blockers and eventually needing to have parts of their stomachs removed, and he was convinced that simple antibiotic therapy would cure them if only their doctors could be convinced to try it. Because animal models had failed, he decided to move to a model system that he knew would work: humans. Ethical and regulatory considerations prevented him from intentionally infecting human volunteers - so his only option was to use himself as a guinea pig.

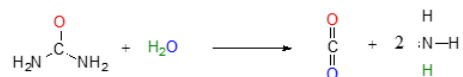
We are now at the point in the story where Barry Marshall, in the name of science and medicine, took his disgusting but undeniably courageous gulp of bacteria-laden broth. He had already undergone an endoscopy to ascertain that his stomach was free from both inflammation and *H. pylori*. As we already know, he started to develop symptoms of gastritis about five days after drinking the bacteria – the same amount of time that it took for *H. pylori* colonies to appear in the petri dish cultures. After a few more days, he underwent another endoscopy, and was overjoyed to be told that his stomach was indeed inflamed, and was infested with spiral-shaped bacteria. He initially wanted to carry on the experiment for a few more days of further tests, but his wife had a different opinion on the matter and convinced him to begin antibiotic treatment, which quickly cleared up both his infection and his stomach inflammation.

Marshall and Warren now had clear, direct evidence that the stomach inflammation which leads to ulcers was caused by bacteria, and could be cured with antibiotics. They submitted a summary of their results for presentation at a meeting of the Gastroenterological Society of Australia, but were rejected. Apparently, 67 submissions had come in and there was only time for 56 presentations; unfortunately their results were not considered important enough to make the cut. They persevered, and eventually published their findings in the June, 1984 issue of the British medical journal *The Lancet*.

The paper gained some notice, especially from microbiologists, but did not have an immediate impact in clinical practice. Around the world, gastroenterologists continued to treat ulcers with acid blockers. Outside of the mainstream medical community, however, word was getting out that two Australian doctors had a cure for ulcers, and more people started coming to them for treatment. Stories about Warren and Marshall appeared in places like *Reader's Digest* and *The National Enquirer*, and eventually in the United States the National Institutes of Health and the Food and Drug Administration responded by fast-tracking the clinical testing and approval process, and publicizing the new treatment option.

Stomach ulcers, which have been tormenting human beings since the beginning of recorded history, are today considered an easily curable condition, and the idea that they are caused by *H. pylori* infection is fully accepted by the medical community. Drs. J. Robin Warren and Barry Marshall shared the 2005 Nobel Prize in Medicine.

The now-discredited idea that the stomach is a sterile place made perfectly good biochemical sense at the time: the stomach is like a bathtub full of hydrochloric acid, which you probably recall from previous chemistry classes and labs is a very strong, dangerously corrosive acid. It is very difficult to imagine how a microbe could survive in such an environment. We now know that *H. pylori* can thrive there in part because its spiral shape allows it to burrow deep into the protective layer of mucus that coats the stomach wall. In addition, *H. pylori* cells produce large amounts of an enzyme called urease, which catalyzes a reaction between urea and water to form carbon dioxide and ammonia.



Ammonia - the main component of window-washing liquid - is a fairly strong base, and reacts rapidly and completely with hydrochloric acid to neutralize it.



Although scientists are still unsure of all the details, it is likely that these two protective strategies used by *H. pylori* somehow play a role in causing the inflammation that can lead to peptic ulcers, where the stomach lining becomes exposed to the harsh action of hydrochloric acid.

The idea of acidity is at the heart of our story about the discovery of *H. pylori*, and is the subject of this chapter. From here on in our study of organic chemistry, we will be learning about how organic molecules react, and how their structure determines their reactivity. The reaction between an acid and a base - where a proton is donated from the former and accepted by the latter - is the first kind of organic reaction that we will explore. After reviewing some basic ideas about acid-base equilibria with which you are probably already familiar from General Chemistry, we will dive into some very challenging new waters, as we attempt to use our understanding of organic structure to predict how different organic functional groups will react in an acid-base context. Many of the ideas that are introduced in this chapter, though perhaps difficult to grasp at first, will be crucial to understanding not only acid base chemistry but all of the other organic reaction types that we will see throughout the remainder of the book.

Additional reading:

The Dr. Who Drank Infectious Broth, Gave Himself an Ulcer, and Solved a Medical Mystery

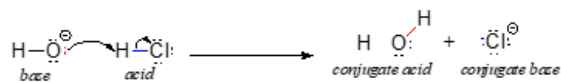
This page titled [9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- [7.1: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

The Brønsted-Lowry definition of acidity and basicity

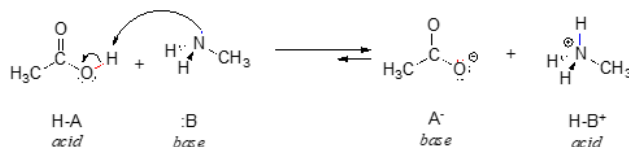
We'll begin our discussion of acid-base chemistry with a couple of essential definitions. The first of these was proposed in 1923 by the Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and the English chemist Thomas Lowry, and has come to be known as the Brønsted-Lowry definition of acidity and basicity. An acid, by the Brønsted-Lowry definition, is a species which acts as a proton donor, while a base is a proton acceptor. We have already discussed in the previous chapter one of the most familiar examples of a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction, between hydrochloric acid and hydroxide ion:



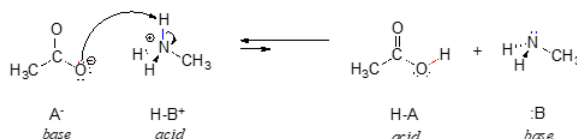
In this reaction, a proton is transferred from HCl (the acid, or proton donor) to hydroxide ion (the base, or proton acceptor). As we learned in the previous chapter, curved arrows depict the movement of electrons in this bond-breaking and bond-forming process.

After a Brønsted-Lowry acid donates a proton, what remains is called the conjugate base. Chloride ion is thus the conjugate base of hydrochloric acid. Conversely, when a Brønsted-Lowry base accepts a proton it is converted into its conjugate acid form: water is thus the conjugate acid of hydroxide ion.

Here is an organic acid-base reaction, between acetic acid and methylamine:



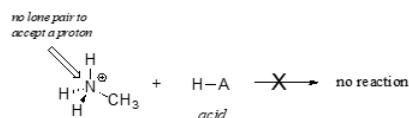
In the reverse of this reaction, acetate ion is the base and methylammonium ion (protonated methylamine) is the acid.



What makes a compound acidic (likely to donate a proton) or basic (likely to accept a proton)? Answering that question is one of our main jobs in this chapter, and will require us to put to use much of what we learned about organic structure in the first two chapters, as well as the ideas about thermodynamics that we reviewed in chapter 6.

For now, let's just consider one common property of bases: in order to act as a base, a molecule must have a reactive pair of electrons. In all of the acid-base reactions we'll see in this chapter, the basic species has an atom with a lone pair of electrons. When methylamine acts as a base, for example, the lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom is used to form a new bond to a proton.

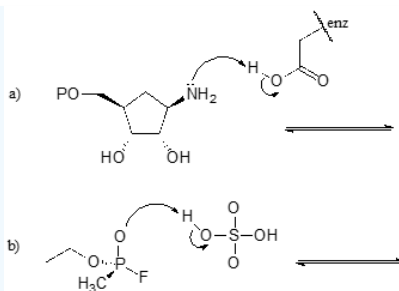
Clearly, methylammonium ion cannot act as a base – it does not have a reactive pair of electrons with which to accept a proton.



Later, in chapter 14, we will study reactions in which a pair of electrons in a π bond of an alkene or aromatic ring act in a basic fashion - but for now, will concentrate on the basicity of non-bonding (lone pair) electrons.

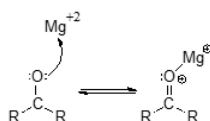
? Exercise 7.2.1

Complete the reactions below - in other words, draw structures for the missing conjugate acids and conjugate bases that result from the curved arrows provided.



The Lewis definition of acidity and basicity

The Brønsted-Lowry picture of acids and bases as proton donors and acceptors is not the only definition in common use. A broader definition is provided by the Lewis definition of acidity and basicity, in which a Lewis acid is an electron-pair acceptor and a Lewis base is an electron-pair donor. This definition covers Brønsted-Lowry proton transfer reactions, but also includes reactions in which no proton transfer is involved. The interaction between a magnesium cation (Mg^{+2}) and a carbonyl oxygen is a common example of a Lewis acid-base reaction in enzyme-catalyzed biological reactions. The carbonyl oxygen (the Lewis base) donates a pair of electrons to the magnesium cation (the Lewis acid).



While it is important to be familiar with the Lewis definition of acidity, the focus throughout the remainder of this chapter will be on acid-base reactions of the (proton-transferring) Brønsted-Lowry type.

This page titled [9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

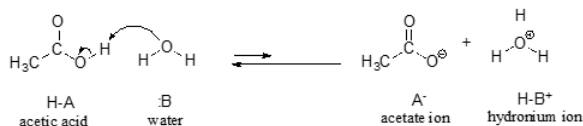
- [7.2: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

9.2: The Acidity Constant

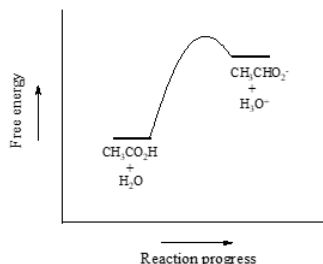
Defining the acidity constant

You are no doubt aware that some acids are stronger than others. The relative acidity of different compounds or functional groups – in other words, their relative capacity to donate a proton to a common base under identical conditions – is quantified by a number called the acidity constant, abbreviated K_a . The common base chosen for comparison is water.

We will consider acetic acid as our first example. If we make a dilute solution of acetic acid in water, an acid-base reaction occurs between the acid (proton donor) and water (proton acceptor).



Acetic acid is a weak acid, so the equilibrium favors reactants over products - it is thermodynamically 'uphill'. This is indicated in the figure above by the relative length of the forward and reverse reaction arrows.



The equilibrium constant K_{eq} is defined as:

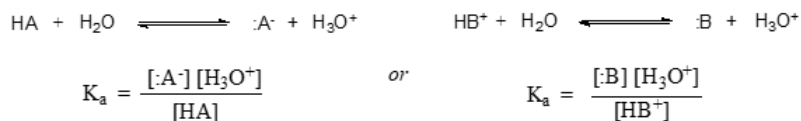
$$K_{eq} = \frac{[\text{products}]}{[\text{reactants}]} = \frac{[CH_3COO^-][H_3O^+]}{[CH_3COOH][H_2O]} \quad (9.2.1)$$

Remember that this is a dilute aqueous solution: we added a small amount of acetic acid to a large amount of water. Therefore, in the course of the reaction, the concentration of water (approximately 55.6 mol/L) changes very little, and can be treated as a constant.

If we move the constant term for the concentration of water to the left side of the equilibrium constant expression, we get the expression for K_a , the acid constant for acetic acid:

$$K_a = K_{eq}[H_2O] = \frac{[CH_3COO^-][H_3O^+]}{[CH_3COOH]} \quad (9.2.2)$$

In more general terms, the dissociation constant for a given acid HA or HB⁺ is expressed as:



The value of K_a for acetic acid is 1.75×10^{-5} - much less than 1, indicating there is much more acetic acid in solution at equilibrium than acetate and hydronium ions.

Conversely, sulfuric acid, with a K_a of approximately 10^9 , or hydrochloric acid, with a K_a of approximately 10^7 , both undergo essentially complete dissociation in water: they are very strong acids.

A number like 1.75×10^{-5} is not very easy either to say, remember, or visualize, so chemists usually use a more convenient term to express relative acidity. The pK_a value of an acid is simply the log (base 10) of its K_a value.

$$pK_a = -\log K_a \quad K_a = 10^{-pK_a} \quad (9.2.3)$$

Doing the math, we find that the pK_a of acetic acid is 4.8. The pK_a of sulfuric acid is -10, and of hydrochloric acid is -7. The use of pK_a values allows us to express the relative acidity of common compounds and functional groups on a numerical scale of about -10 (for a very strong acid) to 50 (for a compound that is not acidic at all). The lower the pK_a value, the stronger the acid.

The ionizable (proton donating or accepting) functional groups relevant to biological organic chemistry generally have pK_a values ranging from about 5 to about 20. The most important of these are summarized below, with very rough pK_a values for the conjugate acid forms. More acidic groups with pK_a values near zero are also included for reference.

Typical pK_a values

group	approximate pK_a
hydronium ion	0
protonated alcohol	0
protonated carbonyl	0
carboxylic acids	5
protonated imines	7
protonated amines	10
phenols	10
thiols	10
alcohols, water	15
α -carbon acids *	20

* α -carbon acids will be explained in section 7.6A

It is highly recommended to commit these rough values to memory now - then if you need a more precise value, you can always look it up in a more complete pK_a table. The appendix to this book contains a more detailed table of typical pK_a values, and much more complete tables are available in resources such as the Handbook of Chemistry and Physics.

pK_a vs. pH

It is important to realize that pK_a is not the same thing as pH : the former is an inherent property of a compound or functional group, while the latter is a measure of hydronium ion concentration in a given aqueous solution:

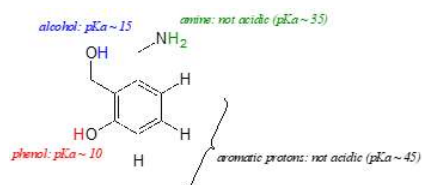
$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] \quad (9.2.4)$$

Knowing pK_a values not only allows us to compare acid strength, it also allows us to compare base strength. The key idea to remember is this: the stronger the conjugate acid, the weaker the conjugate base. We can determine that hydroxide ion is a stronger base than ammonia (NH_3), because ammonium ion (NH_4^+ , $pK_a = 9.2$) is a stronger acid than water ($pK_a = 15.7$).

? Exercise 7.3.1

Which is the stronger base, CH_3COO^- or CH_3NH_2 ? Acetate ion or ammonia? Hydroxide ion or acetate ion?

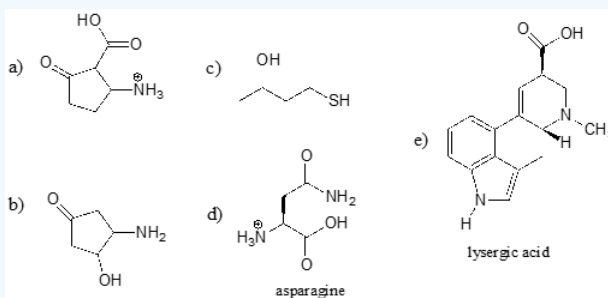
Let's put our understanding of the pK_a concept to use in the context of a more complex molecule. For example, what is the pK_a of the compound below?



We need to evaluate the potential acidity of four different types of protons on the molecule, and find the most acidic one. The aromatic protons are not all acidic - their pK_a is about 45. The amine group is also not acidic, its pK_a is about 35. (Remember, uncharged amines are basic: it is positively-charged protonated amines, with pK_a values around 10, that are weakly acidic.) The alcohol proton has a pK_a of about 15, and the phenol proton has a pK_a of about 10: thus, the most acidic group on the molecule above is the phenol. (Be sure that you can recognize the difference between a phenol and an alcohol - remember, in a phenol the **OH** group is bound directly to the aromatic ring). If this molecule were to react with one molar equivalent of a strong base such as sodium hydroxide, it is the phenol proton which would be donated to form a phenolate anion.

? Exercise 7.3.2

Identify the most acidic functional group on each of the molecules below, and give its approximate (pK_a) .



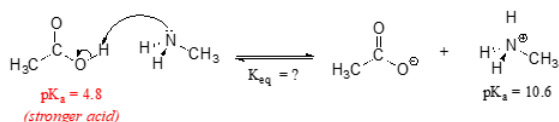
Using pK_a values to predict reaction equilibria

By definition, the pK_a value tells us the extent to which an acid will react with water as the base, but by extension we can also calculate the equilibrium constant for a reaction between any acid-base pair. Mathematically, it can be shown that:

$$K_{eq} = 10^{\Delta pK_a} \quad (9.2.5)$$

$$\Delta pK_a = (pK_a \text{ of product acid minus } pK_a \text{ of reactant acid}) \quad (9.2.6)$$

Consider a reaction between methylamine and acetic acid:

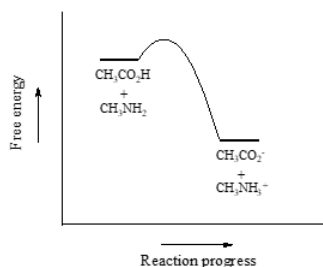


The first step is to identify the acid species on either side of the equation, and look up or estimate their pK_a values. On the left side, the acid is of course acetic acid while on the right side the acid is methyl ammonium ion (in other words, methyl ammonium ion is the acid in the reaction going from right to left). We can look up the precise pK_a values in table 7 (at the back of the book), but we already know (because we have this information memorized, right?!) that the pK_a of acetic acids is about 5, and methyl ammonium is about 10. More precise values are 4.8 and 10.6, respectively.

Without performing any calculations at all, you should be able to see that this equilibrium lies far to the right-hand side: acetic acid has a lower pK_a , meaning it is a stronger acid than methyl ammonium, and thus it wants to give up its proton more than methyl ammonium does. Doing the math, we see that

$$K_{eq} = 10^{\Delta pK_a} = 10^{(10.6-4.8)} = 10^{5.8} = 6.3 \times 10^5 \quad (9.2.7)$$

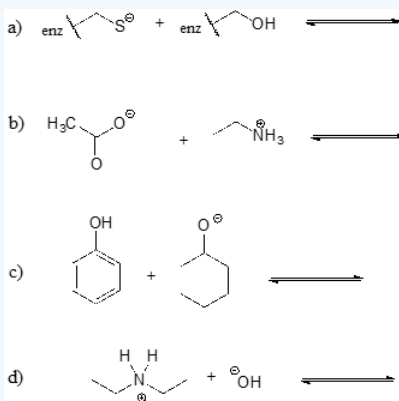
So K_{eq} is a very large number (much greater than 1) and the equilibrium for the reaction between acetic acid and methylamine lies far to the right-hand side of the equation, just as we had predicted. This also tells us that the reaction has a negative Gibbs free energy change, and is thermodynamically favorable.



If you had just wanted to quickly approximate the value of K_{eq} without benefit of precise pK_a information or a calculator, you could have approximated pK_a 5 (for the carboxylic acid) and pK_a 10 (for the ammonium ion) and calculated in your head that the equilibrium constant should be somewhere in the order of 10^5 .

? Exercise 7.3.3

Show the products of the following acid-base reactions, and roughly estimate the value of K_{eq} .



Organic molecules in buffered solution: the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

The environment inside a living cell, where most biochemical reactions take place, is an aqueous buffer with pH 7. Recall from your General Chemistry course that a buffer is a solution of a weak acid and its conjugate base. The key equation for working with buffers is the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:

The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

$$pH = pK_a + \log \left(\frac{\text{concentration of conjugate base}}{\text{concentration of weak acid}} \right) \quad (9.2.8)$$

The equation tells us that if our buffer is an equimolar solution of a weak acid and its conjugate base, the pH of the buffer will equal the pK_a of the acid (because the log of 1 is equal to zero). If there is more of the acid form than the base, then of course the pH of the buffer is lower than the pK_a of the acid.

? Exercise 7.3.4

What is the pH of an aqueous buffer solution that is 30 mM in acetic acid and 40 mM in sodium acetate? The pK_a of acetic acid is 4.8.

The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation is particularly useful when we want to think about the protonation state of different biomolecule functional groups in a pH 7 buffer. When we do this, we are always assuming that the concentration of the biomolecule is small compared to the concentration of the buffer components. (The actual composition of physiological buffer is complex, but it is primarily based on phosphoric and carbonic acids).

Imagine an aspartic acid residue located on the surface of a protein in a human cell. Being on the surface, the side chain is in full contact with the pH 7 buffer surrounding the protein. In what state is the side chain functional group: the protonated state (a carboxylic acid) or the deprotonated state (a carboxylate ion)? Using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, we fill in our values for the pH of the buffer and a rough pK_a approximation of $pK_a = 5$ for the carboxylic acid functional group. Doing the math, we find that the ratio of carboxylate to carboxylic acid is about 100 to 1: the carboxylic acid is almost completely ionized (in the deprotonated state) inside the cell. This result extends to all other carboxylic acid groups you might find on natural biomolecules or drug molecules: in the physiological environment, carboxylic acids are almost completely deprotonated.

Now, let's use the equation again, this time for an amine functional group, such as the side chain of a lysine residue: inside a cell, are we likely to see a neutral amine ($R - NH_2$) or an ammonium cation ($R - NH_3^+$)? Using the equation with $pH = 7$ (for the biological buffer) and $pK_a = 10$ (for the ammonium group), we find that the ratio of neutral amine to ammonium cation is about 1 to 100: the group is close to completely protonated inside the cell, so we will see $R - NH_3^+$, not $R - NH_2$.

We can do the same rough calculation for other common functional groups found in biomolecules.

📌 Note

📌 At physiological pH :

Carboxylic acids are deprotonated (in the carboxylate anion form)

Amines are protonated (in the ammonium cation form)

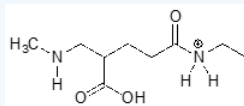
Thiols, phenols, alcohols, and amides are uncharged

Imines are a mixture of the protonated (cationic) and deprotonated (neutral) states.

We will talk about the physiological protonation state of phosphate groups in chapter 9.

? Exercise 7.3.5

The molecule below is not drawn in the protonation state that we would expect to see it at physiological pH . Redraw it in the physiologically relevant protonation state.



While we are most interested in the state of molecules at pH 7, the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation can of course be used to determine the protonation state of functional groups in solutions buffered to other pH levels. The exercises below provide some practice in this type of calculation.

? Exercise 7.3.6

What is the ratio of acetate ion to neutral acetic acid when a small amount of acetic acid $pK_a = 4.8$ is dissolved in a buffer of $pH2.8$? $pH3.8$? $pH4.8$? $pH5.8$? $pH6.8$?

? Exercise 7.3.7

Would you expect phenol to be soluble in an aqueous solution buffered to $pH2$? $pH7$? $pH12$? Explain your answer.

? Exercise 7.3.8

Methylamine is dissolved in a $pH9.0$ buffer. What percent of the solute molecules are charged? What is the average charge on solute molecules?

? Exercise 7.3.9

What is the approximate net charge on a tetrapeptide Cys-Asp-Lys-Glu in $pH7$ buffer?

This page titled [9.2: The Acidity Constant](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **7.3: The Acidity Constant** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

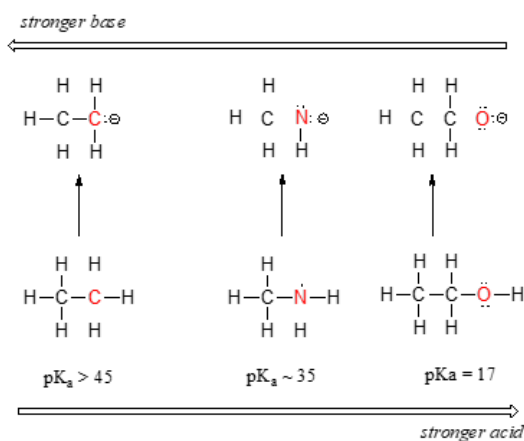
9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

Now that we know how to quantify the strength of an acid or base, our next job is to gain an understanding of the fundamental reasons behind why one compound is more acidic or more basic than another. This is a big step: we are, for the first time, taking our knowledge of organic structure and applying it to a question of organic reactivity. Many of the ideas that we'll see for the first here will continue to apply throughout the book as we tackle many other organic reaction types.

Periodic trends

First, we will focus on individual atoms, and think about trends associated with the position of an element on the periodic table. We'll use as our first models the simple organic compounds ethane, methylamine, and ethanol, but the concepts apply equally to more complex biomolecules with the same functionalities, for example the side chains of the amino acids alanine (alkane), lysine (amine), and serine (alcohol).

Horizontal periodic trend in acidity and basicity:



We can see a clear trend in acidity as we move from left to right along the second row of the periodic table from carbon to nitrogen to oxygen. The key to understanding this trend is to consider the hypothetical conjugate base in each case: the more stable (weaker) the conjugate base, the stronger the acid. Look at where the negative charge ends up in each conjugate base. In the conjugate base of ethane, the negative charge is borne by a carbon atom, while on the conjugate base of methylamine and ethanol the negative charge is located on a nitrogen and an oxygen, respectively. Remember from section 2.4A that electronegativity also increases as we move from left to right along a row of the periodic table, meaning that oxygen is the most electronegative of the three atoms, and carbon the least.

Note

The more electronegative an atom, the better able it is to bear a negative charge. Weaker bases have negative charges on more electronegative atoms; stronger bases have negative charges on less electronegative atoms.

Thus, the methoxide anion is the most stable (lowest energy, least basic) of the three conjugate bases, and the ethyl carbanion anion is the least stable (highest energy, most basic). Conversely, ethanol is the strongest acid, and ethane the weakest acid.

When moving vertically within a given column of the periodic table, we again observe a clear periodic trend in acidity. This is best illustrated with the haloacids and halides: basicity, like electronegativity, increases as we move up the column.

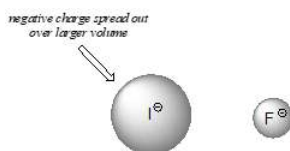
Vertical periodic trend in acidity and basicity:

pK_a of acid	conjugate acid	conjugate base
3.2	H—F	$F^{\ominus}$
-7	H—Cl	$Cl^{\ominus}$
-8	H—Br	$Br^{\ominus}$
-9	H—I	$I^{\ominus}$

Diagram illustrating the trend in acidity and basicity for haloacids and their conjugate bases. The table shows the pK_a of the acid, the conjugate acid, and the conjugate base. As we move down the column, the pK_a decreases (becomes more negative), indicating stronger acids. Conversely, the conjugate bases become stronger bases as we move down the column.

Conversely, acidity in the haloacids increases as we move down the column.

In order to make sense of this trend, we will once again consider the stability of the conjugate bases. Because fluorine is the most electronegative halogen element, we might expect fluoride to also be the least basic halogen ion. But in fact, it is the least stable, and the most basic! It turns out that when moving vertically in the periodic table, the size of the atom trumps its electronegativity with regard to basicity. The atomic radius of iodine is approximately twice that of fluorine, so in an iodide ion, the negative charge is spread out over a significantly larger volume:



This illustrates a fundamental concept in organic chemistry:

Electrostatic charges, whether positive or negative, are more stable when they are 'spread out' over a larger area.

We will see this idea expressed again and again throughout our study of organic reactivity, in many different contexts. For now, we are applying the concept only to the influence of atomic radius on base strength. Because fluoride is the least stable (most basic) of the halide conjugate bases, HF is the least acidic of the haloacids, only slightly stronger than a carboxylic acid. HI, with a pK_a of about -9, is almost as strong as sulfuric acid.

More importantly to the study of biological organic chemistry, this trend tells us that thiols are more acidic than alcohols. The pK_a of the thiol group on the cysteine side chain, for example, is approximately 8.3, while the pK_a for the alcohol group on the serine side chain is on the order of 17.

Remember the concept of 'driving force' that was introduced in section 6.2? Recall that the driving force for a reaction is usually based on two factors: relative charge stability, and relative total bond energy. Let's see how this applies to a simple acid-base reaction between hydrochloric acid and fluoride ion:



We know that HCl (pK_a -7) is a stronger acid than HF (pK_a 3.2), so the equilibrium for the reaction lies on the product side: the reaction is exergonic, and a 'driving force' pushes reactant to product.

What explains this driving force? Consider first the charge factor: as we just learned, chloride ion (on the product side) is more stable than fluoride ion (on the reactant side). This partially accounts for the driving force going from reactant to product in this reaction: we are going from less stable ion to a more stable ion.

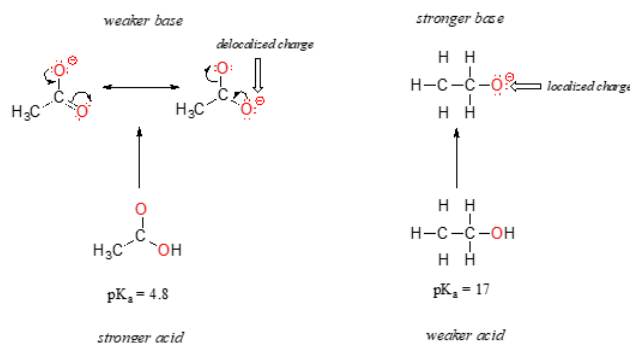
What about total bond energy, the other factor in driving force? If you consult a table of bond energies, you will see that the H-F bond on the product side is more energetic (stronger) than the H-Cl bond on the reactant side: 570 kJ/mol vs 432 kJ/mol, respectively). This also contributes to the driving force: we are moving from a weaker (less stable) bond to a stronger (more stable) bond.

Resonance effects

In the previous section we focused our attention on periodic trends - the differences in acidity and basicity between groups where the exchangeable proton was bound to different elements. Now, it is time to think about how the structure of different organic groups contributes to their relative acidity or basicity, even when we are talking about the same element acting as the proton

donor/acceptor. The first model pair we will consider is ethanol and acetic acid, but the conclusions we reach will be equally valid for all alcohol and carboxylic acid groups.

Despite the fact that they are both oxygen acids, the pK_a values of ethanol and acetic acid are strikingly different. What makes a carboxylic acid so much more acidic than an alcohol? As before, we begin by considering the stability of the conjugate bases, remembering that a more stable (weaker) conjugate base corresponds to a stronger acid.

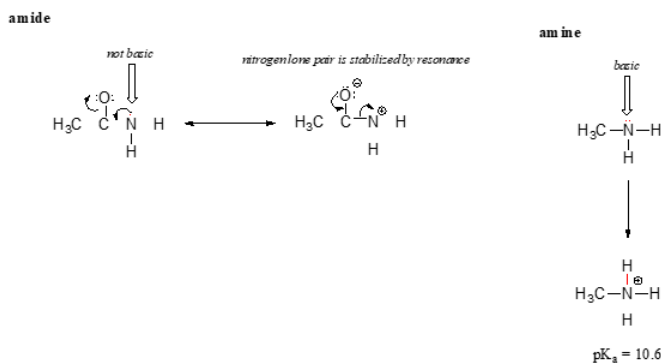


In both species, the negative charge on the conjugate base is located on oxygen, so periodic trends cannot be invoked. For acetic acid, however, there is a key difference: two resonance contributors can be drawn for the conjugate base, and the negative charge can be delocalized (shared) over two oxygen atoms. In the ethoxide ion, by contrast, the negative charge is localized, or 'locked' on the single oxygen – it has nowhere else to go. This makes the ethoxide ion much less stable.

Recall the important general statement that we made a little earlier: 'Electrostatic charges, whether positive or negative, are more stable when they are 'spread out' than when they are confined to one location.' Now, we are seeing this concept in another context, where a charge is being 'spread out' (in other words, delocalized) by resonance, rather than simply by the size of the atom involved.

The delocalization of charge by resonance has a very powerful effect on the reactivity of organic molecules, enough to account for the difference of over 12 pK_a units between ethanol and acetic acid (and remember, pK_a is a log expression, so we are talking about a factor of 10^{12} between the K_a values for the two molecules!)

The resonance effect also nicely explains why a nitrogen atom is basic when it is in an amine, but not basic when it is part of an amide group. Recall that in an amide, there is significant double-bond character to the carbon-nitrogen bond, due to a minor but still important resonance contributor in which the nitrogen lone pair is part of a π bond.



Whereas the lone pair of an amine nitrogen is 'stuck' in one place, the lone pair on an amide nitrogen is delocalized by resonance. Notice that in this case, we are extending our central statement to say that electron density – in the form of a lone pair – is stabilized by resonance delocalization, even though there is not a negative charge involved. Here's another way to think about it: the lone pair on an amide nitrogen is not available for bonding with a proton – these two electrons are too 'comfortable' being part of the delocalized π -bonding system. The lone pair on an amine nitrogen, by contrast, is not so comfortable - it is not part of a delocalized π system, and is available to form a bond with any acidic proton that might be nearby.

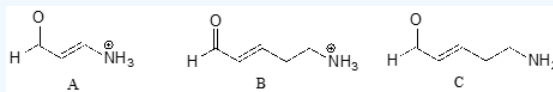
If an amide group is protonated, it will be at the oxygen rather than the nitrogen.

? Exercise 7.4.1

- Draw the Lewis structure of nitric acid, HNO_3 .
- Nitric acid is a strong acid - it has a $\text{p}K_a$ of -1.4. Make a structural argument to account for its strength. Your answer should involve the structure of the conjugate base of nitric acid.

? Exercise 7.4.2

Rank the compounds below from most acidic to least acidic, and explain your reasoning.

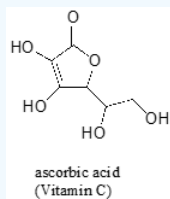


? Exercise 7.4.3

Often it requires some careful thought to predict the most acidic proton on a molecule. Ascorbic acid, also known as Vitamin C, has a $\text{p}K_a$ of 4.1 - the fact that this is in the range of carboxylic acids suggest to us that the negative charge on the conjugate base can be delocalized by resonance to two oxygen atoms. Which of the four OH protons on the molecule is most acidic? Draw the structure of ascorbate, the conjugate base of ascorbic acid, then draw a second resonance contributor showing how the negative charge is delocalized to a second oxygen atom.

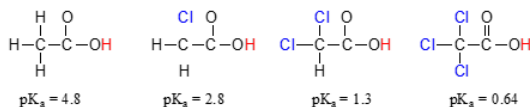
Hint

Try deprotonating each OH group in turn, then use your resonance drawing skills to figure out whether or not delocalization of charge can occur.



Inductive effects

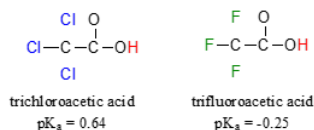
Compare the $\text{p}K_a$ values of acetic acid and its mono-, di-, and tri-chlorinated derivatives:



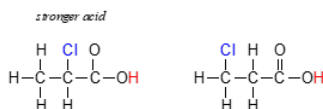
The presence of the chlorine atoms clearly increases the acidity of the carboxylic acid group, but the argument here does not have to do with resonance delocalization, because no additional resonance contributors can be drawn for the chlorinated molecules. Rather, the explanation for this phenomenon involves something called the inductive effect. A chlorine atom is more electronegative than a hydrogen, and thus is able to 'induce', or 'pull' electron density towards itself, away from the carboxylate group. In effect, the chlorine atoms are helping to further spread out the electron density of the conjugate base, which as we know has a stabilizing effect. In this context, the chlorine substituent can be referred to as an electron-withdrawing group. Notice that the $\text{p}K_a$ -lowering effect of each chlorine atom, while significant, is not as dramatic as the delocalizing resonance effect illustrated by

the difference in pK_a values between an alcohol and a carboxylic acid. In general, resonance effects are more powerful than inductive effects.

Because the inductive effect depends on electronegativity, fluorine substituents have a more pronounced pK_a -lowered effect than chlorine substituents.

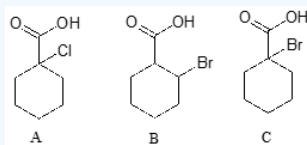


In addition, the inductive takes place through covalent bonds, and its influence decreases markedly with distance – thus a chlorine two carbons away from a carboxylic acid group has a decreased effect compared to a chlorine just one carbon away.



? Exercise 7.4.4

Rank the compounds below from most acidic to least acidic, and explain your reasoning.



This page titled 9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Tim Soderberg via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 7.4: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity by Tim Soderberg is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0. Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Introduction to Biomolecules

10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

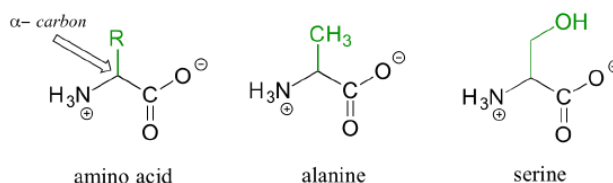
10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine

10: Introduction to Biomolecules is shared under a [not declared](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

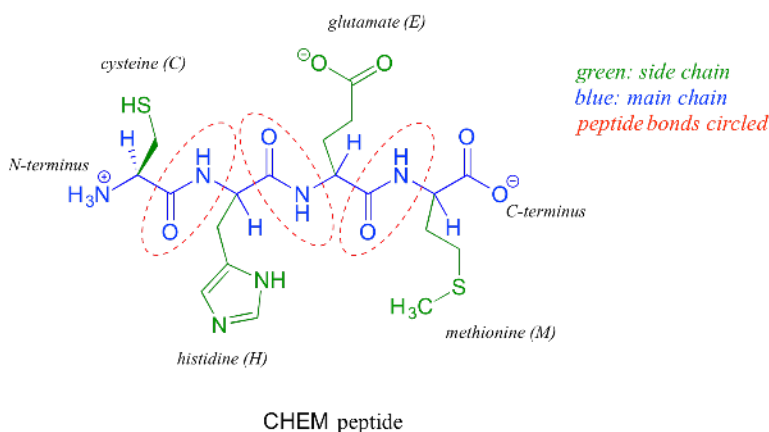
10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

Proteins are polymers of **amino acids**, linked by amide groups known as **peptide bonds**. An amino acid can be thought of as having two components: a 'backbone', or 'main chain', composed of an ammonium group, an 'alpha-carbon', and a carboxylate, and a variable 'side chain' (in green below) bonded to the alpha-carbon.



There are twenty different side chains in naturally occurring amino acids, and it is the identity of the side chain that determines the identity of the amino acid: for example, if the side chain is a $-CH_3$ group, the amino acid is alanine, and if the side chain is a $-CH_2OH$ group, the amino acid is serine. Many amino acid side chains contain a functional group (the side chain of serine, for example, contains a primary alcohol), while others, like alanine, lack a functional group, and contain only a simple alkane.

The two 'hooks' on an amino acid monomer are the amine and carboxylate groups. Proteins (polymers of ~50 amino acids or more) and peptides (shorter polymers) are formed when the amino group of one amino acid monomer reacts with the carboxylate carbon of another amino acid to form an amide linkage, which in protein terminology is a **peptide bond**. Which amino acids are linked, and in what order - the protein **sequence** - is what distinguishes one protein from another, and is coded for by an organism's DNA. Protein sequences are written in the amino terminal (N-terminal) to carboxylate terminal (C-terminal) direction, with either three-letter or single-letter abbreviations for the amino acids (see amino acid table). Below is a four amino acid peptide with the sequence "cysteine - histidine - glutamate - methionine". Using the single-letter code, the sequence is abbreviated CHEM.

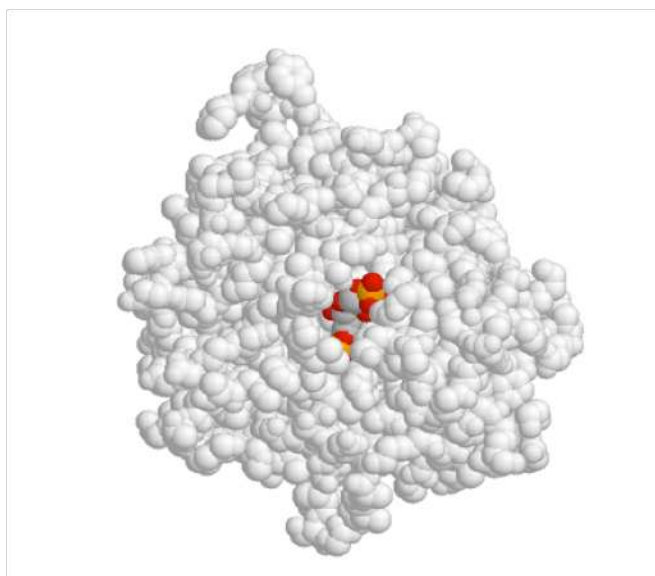


When an amino acid is incorporated into a protein it loses a molecule of water and what remains is called a **residue** of the original amino acid. Thus we might refer to the 'glutamate residue' at position 3 of the CHEM peptide above.

Once a protein polymer is constructed, it in many cases folds up very specifically into a three-dimensional structure, which often includes one or more 'binding pockets' in which other molecules can be bound. It is this shape of this folded structure, and the precise arrangement of the functional groups within the structure (especially in the area of the binding pocket) that determines the function of the protein.

Enzymes are proteins which catalyze biochemical reactions. One or more reacting molecules - often called **substrates** - become bound in the **active site** pocket of an enzyme, where the actual reaction takes place. **Receptors** are proteins that bind specifically to one or more molecules - referred to as **ligands** - to initiate a biochemical process. For example, we saw in the introduction to this chapter that the TrpVI receptor in mammalian tissues binds capsaicin (from hot chili peppers) in its binding pocket and initiates a heat/pain signal which is sent to the brain.

Shown below is an image of the glycolytic enzyme fructose-1,6-bisphosphate aldolase (in grey), with the substrate molecule bound inside the active site pocket.



(x-ray crystallographic data are from *Protein Science* **1999**, 8, 291; pdb code [4ALD](#). Image produced with [JMol First Glance](#))

Intro to nucleic acids ⇒

Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

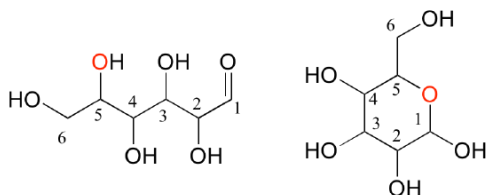
This page titled [10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.4.1: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

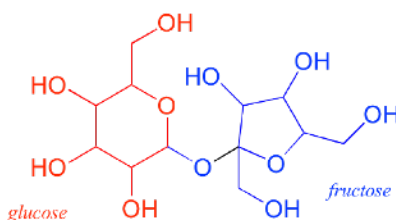
10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

The term 'carbohydrate', which literally means 'hydrated carbons', broadly refers to monosaccharides, disaccharides, oligosaccharides (shorter polymers) and polysaccharides (longer polymers). We will cover the chemistry of carbohydrates more completely in chapter 10, but the following is a quick overview.

Monosaccharides (commonly called 'sugars') are four- to six-carbon molecules with multiple alcohol groups and a single aldehyde or ketone group. Many monosaccharides exist in aqueous solution as a rapid equilibrium between an open chain and one or more cyclic forms. Two forms of a six-carbon monosaccharide are shown below.

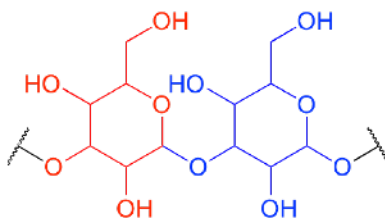


Disaccharides are two monosaccharides linked together: for example, sucrose, or table sugar, is a disaccharide of glucose and fructose.



sucrose

Oligosaccharides and **polysaccharides** are longer polymers of monosaccharides. **Cellulose** is a polysaccharide of repeating glucose monomers. As a major component of the cell walls of plants, cellulose is the most abundant organic molecule on the planet! A two-glucose stretch of a cellulose polymer is shown below.



cellulose

The linking group in carbohydrates is not one that we have covered in this chapter - in organic chemistry this group is called an acetal, while biochemists usually use the term **glycosidic bond** when talking about carbohydrates (again, the chemistry of these groups in the context of carbohydrate structures will be covered in detail in chapter 10).

The possibilities for carbohydrate structures are vast, depending on which monomers are used (there are many monosaccharides in addition to glucose and fructose), which carbons are linked, and other geometric factors which we will learn about later. Multiple linking (branching) is also common, so many carbohydrates are not simply linear chains. In addition, carbohydrate chains are often attached to proteins and/or lipids, especially on the surface of cells. All in all, carbohydrates are an immensely rich and diverse subfield of biological chemistry.

Intro to amino acids and proteins

Contributors and Attributions

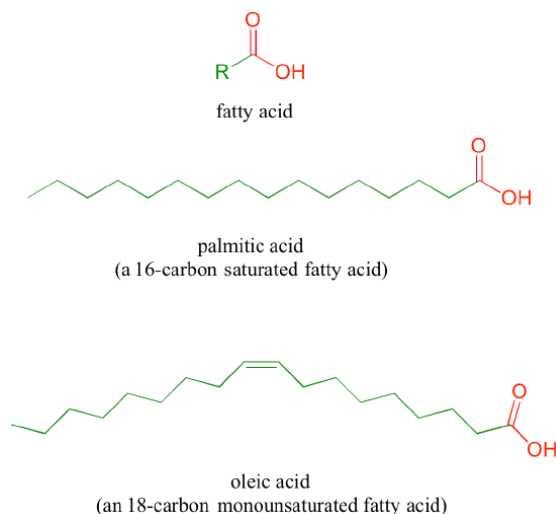
- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

This page titled [10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

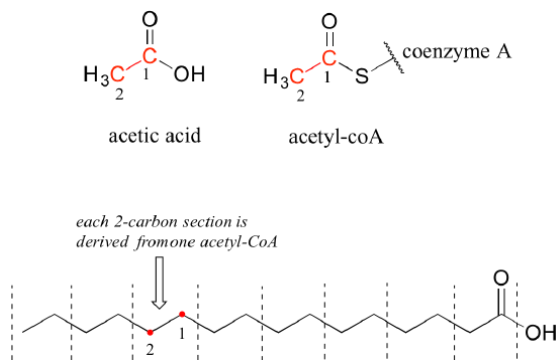
- **1.4.2: Introduction to carbohydrate structure** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

Lipids are a class of biomolecules which includes fats, oils, waxes, and compounds such as cholesterol that are referred to as 'isoprenoids'. Fats, oils, and waxes all incorporate **fatty acids**, which are composed of hydrocarbon chains terminating in a carboxylic acid/carboxylate group (we will learn in Chapter 7 that carboxylic acids are predominantly in their anionic, carboxylate form in biological environments). Saturated fatty acids contain only alkane carbons (single bonds only), monounsaturated fatty acids contain a single double bond, and polyunsaturated fatty acids contain two or more double bonds. The double bonds in naturally occurring fatty acids are predominantly in the *cis* configuration.

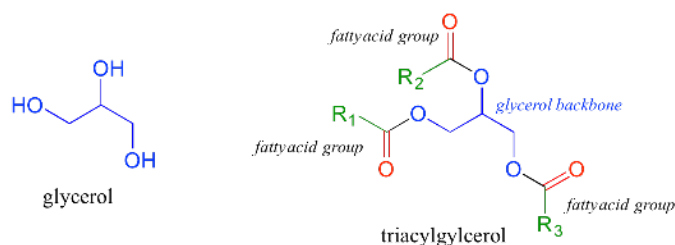


Fatty acids are synthesized in the body by a process in which the hydrocarbon chain is elongated two carbons at a time. Each two-carbon unit is derived from a metabolic intermediate called **acetyl-coA**, which is essentially an acetic acid (vinegar) molecule linked to a large 'carrier' molecule, called coenzyme A, by a thioester functional group. We will see much more of coenzyme A when we study the chemistry of thioesters in chapter 11.



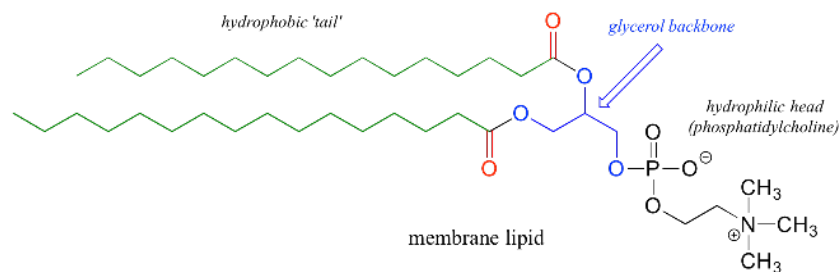
The breakdown of fatty acids in the body also occurs two carbons at a time, and the endpoint is again acetyl-coenzyme A. We will learn about the details of all of the reactions in these metabolic pathways at various places in this book. If you go on to take a biochemistry course, you will learn more about the big picture of fatty acid metabolism - how it is regulated, and how it fits together with other pathways of central metabolism.

Fats and oils are forms of **triacylglycerol**, a molecule composed of a glycerol backbone with three fatty acids linked by ester functional groups.



Solid fats (predominant in animals) are triacylglycerols with long (16-18 carbon) saturated fatty acids. Liquid oils (predominant in plants) have unsaturated fatty acids, sometimes with shorter hydrocarbon chains. In chapter 2 we will learn about how chain length and degree of unsaturation influences the physical properties of fats and oils.

Cell membranes are composed of **membrane lipids**, which are **diacylglycerols** linked to a hydrophilic '**head group**' on the third carbon of the glycerol backbone. The fatty acid chains can be of various lengths and degrees of saturation, and the two chains combined make up the hydrophobic '**tail**' of each membrane lipid molecule.



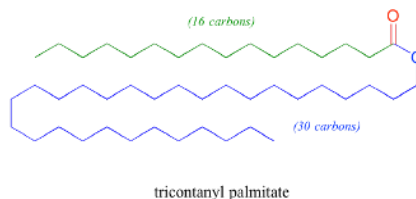
In chapter 2 we will see how these molecules come together to form a cell membrane.

Exercise 1.17

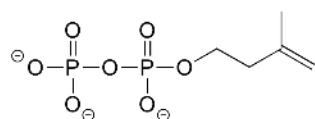
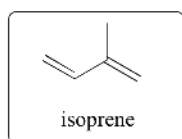
What functional group links the phosphatidylcholine 'head' group to glycerol in the membrane lipid structure shown above?

Solutions to exercises

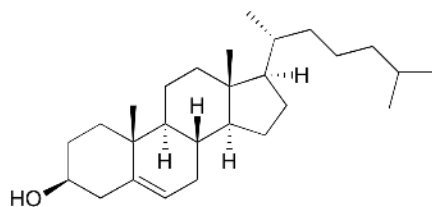
Waxes are composed of fatty acids linked to long chain alcohols through an ester group. Tricantanyl palmitate is a major component of beeswax, and is constituted of a 16-carbon fatty acid linked to a 30-carbon alcohol.



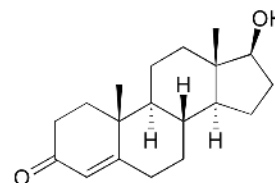
Isoprenoids, a broad class of lipids present in all forms of life, are based on a five-carbon, branched-chain building block called isoprene. In humans, cholesterol and hormones such as testosterone are examples of isoprenoid biomolecules. In plants, isoprenoids include the deeply colored compounds such as lycopene (the red in tomatoes) and carotenoids (the yellows and oranges in autumn leaves).



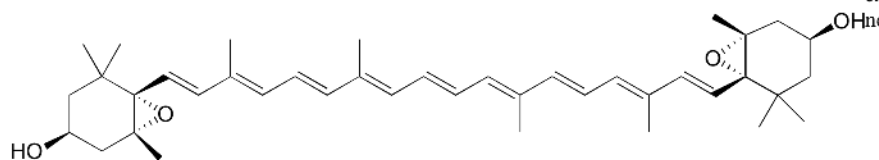
isopentenyl diphosphate



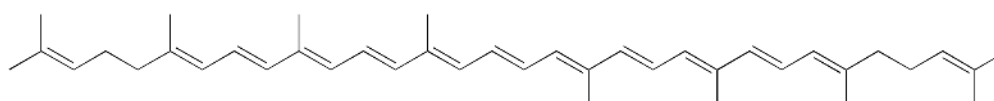
cholesterol



test
ost
ero

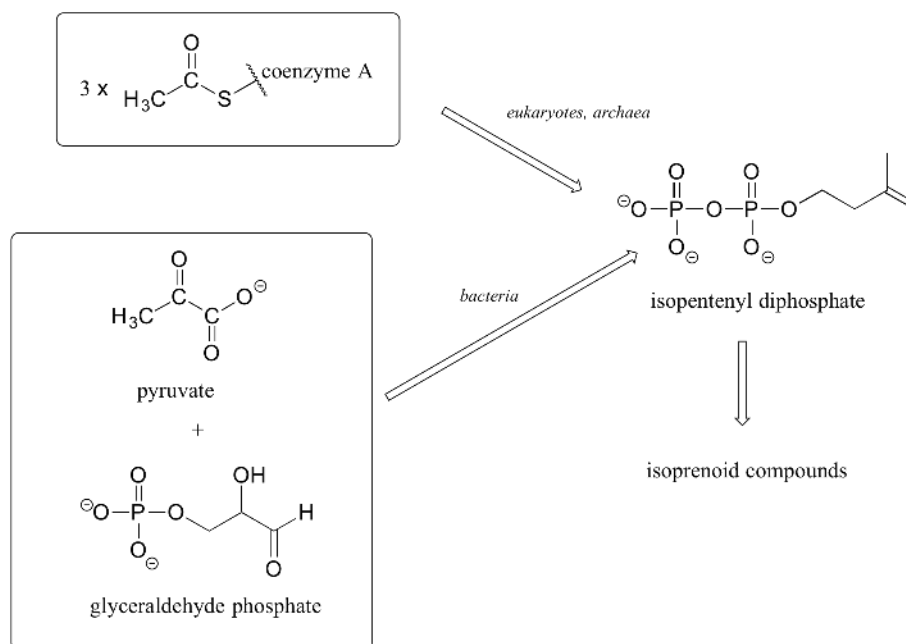


violaxanthin
(a carotenoid)



lycopene

In almost all eukaryotes, isopentenyl diphosphate (the building block molecule for all isoprenoid compounds) is synthesized from three acetyl-Coenzyme A molecules. Bacteria and the plastid organelles in plants have a different biosynthetic pathway to isopentenyl diphosphate, starting with pyruvate and glyceraldehyde phosphate.



Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

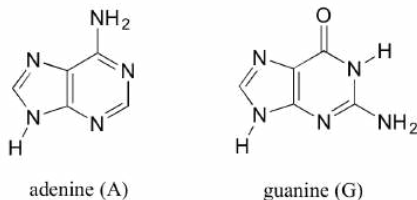
This page titled [10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.4.3: Introduction to Lipid Structure** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

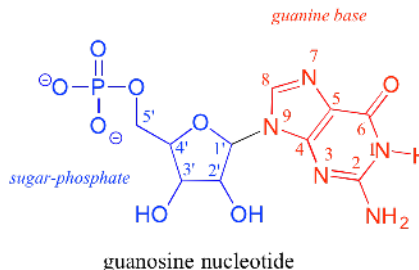
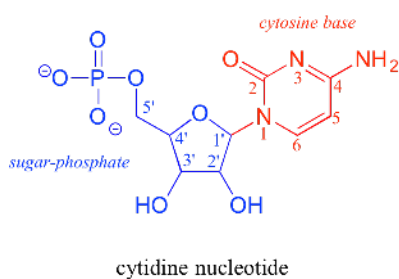
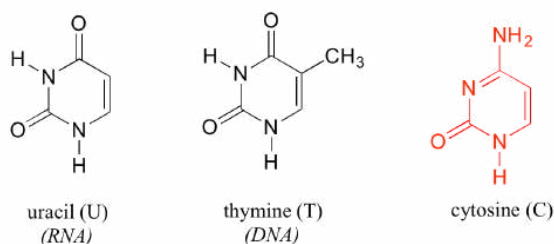
10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA) are polymers composed of monomers called **nucleotides**. An RNA nucleotide consists of a five-carbon sugar phosphate linked to one of four nucleic acid **bases**: guanine (G), cytosine (C), adenine (A) and uracil (U).

purine bases

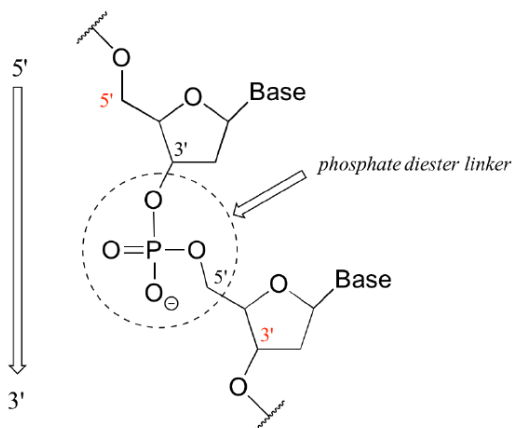


pyrimidine bases



In a DNA nucleotide, the sugar is missing the hydroxyl group at the 2' position, and the thymine base (T) is used instead of uracil. The conventional numbering system used for DNA and RNA is shown here for reference - the prime (') symbol is used to distinguish the sugar carbon numbers from the base carbon numbers.

The two 'hooks' on the RNA or DNA monomer are the 5' phosphate and the 3' hydroxyl on the sugar, which in DNA polymer synthesis are linked by a 'phosphate diester' group. By convention, DNA and RNA sequences are written in 5' to 3' direction.



Contributors and Attributions

- [Organic Chemistry With a Biological Emphasis](#) by [Tim Soderberg](#) (University of Minnesota, Morris)

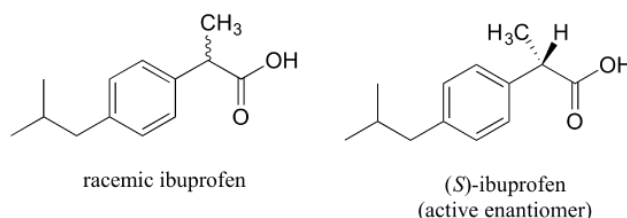
This page titled [10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid \(DNA and RNA\) structure](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **1.4.4: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine

While challenging to understand and visualize, the stereochemistry concepts we have explored in this chapter are integral to the study of living things. The vast majority of biological molecules contain chiral centers and/or stereogenic alkene groups. Most importantly, proteins are chiral, which of course includes all of the enzymes which catalyze the chemical reactions of a cell, the receptors which transmit information within or between cells, and the antibodies which bind specifically to potentially harmful invaders. You know from your biology classes that proteins, because they fold up into a specific three dimensional shape, are able to very specifically recognize and bind to other organic molecules. The ligand or substrate bound by a particular protein could be a small organic molecule such as pyruvate all the way up to a large biopolymer such as a specific region of DNA, RNA, or another protein. Because they are chiral molecules, *proteins are very sensitive to the stereochemistry of their ligands*: a protein may bind specifically to (*R*)-glyceraldehyde, for example, but not bind to (*S*)-glyceraldehyde, just as your right hand will not fit into a left-handed baseball glove (see end of chapter for a link to an animation illustrating this concept).

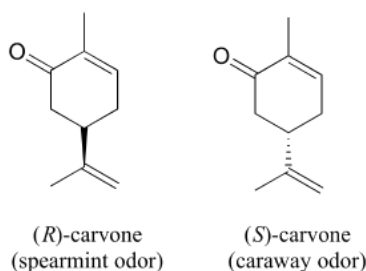
The over-the-counter painkiller ibuprofen is currently sold as a racemic mixture, but only the *S* enantiomer is effective, due to the specific way it is able to bind to and inhibit the action of prostaglandin H_2 synthase, an enzyme in the body's inflammation response process.



The *R* enantiomer of ibuprofen does not bind to prostaglandin H_2 synthase in the same way as the *S* enantiomer, and as a consequence does not exert the same inhibitory effect on the enzyme's action (see [Nature Chemical Biology 2011, 7, 803](#) for more details). Fortunately, (*R*)-ibuprofen apparently does not cause any harmful side effects, and is in fact isomerized gradually by an enzyme in the body to (*S*)-ibuprofen.

Earlier in this chapter we discussed the tragic case of thalidomide, and mentioned that it appears that it is specifically the *S* enantiomer which caused birth defects. Many different proposals have been made over the past decades to try to explain the teratogenic (birth defect-causing) effect of the drug, but a clear understanding still evades the scientific community. In 2010, however, a team in Japan reported evidence that thalidomide binds specifically to a protein called 'thereblon'. Furthermore, when production of thereblon is blocked in female zebra fish, developmental defects occur in her offspring which are very similar to the defects caused by the administration of thalidomide, pointing to the likelihood that thalidomide binding somehow inactivates the protein, thus initiating the teratogenic effect. (<http://news.sciencemag.org/2010/03/t...-partner-crime>)

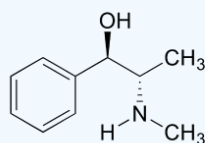
You can, with a quick trip to the grocery store, directly experience the biological importance of stereoisomerism. Carvone is a chiral, plant-derived molecule that contributes to the smell of spearmint in the *R* form and caraway (a spice) in the *S* form.



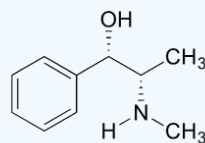
Although details are not known, the two enantiomers presumably interact differently with one or more smell receptor proteins in your nose, generating the transmission of different chemical signals to the olfactory center of your brain.

? Exercise 3.28

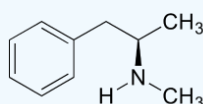
Ephedrine, found in the Chinese traditional medicine *ma huang*, is a stimulant and appetite suppressant. Both pseudoephedrine and levomethamphetamine are active ingredients in over-the-counter nasal decongestants. Methamphetamine is a highly addictive and illegal stimulant, and is usually prepared in illicit 'meth labs' using pseudoephedrine as a starting point.



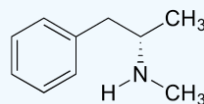
ephedrine



pseudoephedrine



methamphetamine

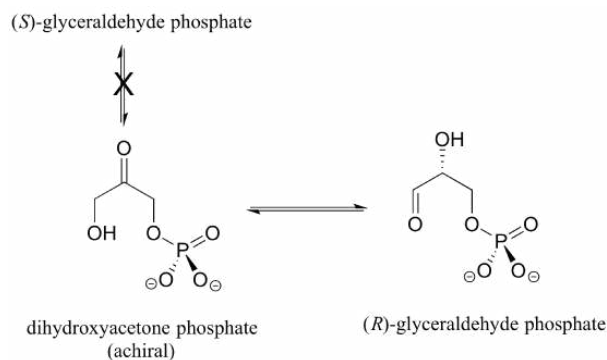


levomethamphetamine

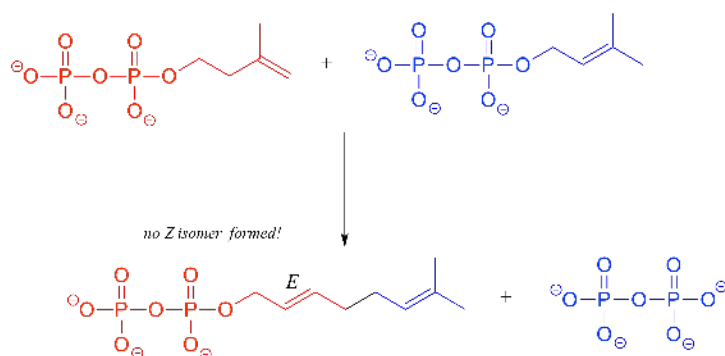
What is the relationship between ephedrine and pseudoephedrine? Between methamphetamine and levomethamphetamine? Between pseudoephedrine and methamphetamine? Your choices are: not isomers, constitutional isomers, diastereomers, enantiomers, or same molecule.

Solutions to exercises

Enzymes are very specific with regard to the stereochemistry of the reactions they catalyze. *When the product of a biochemical reaction contains a chiral center or a stereogenic alkene, with very few exceptions only one stereoisomer of the product is formed.* In the glycolysis pathway, for example, the enzyme triose-phosphate isomerase catalyzes the reversible interconversion between dihydroxyacetone (which is achiral) and (*R*)-glyceraldehyde phosphate. The (*S*)-glyceraldehyde enantiomer is not formed by this enzyme in the left-to-right reaction, and is not used as a starting compound in the right-to-left reaction - it does not 'fit' in the active site of the enzyme.



In the isoprenoid biosynthesis pathway, two five-carbon building-block molecules combine to form a ten-carbon chain containing an *E*-alkene group. The enzyme does *not* catalyze formation of the *Z* diastereomer.



In chapters 9-17 of this book, and continuing on into your study of biological and organic chemistry, you will be learning about how enzymes are able to achieve these feats of stereochemical specificity. If you take a more advanced class in organic synthesis, you will also learn how laboratory chemists are figuring out ingenious ways to exert control over the stereochemical outcomes of nonenzymatic reactions, an area of chemistry that is particularly important in the pharmaceutical industry.

This page titled [10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Tim Soderberg](#) via [source content](#) that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- **3.11: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine** by [Tim Soderberg](#) is licensed [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#). Original source: https://digitalcommons.morris.umn.edu/chem_facpubs/1/.

Index

A

abbreviated structures
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

acetal
7.8: Acetals and Ketals

acetal function
7.8: Acetals and Ketals

acid
9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

acidity
9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

Acidity Constant
9.2: The Acidity Constant

active site
10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

adenine
10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

alcohols
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

aldehyde
7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview

aldehydes
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

alkanes
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

alkenes
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature
6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes
6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes

alkynes
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

amides
7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides

amines
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

amino acids
4.5: Optical Activity
10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

Amphipathic
3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

angle strain
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

anti conformation
4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

antibonding orbitals
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

aromatic compounds
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

aromatic sextet
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

aromatics
2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

axial hydrogen
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

B

base
9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

base peak
8.2: Mass Spectrometry

bases
7.4: Leaving Groups

basicity
9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

biology
10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine

boat conformation
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

bond delocalization
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

bond dipole
3.0: Non-covalent interactions

bond dissociation energy
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

bond geometry
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

bond length
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

bonding
1.1: Drawing Organic Structures
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

bonding orbitals
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

buffer
9.2: The Acidity Constant

buffered solution
9.2: The Acidity Constant

C

carbocation
1.2: Valence Bond Theory
7.3: Electrophiles

carbonyl
7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions

carboxylic acid
7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

catalysis
5.3: Catalysis

cellulose
10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

CFCs
6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

chair conformation
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

chiral centers
4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

chirality
4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry
4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

chlorofluorocarbons
6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

chromophore

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

concerted nucleophilic substitution
7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution

conformational isomerism
4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

conjugate acid
9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

conjugate base
9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

conjugated pi bonds
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

constructive intinterference
3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

cyclohexane
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

cylindrical symmetry
1.2: Valence Bond Theory

cytosine
10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

D

dextrorotatory
4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry
4.5: Optical Activity

diacylglycerol
10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

diastereomers
4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers
4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

diaxial repulsion
4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

dihedral angle
4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

dipoles
3.0: Non-covalent interactions

disaccharides
10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

DNA
10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

E

E/Z system
6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes

eclisped conformation
4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

electromagnetic spectrum
8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy

electron ionization
8.2: Mass Spectrometry

electron movement
3.2: Resonance

electron pair acceptor
9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

electron pair donor
9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

electronegativity

3.0: Non-covalent interactions

electronic transitions

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

electrophile

6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

7.2: Nucleophiles

7.3: Electrophiles

electrophilic addition

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

Electrophilic reaction

6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions

Electrospray Ionization

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

enantiomer

4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

enantiomers

4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

enzymes

10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

epimerases

4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

epimers

4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers

equatorial hydrogen

4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

equilibrium constant

9.2: The Acidity Constant

esters

7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides

ethers

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

exercises

5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Exercises)

extinction coefficient (ϵ)

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

F

fatty acids

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

fingerprint region

8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

formal charges

1.1: Drawing Organic Structures

free radical

6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions

6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals

6.5: Radical Chain Reactions

6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

fructose

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

functional groups

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

fused ring aromatics

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

G

gauche conformation

4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

Gibbs free energy

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

5.3: Catalysis

glucose

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

glycosides

7.8: Acetals and Ketals

glycosidic bond

7.8: Acetals and Ketals

10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

guanine

10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

H

Hückel rule

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

haloalkanes

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

heat of hydrogenation

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

hemiacetal

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

Hemiketal

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

heterocycles

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

heterolytic cleavage

6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals

HOMO

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

homolytic cleavage

6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals

hybrid orbitals

1.2: Valence Bond Theory

hydrate

7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

hydrolysis

7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution

7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides

hydrophilic

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

hydrophobic

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

I

imines

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

inductive effects

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

infrared active vibration

8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

infrared inactive vibration

8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

infrared spectroscopy

8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

isomers

1.1: Drawing Organic Structures

Isoprenoids

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

K

Ka

9.2: The Acidity Constant

Keq

9.2: The Acidity Constant

ketal

7.8: Acetals and Ketals

ketal function

7.8: Acetals and Ketals

ketone

7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview

ketones

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

khan

1.1: Drawing Organic Structures

kinetics

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

L

lactams

7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

lactones

7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives

leaving group

7.4: Leaving Groups

levorotatory

4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry

4.5: Optical Activity

Lewis

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

Lewis acid

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

Lewis base

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

lipids

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

lone pair

7.2: Nucleophiles

LUMO

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

M

M+1 peak (mass spec)

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

M+2 peak (mass spec)

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

Markovnikov's Rule

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

mass spectrometry

8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

McLafferty rearrangement

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

mechanism

5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction

Mechanism

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution

7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism

medicine

10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine

membrane lipids

10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

micelles

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

MO theory

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

molar absorptivity

8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy

molecular dipole moment

3.0: Non-covalent interactions

molecular ion peak

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

molecular ions

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

Molecular orbital diagram

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

molecular orbitals

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

molecular spectroscopy

8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy

monosaccharides

10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

N

Newmann projection

4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

nitriles

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

nomenclature

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

nonbonding orbitals

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

nucleic acid bases

10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

nucleophile

7.2: Nucleophiles

7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview

nucleophilic acyl substitution

7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions

7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism

Nucleophilic addition

7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview

Nucleophilic Carbonyl addition

7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions

Nucleophilic substitution

5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism

7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions

Nucleophilic substitution

7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution

nucleophilicity

7.2: Nucleophiles

nucleotides

10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

O

Oligosaccharides

10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

optical activity

4.5: Optical Activity

ozone

6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

ozone hole

6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

ozone layer

6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction

P

parent peak

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

Peptide bond

10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

peptide bonds

3.2: Resonance

periodic trends

7.2: Nucleophiles

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

phenols

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

phosphates

2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

photons

8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy

physical properties

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

pi bond

1.2: Valence Bond Theory

3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

pKa

9.2: The Acidity Constant

Planck's constant

8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy

plane of symmetry

4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

polar aprotic solvent

7.2: Nucleophiles

polar covalent bonds

3.0: Non-covalent interactions

Polar protic solvent

7.2: Nucleophiles

polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE)

6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

polymer

6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

polysaccharide

10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure

propagation

6.5: Radical Chain Reactions

proteins

3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

proteomics

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

proton acceptor

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

proton donor

9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions

proton transfer

5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism

protonation state

7.2: Nucleophiles

psuedorotation

4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

R

R/S Nomenclature

4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system

racemic mixture

4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system

radical cation

8.2: Mass Spectrometry

Radical chain reaction

6.5: Radical Chain Reactions

6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions

radical hydrogen atom abstraction

6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals

Radical reactions

6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions

rate determining step

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

reaction coordinate

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

reaction coordinate diagram

5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

reaction rate

5.3: Catalysis

reactivity

5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity

5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Exercises)

5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity (Summary)

regiochemistry

6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes

resonance

7.2: Nucleophiles

9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

resonance contributors

3.2: Resonance

resonance hybrid

3.2: Resonance

ring inversion

4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules

RNA

10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

S

sigma bond

- 1.2: Valence Bond Theory
- 3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity

SN1

- 7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution
- 7.4: Leaving Groups

SN2

- 7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution
- 7.4: Leaving Groups

soft ionization

- 8.2: Mass Spectrometry

solubility

- 3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds

specific rotation

- 4.5: Optical Activity

spectrometry

- 8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

spectroscopy

- 8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS

sperm oil

- 2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II

staggered conformation

- 4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules

stereochemistry

- 6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes
- 6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes
- 7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview
- 10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine

stereogenic

- 6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes

stereoisomer

- 4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers

steric hindrance

- 7.3: Electrophiles

sterics

- 7.2: Nucleophiles

stretching mode

- 8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

strong acid

- 9.2: The Acidity Constant

structure

- 3.2: Resonance
- 8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS
- 8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I
- 9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity

structures

- 1.1: Drawing Organic Structures

substrate

- 10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins

sugars

- 7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates

sulfides

- 2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

T

thalidomide

- 4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system

thermodynamics

- 5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics

thioesters

- 7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides

thiols

- 2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature

thymine

- 10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

triacylglycerol

- 10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

U

uracil

- 10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure

V

valence bond theory

- 1.2: Valence Bond Theory

van der Waals forces

- 3.0: Non-covalent interactions

vibrational modes

- 8.3: Infrared spectroscopy

VSEPR

- 1.2: Valence Bond Theory

W

Waxes

- 10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure

weak acid

- 9.2: The Acidity Constant

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: OIT: CHE 331 - Organic Chemistry I

Webpages: 80

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#): 75% (60 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 25% (20 pages)

By Page

- OIT: CHE 331 - Organic Chemistry I - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - Front Matter - [Undeclared](#)
 - [TitlePage](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [InfoPage](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - 1: General Chemistry Recap - [Undeclared](#)
 - [1.0: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1: Drawing Organic Structures](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.2: Valence Bond Theory](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 2: Functional Groups - [Undeclared](#)
 - [2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - 3: Properties and Principles - [Undeclared](#)
 - [3.0: Non-covalent interactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.2: Resonance](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 4: Conformations and Stereochemistry - [Undeclared](#)
 - [4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.5: Optical Activity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 5: Overview of Organic Reactivity - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.3: Catalysis](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Exercises\)](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Summary\)](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 6: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms - [Undeclared](#)
 - [6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.5: Radical Chain Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 7: Reaction Mechanisms Continued - [Undeclared](#)
 - [7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)

- 7.2: Nucleophiles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Electrophiles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Leaving Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Acetals and Ketals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I - *Undeclared*
 - 8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.2: Mass Spectrometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.3: Infrared spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.P: Problems for Chapter 4 - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9: Introduction to Acid-base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.2: The Acidity Constant - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10: Introduction to Biomolecules - *Undeclared*
 - 10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
 - Index - *Undeclared*
 - Glossary - *Undeclared*
 - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
 - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: OIT: CHE 331 - Organic Chemistry I

Webpages: 80

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#): 75% (60 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 25% (20 pages)

By Page

- OIT: CHE 331 - Organic Chemistry I - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - Front Matter - [Undeclared](#)
 - [TitlePage](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [InfoPage](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - 1: General Chemistry Recap - [Undeclared](#)
 - [1.0: Prelude to Atoms, Electron Configurations, and Lewis Structures](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.1: Drawing Organic Structures](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [1.2: Valence Bond Theory](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 2: Functional Groups - [Undeclared](#)
 - [2.0: Functional groups and organic nomenclature](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [2.1: Prelude to Organic Structure and Bonding II](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - 3: Properties and Principles - [Undeclared](#)
 - [3.0: Non-covalent interactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.1: Physical properties of organic compounds](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.2: Resonance](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [3.3: Molecular orbital theory- conjugation and aromaticity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 4: Conformations and Stereochemistry - [Undeclared](#)
 - [4.0: Prelude to Conformations and Stereochemistry](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [4.1: Conformations of open-chain organic molecules](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.2: Conformations of cyclic organic molecules](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.3: Chirality and stereoisomers](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.4: Naming chiral centers- the R and S system](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.5: Optical Activity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [4.6: Compounds with multiple chiral centers](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 5: Overview of Organic Reactivity - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.0: Prelude to Organic Reactivity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.1: A First Look at Some Organic Reaction Mechanism](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.2: A Quick Review of Thermodynamics and Kinetics](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.3: Catalysis](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.4: Comparing Biological Reactions to Laboratory Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.E: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Exercises\)](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [5.S: Overview of Organic Reactivity \(Summary\)](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 6: Introduction to Reaction Mechanisms - [Undeclared](#)
 - [6.0: Prelude to Radical Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.1: Overview of Single-Electron Reactions and Free Radicals](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.2: Prelude to Electrophilic Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.3: Electrophilic Addition to Alkenes](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.4: Stereochemistry of alkenes](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.5: Radical Chain Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.6: Useful Polymers formed by Radical Chain Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [6.7: Destruction of the Ozone Layer by a Radical Chain Reaction](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - 7: Reaction Mechanisms Continued - [Undeclared](#)
 - [7.0: Prelude to Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)
 - [7.1: Two Mechanistic Models for Nucleophilic Substitution](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 4.0](#)

- 7.2: Nucleophiles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Electrophiles - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Leaving Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: Prelude to Nucleophilic Carbonyl Addition Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Nucleophilic Additions to Aldehydes and Ketones - An Overview - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Hemiacetals, Hemiketals, and Hydrates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Acetals and Ketals - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Prelude to Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.10: Carboxylic Acid Derivatives - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.11: The Nucleophilic Acyl Substitution Mechanism - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.12: Hydrolysis of Thioesters, Esters, and Amides - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8: Intro to Spectroscopy - UV-Vis, IR, MS - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.0: Prelude to Structure Determination I - *Undeclared*
 - 8.1: Introduction to molecular spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.2: Mass Spectrometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.3: Infrared spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 8.4: Ultraviolet and visible spectroscopy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.P: Problems for Chapter 4 - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9: Introduction to Acid-base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.0: Prelude to Acid-base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.1: Overview of Acid-Base Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.2: The Acidity Constant - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 9.3: Structural Effects on Acidity and Basicity - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10: Introduction to Biomolecules - *Undeclared*
 - 10.0: Introduction to Amino Acids and Proteins - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.1: Introduction to carbohydrate structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.2: Introduction to Lipid Structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.3: Introduction to nucleic acid (DNA and RNA) structure - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
 - 10.4: Stereochemistry in biology and medicine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
 - Index - *Undeclared*
 - Glossary - *Undeclared*
 - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
 - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*